

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

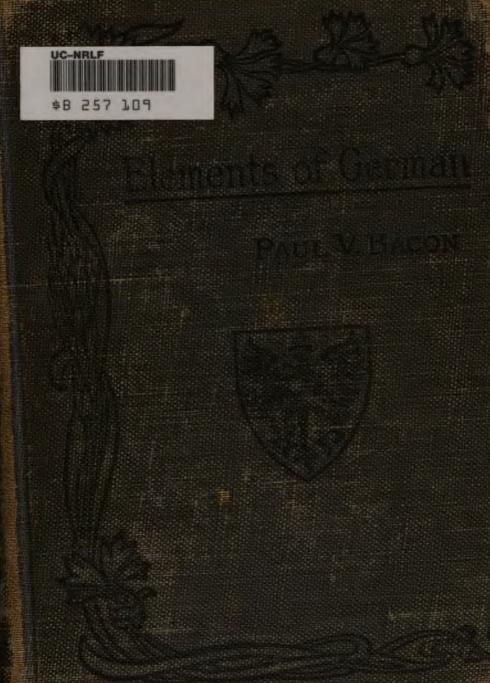
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

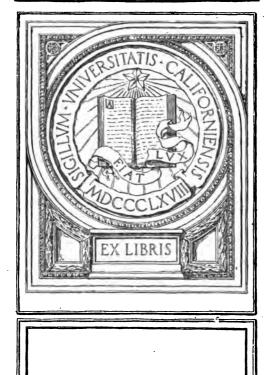
About Google Book Search

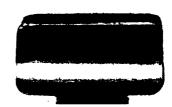
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/





GIFT OF

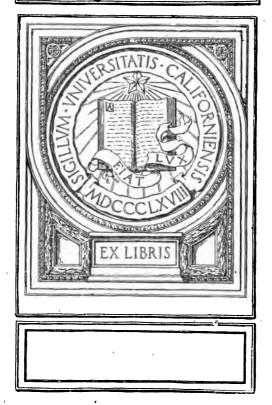


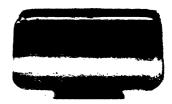




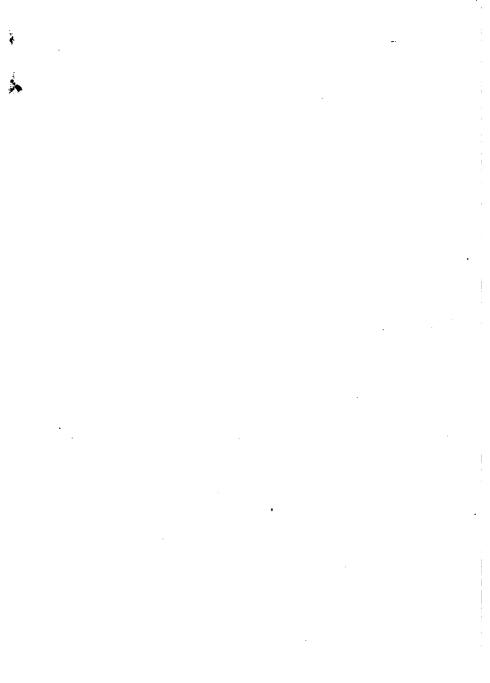


GIFT OF allys - Bason.











ELEMENTS OF GERMAN

BY

PAUL VALENTINE BACON

Bollenben ift nicht bie Sache bes Schulers; es ift genug, bag er fich übt. - Goethe.



ALLYN AND BACON New York

Boston

Chicago

COPYRIGHT, 1914, BY PAUL VALENTINE BACON.

RDE

Nerwood Bress J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co. Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE.

THE Elements of German is like my German Grammar in its simplicity and its thoroughness; it differs from the earlier book in that it aims especially to meet the needs of those teachers who may wish to vary their reading from year to year. The arrangement of the syntax in the two books is identical, except where improvements in gradation and in simplification of statement were possible.

No effort has been spared to make the *Elements* practical. To secure this end special attention has been paid to the exercises and to the vocabulary. The exercises have been simplified without sacrificing thoroughness, and have been enlivened from the outset by the introduction of conversation and of letter-writing, the two most *practical* uses to which the average pupil will put his German. This plan has the additional merit of offering from the beginning more connected sentences than are usually given.

In the choice of the vocabulary the aim has been to do three things: to keep the number of words as small as is consistent with variety and life in the exercises; to introduce as many cognates as possible; and above all to use common, every-day words. The new words average only seven to the lesson—a number readily mastered by any pupil—and in the first part of the book eighty per cent of these are cognates. This reduces to a minimum the effort of vocabulary building.

The practical character of the vocabularies deserves special mention. The words are taken entirely from the language of the school and of the home, and are so arranged that by the middle of the year the pupil has a vocabulary of schoolroom expressions, of household terms, of the things he eats, drinks, and wears, of the parts of the body, and of the weather, the time of day, and so on.

While the practical vocabulary of the lessons is thus limited to the commonest words, an unusually large number of poems, proverbs and questations has been introduced for those teachers who wish to develop an extensive Wortschatz. Taken in connection with the appendices on Word Formation and on Grimm's Law, these offer an excellent opportunity for extending the vocabulary.

The subject of Pronunciation is treated not only in the usual way at the beginning of the book, but also in the Appendix, where specific directions and diagrams are given for those who are eager to approach more nearly to the real German of the Germans.

The terminology of the Elements conforms to the Report of the Joint Committee on Grammatical Nomenclature. It is gratifying to note that this report adopts many terms, such as "past" and "past perfect," which have always been used in my German Grammar.

As in Im Vaterland and in my German Composition, particular care has been taken with the index and the vocabularies.

To those teachers who have offered suggestions from their classroom experience, I take this opportunity of expressing a grateful acknowledgment.

P. V. B.

MARCH, 1914.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

										,	PAGE
Тне (GERMAN ALPHABET										X
Intro	DUCTION								٠.		хi
LESSON											
I.	Present of haben an	d fei	n	•	•		•				1
	Gender. Quest	ions									
II.	Past of haben and f	ein									8
	Nominative and	Acc	usa	tive.	Teri	ms of	Addr	ess.		٠	,
III.	Present of loben .								,		6
	The Definite Ar			•	•	•	•	•	,		·

14.	Past of loben .					•	•	•	•		8
	The Indefinite A	Artic	e.	Vita	it.						
₹.	Review. Present of	fehe	n	•	•	•	•			•	10
	Bergißmeinnicht	;	•		Fall	er81	eben	•	•		12
	Gute Nacht				Rörı	1 e r					13
VI.	Past of fehen .				•						14
	Masculine Nour	ns of	the	Firs	t Class	s.					
VII	Present of werden										16
V 11.	Feminines. Po		civa			•	•	•	•	•	10
		3353	2116	Gen	iiive.						
VIII.	Past of werden	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	18
	Neuters. Indir	ect C	Obje	ct.							
IX.	Future Tense .										20
	Second Class of	Νοι	ıns.								
	Mein Baterland				St u	r m					22
X.	Review. Use of Pre	sent	for	Futi	ıre						23
	Das Wiffen				Loga	u					24
	••										25
											-

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

XI.	Perfect Tense with haben . Third Class of Nouns.			•		•		•	26
XII.			:).	•		•	•		29
	Frühlingsahnung		-	b					31
XIII.	Past Perfect Tense Fifth Class of Nouns (Mix	xed)		•	•	•	•	•	32
	Spru ch	E	bner	- E i d	e n b	a dj	•		34
XIV.	Future Perfect Tense Rules of Gender.		•		•	•	•	•	3 5
	Wiegenlieb	B	rent	ano	•	•	•	•	37
XV.	Review. Outline of Declension			•	•	•	•		38
	Des Mädchens Lieb . Wandrers Nachtlieb .	ß	oeth	e				•	40
	Wie ist doch die Erde so sch	jön!	R	eini	ď	•	•	•	41
XVI.	Prepositions with Dative or A	Accu	sativ	re	•	•	•	•	42
XVII.	Personal Pronouns Position of Objects.		•	•	•	•	•	•	44
KVIII.	Prepositions with Dative . Inverted Order.		•	•	•	•	•	•	46
XIX.	Prepositions with Accusative Possessive Adjectives.		•	•	•	•	•	•	48
XX.	Review. Apposition								51
	Herbstlied	S	turı	n			•		53
	Bor Jena	Ð	reve	8	•	•	•		54
XXI.	Strong Declension of Adjection Nouns of Measure.	ves	•	•	•	•	•	•	55
	Müde bin ich	Þ	enfe	ĺ		•	•		57
XXII.	Weak Declension of Adjective Accusative of Time.	es	•	•	•	•	•	•	58
KXIII.	Mixed Declension of Adjectiv	7es	•	•	•	•	•		60

	TABLE OF CONTENTS.		vi
XXIV.	Adjectives after weld, fold, etc		PAGI 68
XXV.	Review. Summary of Adjectives		68
	Lied des Fischerknaben . Schiller		67
	Der erste Mai Sagedorn .	•	68
-	Du dentst an mich so felten Platen	•	68
XXVI.	Present of Modal Auxiliaries		68
	Spruch Rückert	•	71
XXVII.	Past and Future of Modals	•	72
XXVIII.	Perfect Tenses of Modals	•	74
XXIX.	Special Uses of Modals	•	77
XXX.	Review		80
	Mein Baterland Fallereleben		82
XXXI.	Possessive Pronouns	٠	83
XXXII.	Interrogative Pronouns	•	86
XXXIII.	Demonstrative Pronouns	•	88
XXXIV.	Inflected Indefinites		92
XXXV.	Review		95
	Es war, als hatt' ber himmel : Eichenborff .		96
	An den Mond Enslin		97
XXXVI.	Relative Pronouns		98
XXXVII.	Review. Lessons I-XV	•	101
xxxviii.	•	•	103

LESSON KXXIX.	Review. Lessons XXVI-XXX			•	106
	Modals in Dependent Sentences.				
XL.	Review. Lessons XXXI-XXXVI The Modified Demonstrative.	•	٠.	•	108
	Das Schloß am Meer . Uhland .				110
XLI.	Separable and Inseparable Verbs Complementary Infinitive.	•	•	•	112
XLII.	Separable and Inseparable Verbs Meaning of Prefixes. Common Prefixes		•	•	116
XLIII.	Imperative				120
XLIV.	Infinitives and Participles				123
	Review				127
	Im Bolfston Storm .		•		129
XLVI.	Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs Particles of Comparison.	•	•	•	130
XLVII.	Numerals	•	•	•	133
XLVIII.	Days, Months, Dates	•	•	•	137
XLIX.	Proper Nouns	•	•	•	140
L.	Review				142
	Per gute Kamerad . Uhland .				144
	Die arme fleine 3dee . Sommerstor	ij.	•		145
LI.	Passive Voice	٠	•	•	146
LII.	Passive Voice	.•	•	•	149
LIII.	Reflexive Verbs	•			152
LIV.	Impersonal Verbs . Use of ex gibt and ex ift.	•	•	•	156

		TABLI	C OF	\boldsymbol{C}	ONTE	V T E	3.				ix
LESSON LV.	Review .		•								161
٠	Heidenrö	8lein .	•		Goeth	e	•				163
LVI.	Subjunctive of Dependent				•	•	•	•	•	•	164
LVII.	Subjunctive of Condition				_		•	•	•	•	168
LVIII.	Conditions of Subjunct		-		•			٠	•	•	172
	Über den	Bergen			Buffe					•	175
LIX.	Conditions Co	•		: .	•	•	•	•	•	•	176
LX.	Review .						•				180
	Wenn				Fulda						182
LXI.	Genitive and Uses with				/erbs.	•	•	• ,	•	•	183
LXII.	, ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	 Verbals.		. •	•	•	.•	•	•	•	186
LXIII.	Word Order										188
	Das Glü	æt.			Dahn		•				191
LXIV.	Idiomatic Pa	rticles									192
LXV.	Review .		•		•		•	• .		•	196
List of	f Strong and	IRREGU	LAR V	7ei	RBS						199
Summa	RY OF INFLEC	TIONS									206
Pronu	NCIATION .		•		•						237
Word	FORMATION										251
Grimm	's LAW .				•						260
GERMA	n-English Vo	CABULAI	RY					•			1
Englis	sh-German Vo	OCA BULAI	RY								33
Įndex	• •		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	49

THE GERMAN ALPHABET.

		- GIIIIII	A AUF.	DADUI.	
German type.		Jame.	German	type. German scrip	pt. Hame.
A. a	A or	ah	N n	. H w	en
· 28 b	$\mathcal{L} \mathcal{L}$	bay	D 0	Oo	oh
C c	LN	tsay	P p	Py	pay
Db	N N.	day	Q ,q	J g	koo
_,& e	emlen	12 (b)ay	R r	D m	air
₹ f	Ff	ef	ទទេ	0/6	es
S g .	gg.	gay	T t	I s	tay
H h	Gf	hah	u u	U ň	(t)00
_3 i	y i	ee	B, v	20 no	fou(l)
3 i	J j	yot	W w	. 20 m	vay
R f	O A	kah ,	X ţ	$\mathcal{X}_{\mathcal{E}}$	ix
8 1	$\mathcal{L}\ell$	el	Y ŋ	. Dy	ipsilon
M m	DU m	em	3 3/		
Ae ä Ü	Ö ö	ah-umlaut	ß	ß	es-tset
De ö Ö	O s	oh-umlaut	ď	sk	tsay-kah
Ue ii U		oo-umlaut	Sch X/	[d)]	es-tsay-hah
Äu	Äň	au-umlaut	Of 1	ref \	co-may-nan

INTRODUCTION.

The following pages give in a general way the pronunciation of German letters. For a more detailed treatment, see §§ 324-342.

I. VOWELS.

- (a) Quality and Length of Sound. Unlike English vowels, each German vowel has only one kind of sound. This sound varies in length. The five German vowels may be long or short.
- (1) They are usually short when followed by two or more consonants or a double consonant: das Wasser, das Bett, der Kisch, die Bolle, der Hund.
- (2) Otherwise they are long, especially when doubled or followed by h: ber Bater, das Beet, ihnen, wohl, tun.
- (3) Some monosyllables, mostly indeclinable, have a short vowel before a single consonant: an, ab, man, in, e8, ob.

The chief difference between the pronunciation of long and short vowels in German is that long ones are pronounced less vigorously than the short. The short vowels are uttered with a tenseness—they are almost coughed—which clips them short and carries the sound immediately to the following consonant.

(b) Pronunciation of Vowels.

(1) Long.

(2) SHORT.

```
Short a as in a(ha), never as in fat; Wasser, Mann.

" e " " net; wenn, Fenster.

" i " " pin; Fisch, ich bin.

" o " " obey; Sonne, voll.

" u " " put, " " fun; Fluß, Mutter.
```

German final unaccented e is like English final unaccented a. Pronounce Effe to rhyme with Mecca, ihre like era. \mathfrak{Y} is found only in foreign words; it is pronounced like i.

- (c) Umlaut. When in Old and Middle High German a stem whose vowel was a, v, u, or au was followed by a suffix containing the vowel i (later e) the sound of the stem vowel was modified, becoming more like the vowel in the ending. Thus a, v, u, or au came to be spoken ä, v, u, or au (Old High German, fallu, fellis, fellit; Middle High German, valle, vellest, vellet; New High German, falle, fällest, fällt). This change of sound is called Umlaut.
- (d) Pronunciation of Umlaut Vowels.—(1) Short ä is like e in met; long ä is properly the same quality of sound, only longer. It is a pure sound, not like a in late, but more like the first e in there, or ai in faith when spoken with Irish broque. In North Germany, however, it is coming to be spoken more and more like long e except to distinguish similar forms. Pronounce: die Männer, die Wälber; gähnen, wählen. Distinguish carefully: Ühre, Ehre; fähe, sehe.
- (2) Short \ddot{v} has the lips rounded as in short v and the tongue in the position for short e (e in met); long \ddot{v} has the
- ¹ The best English illustration of Umlaut is the difference we make in pronouncing the o in woman, when we speak the plural form, woman. The change in the last vowel affects the sound of the first.

lips rounded in the position for long v (whistling position) and the tongue in the position for long e (Mehl). Pronounce: die Hölle, öffnen, die Höhle, die Öfen. Distinguish carefully: Hölle, helle; können, kennen; Höhlen, hehlen.

- (3) Short ü has the lips rounded as in short u and the tongue in the position for short i (i in pin); long ü has the lips rounded as in long u (whistling position) and the tongue in the position for long i (i in machine). Pronounce: die Hüllen, d
 - (4) The diphthong än is pronounced just like en.
- (5) Notice that in every case an Umlaut-vowel has the same lip position as the corresponding non-umlauted vowel, but the tongue is raised nearer the position for i (see Fig. 1, p. 238). As this i was originally the sound of the following syllable, we may say that the tongue began to prepare for the ending while pronouncing the vowel of the stem. Thus Umlaut may be called an assimilation of the stem vowel to the vowel of the ending.
- (e) Diphthongs are pronounced about as shown below. For more specific directions see §§ 329-330.

(f) Digraphs. — In English we have many double vowels for single sounds, as in the words each, heart, heard, believe, receive, and so on. German has but few of these digraphs. They are ic, pronounced like long i; aa, pronounced like

long a; ee, pronounced like long e; pv, pronounced like long v. All these digraphs are used merely to show by the spelling that a sound is long. They are employed usually where a simple vowel would naturally be short. Sie, viel, die Saat, ber Saal, das Beet, das Meer, das Boot.

II. CONSONANTS.

- (a) Classification of Consonants. German consonants are classified in three different ways: (1) according to the kind of sound they make; (2) according to the vibration of the vocal cords during the sound; and (3) according to the place of the sound in the mouth.
- (1) According to the first classification I and r are called liquids; m, n, and ng, nasals. The remaining consonants are either stops or spirants. A stop is produced by a short puff following a complete closure of the oral passage; as b, b, t, t, p. In pronouncing a spirant, the breath passes through a narrow opening, producing a hissing or buzzing sound; as 1, t, p, 16.
- (2) A consonant is voiced if the vocal cords vibrate in producing it, as \mathfrak{m} , \mathfrak{b} , \mathfrak{b} ; otherwise it is voiceless, as \mathfrak{s} , \mathfrak{f} , \mathfrak{p} , \mathfrak{t} . This vibration can best be felt by putting the fingers on the throat. Compare zeal (z voiced), seal (s voiceless); van (v voiced), fan (f voiceless); bat (b voiced), pat (p voiceless).
- (3) A consonant is *guttural* if it is produced between the back part of the tongue and the soft palate; as g in *good*, ck in *luck*. If produced in a similar way, but farther forward, it is *palatal*; as y in *year*. It is *dental* if produced between the fore part of the tongue and the upper teeth; as d, t. It is *labial* if produced between the lips; as b, p.

- (b) Pronunciation of Consonants.—(1) Of the consonants, f, h, t, I, m, n, p, q, t, and g, and generally b and b, are pronounced as in English: baden, Diebe, holen, beten, trant, Mann, Baar, quer, Hege, finden. But at the end of a word or part of a compound word, and before voiceless consonants, b is pronounced like p, and b like t. Thus, ab, Tob, Absicht, Mädchen, er liebt, du lädst, gräbst, lieb, are pronounced as if written ap, Tot, Apsicht, Mätchen, er liept, etc.
 - (a) bt like t: Stadt, gefandt.
 - (b) h after an accented vowel is silent: Ruh, sah, fühlen.
 - (c) & like k: Stock, Rücken.
 - (2) Simple ¢ is found only in foreign words.
 - (a) c before a, v, u, or a consonant, like k: Café, Calvin, Canal, Contre, Creme. In the latest official spelling it is largely supplanted by f.
 - (b) c before e, i, ä, or ö, like ts: Ceber, Cicero, Căsar. In the latest official spelling it is largely supplanted by 3.
- (3) d is a voiceless spirant. It has two different sounds not found in English.
 - (a) After a, v, u, au, it is guttural, as in Scotch loch: Buch, Dach, doch, auch.
 - (b) After other vowels and after consonants it is palatal: Licht, recht, ich, welch.

Note. To pronounce the guttural d_1 , raise the back of the tongue till it almost touches the soft palate and expel the breath forcibly. To pronounce the palatal d_1 , raise the tongue to the position for ee in feet and breathe out. Do not pronounce d_1 like English k or sh.

- (4) has at the end of a root-syllable is pronounced like ks: Dachs, Fuchs. But where the s is added as an ending, as in bas Reich, des Reichs, the ch retains its proper sound.
- (5) \mathbf{H} in foreign words is like k or sh : k in Greek words, as Chor, Christ, Charafter; sh in French words, as Charabe, Chiffer, Chocolabe. In the latest official spelling French \mathbf{H} is largely supplanted by S \mathbf{H} : S \mathbf{H} arabe, S \mathbf{H} ofolabe.
 - (6) g has three different sounds.
 - (a) When doubled, or at the beginning of a word or syllable, it is pronounced like the English g in go: geben, grün, Flagge, Tage, Zuge.
 - (b) When final, after a, v, u, or au, it is a voiceless guttural spirant, like a in aa (II., (b), 3, a): Tag, Zug.
 - (c) When final, after e, i, ei, ä, ü, or a consonant, it is a voiceless palatal spirant, like ch in ich (II., (b), 3, b): König, Weg, Teig, Berg.
- Note 1. Officially final $\mathfrak g$ is like $\mathfrak k$ in (b) and (c), but few Germans pronounce it that way.
- Note 2. In gd, gt, and gft, g has the same sound as above in (2) and (3): Magb, er sagte, sliegt, bu biegst.
- (7) ng is always pronounced like ng in singer, never like ng in hunger: Finger, singen, sang, bringen.
 - (8) j like y in yes: Jahr, ja.
- (9) ph is pronounced like f, by which it is being gradually supplanted: Philosoph, Elefant, Efeu.
- (10) r is always pronounced sharply and distinctly. It is either guttural or trilled with the tip of the tongue. It must never be slurred, as in English, fuhthah for further.
- (11) German f, s has three pronunciations just like the three of English s.

- (a) When at the end or next to the end of a syllable, or when doubled, it is like s in see: es, was, bift, haft, laffen.
- (b) When at the beginning of a syllable it is like s in rose: sehen, der Saal, die Rose, der Unsinn.
- (c) When f begins an accented syllable whose second letter is t or p, it is like s in sugar: stehen, spremen are pronounced as if spelled scheen, schere chen.

Note. For those not using German script, the distinction between f and & is immaterial. Those who write German script should remember to use & at the end of a word or of a stem syllable, f in all other cases.

- (12) fc like sh in ship: Schiff, maschen.
- (13) f is like ss: Schloß.
 - (a) After a short vowel, f is changed to ff when an ending beginning with a vowel is added: Schlös, Schlösser.
 - (b) After a long vowel or a diphthong or before a consonant, it remains unchanged: Fuβ, Füβe, ich weiß, ich mußte.
- (14) ti before another vowel in foreign words is like tsee: Nation, Batient.
 - (15) th is like t: Theater, Goethe.

Note. In all but foreign words and proper names the silent has recently been dropped. But pupils should be prepared to meet it in newspapers and letters and in all but the most recent books.

- (16) t is like ts: sigen, bligen, Rage.
- (17) \mathfrak{v} is like f: Bater, Bogel. But in foreign words it is pronounced like English v: Benus, Beranda, Berbum.
 - (18) w is like English v in vice: wir, Wolf.

- (19) z is like ts in hats: zu, Zeit, Herz. For f and t, see (13) and (16).
- (20) In **pf, gn,** and **fn,** both letters must be distinctly enunciated, as in English, hopfarm, ignoble, banknote: Pferd, Gnade, Anabe.

III. SYLLABICATION.

In general, words are divided into syllables as they are spoken when articulated slowly: Ge-schlech-ter, Freun-des-treue.

- (a) Compound words are divided according to their component parts: hin-aus, Diens-tag.
- (b) Otherwise a single simple sound (including g and z) goes with the following vowel: Bü-cher, Bä-sche, ei-nen, rei-zen.
- (c) Of several consonants the last one goes with the following vowel, except that the combination st is not divided: Finger, Wasser, Staser, Ruosepe, Städete, besste, meisste, Fensster.

IV. PUNCTUATION AND CAPITALIZATION.

German rules for punctuation and capitalization are much like English, especially in regard to the beginning of a sentence, the use of the period, colon, quotation marks, interrogation point, and so on.

- (a) The comma is used more frequently in German.
- (1) Relative clauses are always set off by commas (\S 169, c).
- (2) In many compound sentences where English omits the comma, German uses it to separate the two parts of the sentence.

- (b) The exclamation point is also commoner in German than in English.
- (1) A command is always followed in German by an exclamation point (§ 69).
- (2) The address inside a letter, as Dear Carl, is often followed by an exclamation point: Rieber Rarl!
 - (c) German begins all nouns with a capital.
- (1) When an adjective, verb, or other part of speech is used as a noun, it is always written with a capital.
- (2) On the other hand, when nouns have lost their noun force they are written small (\S 138, a).
- (d) The formal pronoun Sie and its possessive In always begin with a capital, though its reflexive fict is small.
- (1) The pronoun bu and its plural ihr, with the possessives and reflexives, beiner, euer, bith, and euth, are written small except in letters, where they are capitalized.
- (e) Adjectives are capitalized after etmas and nights (§ 159, a and e).

V. GERMAN EQUIVALENTS FOR GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

The letter (of the alphabet), der Buch'stabe.

The vowel, der Bokal', or der Selbst'laut.

The consonant, der Konsonant', or der Mit'laut.

The sentence, ber Sat.

The subject, das Subjett'; the predicate, das Prädifat'.

The main clause, der Haupt'sat.

The subordinate clause, der Me'benfat.

The parts of speech, die Re'deteile.

The article, der Arti'fel, or das Geschlechts'wort.

Definite, bestimmt'; indefinite, un'bestimmt.

The noun, das Sub'stantiv, or das Haupt'wort.

First, second, third class, er'ste, zwei'te, brit'te Rlasse.

The pronoun, das Brono'men, or das Für'wort.

The adjective, bas Ad'jeftiv, or bas Ei'genschaftswort.

The numeral, das Numera'le, or das Zahl'wort.

The adverb, das Adverb', or das Um'standswort.

The verb, das Ber'b(um), or das Zeit'wort.

Strong, ftart; weak, schwach; separable, trenn'bar; inseparable, un'trennbar; transitive, transitive; intransitive, intransitive.

The preposition, die Praposition', or das Verhält'niswort.

The conjunction, die Konjunktion', or das Bin'dewort.

The interjection, die Interjektion', or das Aus'rufungswort.

The gender, das Geschlecht': masculine, männ'sich; feminine, weib'sich; neuter, säch'sich.

The number, die Zahl'form.

Singular, der Singular', or die Gin'zahl.

Plural, der Blu'ral, or die Mehr'zahl.

The case, der Fall (pl. die Fäl'le).

The nominative, der Mo'minativ; genitive, der Ge'nitiv; dative, der Da'tiv; accusative, der Af'susative.

The inflection, die Bie'gung; to decline, beklinie'ren.

The declension, die Deklination'; strong, stark; weak, schwach; mixed, gemischt.

To conjugate, fonjugie'ren; conjugation, die Ronjugation'.

The comparison, die Komparation', or die Stei'gerung; to compare, stei'gern; positive, der Po'sitiv; comparative, der Kom'parativ; superlative, der Su'perlativ.

The tense, das Tem'pus, die Zeit'form; present, das Brä'sens; past, das Jm'persett; future, das Futur' (das er'ste Futur'); persect, das Bersett'; past persect, das Plus's quampersett; future persect, das zwei'te Futur'; simple, compound, ein'sach, zusam'mengesett.

The mode, der Mo'dus; indicative, der In'dicativ; subjunctive, der Kon'junctiv; imperative, der Jm'perativ; infinitive, der In'finitiv; participle, das Bartizip'.

The accent, ber Ton; raising and lowering of the voice, die Hebung und Sentung ber Stimme.

Position, order, die Stellung, die Ordnung.

Word order, die Wort'folge; inverted order, die Inversion'.

Page, die Seite; line, die Beile, die Reihe (row).

Note. Properly the foreign terms should have the accent on the last syllable; but in the language of the schoolroom the accent has been shifted from the meaningless ending to the distinctive part of the word.

Welche Sprache darf fich mit der deutschen meffen, welche andere ift so reich und mächtig, so mutig und anmutig, so schön und so mild als unsere?

– Börne.

LESSON I.

Present of haben and fein. Gender.

frisch begonnen, halb gewonnen. - Deutsches Sprichwort. Well begun is half done. - German Proverb.

Present Tense of haben, to have, and sein, to be. 1.

ich habe. I have.

du haft, thou hast.

er, fie, es hat, he, she, it has.

wir haben, we have. ihr habt, you have. fie haben, they have.

ich bin, I am. bu bift, thou art.

er, fie, es ift, he, she, it is.

wir find, we are. ihr feid, you are. fie find, they are.

- 2. Gender. Like English, German has three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. But in German the gender of a noun does not necessarily depend upon sex, as in English; instead it utterly disregards meaning. Thus the German word for knife is neuter; for fork, feminine; and for spoon, masculine.
- (a) To indicate gender the definite article (masc. ber, fem. bie, neut. bas, the) should be learned with every noun. It should be considered a part of the noun and learned as a first syllable: not Schüler, but der Schüler; not Schule, but die Schule: not Buch, but das Buch.

3. German Questions. — In German, as in English, a question is asked by inverting subject and predicate, or by using an interrogative adverb or pronoun.

Bin ich? Am I? Bo bift du? Where art thou? Bas hat er? What has he?

(a) The English repetition of the auxiliary in a question, as isn't he? don't you? won't they? can't I? etc., is given in German by night or night mahr, isn't it true?

We are the pupils, aren't we? Wir find die Schüller, nicht (wahr)? She has the book, hasn't she? Sie hat das Buch, nicht (wahr)?

4.

Vocabulary.

Schiller, pupil (compare nicht. not. scholar). wahr, true. bie Schu'le, school; in ber Schule, wo? where? in or at school. hier, here. bas Bud, book. idh, I; du, thou; er. he: ha'ben, to have. fie. she: €\$, it; wir, we; ihr, you; fie, they. fein, to be.

(a) Note that the same word, fie, means she or they.

5.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Hat der Schüler das Buch? 2. Wir haben das Buch, nicht wahr? 3. Wo sind sie? 4. Sie sind hier, sie sind in der Schule. 5. Sie haben das Buch hier, nicht wahr?
 - (b) "Wo bist du?"
 - "Ich bin in der Schule."
 - "Haft du das Buch?"
 - "Ich habe bas Buch, nicht mahr?"
 - "Der Schüler hat das Buch."

- (c) 1. Have you the book? 2. The pupil has the book.

 3. Is he at school? 4. I am the pupil, am I not? 5. They are here at school; they have the book.
 - (d) "Where are we?"
 - "You are here at school."
 - "We have the book, haven't we?"
 - "You have it. It is here."
 - "I have the book here at school."

LESSON II.

Past of haben and fein.

Aller Anfang ist schwer. — Deutsches Sprichwort. Every beginning is hard. — German Proverb.

6. Past Tense of haben and sein.

ich hatte, I had.

du hattest, thou hadst.

er, sie, es hatte, he, she, it had.

wir hatten, we had. ihr hattet, you had.

fie hatten, they had.

ich war, I was.

du warst, thou wast.

er, fie, es war, he, she, it was.

wir waren, we were.

thr wart, you were.

fie waren, they were.

- 7. Nominative and Accusative Cases. The nominative and accusative are always alike except in the masculine singular.
- (a) The Nominative, as in English, is the case (1) of the subject, and (2) of the predicate after intransitive verbs like fein and werben, to become.

Er ift der Lehrer. He is the teacher. Der Bater war gut. The father was good. (b) The Accusative, like the English objective, is the case of the direct object.

Sie hat einen Bater. She has a father. Bir hatten einen Lehrer. We had a teacher.

8..

Table of Forms.

•	Definite Article, the.				Indefinite Article, a.					
	8	ingul a	ır.	Plural.		Singular.			Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.		1	M.	F.	N.		
Nom.	ber	die	bas	die	Nom.	ein	eine	eiu	Want-	
Acc.	ben	die	bas	die	Acc.	ein einen	eine	eiu	ing.	

- (a) Note that bit is the form for nominative and accusative of the definite article for all genders in the plural and for the feminine singular. Observe especially the masculine singular, contrasting the nominative and accusative forms.
 - 9. A Predicate Adjective is not declined.

Der Lehrer ist gut. The teacher is good. Das Buch und die Rose sind rot. The book and the rose are red.

10. Terms of Address. — In formal or polite address, German uses Sie, a form like the third person plural. The pronoun is always written with a capital. Du (plural ihr) is used with intimates, relatives, young children, and animals.

Have you the book? (To the teacher) Saben Sie das Buch?
(To a fellow pupil) Hast bu das Buch?
(To several pupils) Habt ihr das Buch?

(a) Sie is the common form of address to-day in Germany for both singular and plural, except when bu (ihr) is required. In translating you, think carefully whether you are addressing intimate friends or not. When in doubt, use Sie.

11.

Vocabulary.

ber Ba'ter, father.
ber Leh'rer, teacher.
bie Mut'ter, mother.
bie Fe'der, pen (compare feather).
bas Kind, child.

das Papier', paper. was? what? ja, yes. gut, good. und, and.

12.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Was hatte das Kind? 2. Das Kind hatte einen Bater und eine Mutter. 3. Der Bater und die Mutter waren gut. 4. Wo war ich; war ich in der Schule? 5. Ja, wir waren hier in der Schule; wir hatten das Papier und ein Buch.
 - (b) "Was hatten Sie?"
 - "Ich hatte das Papier und eine Feder."
 - "Waren Sie der Lehrer?"
 - "Ja, ich war der Lehrer."
 - "Und Sie hatten das Buch und die Feder."
- (c) 1. Was the child the pupil? 2. Yes, the child was the pupil, and the father was the teacher. 3. Where were they, and what had they? 4. They were here at school, and they had the paper. 5. You had a book and a pen, didn't you?
 - (d) "What were you at school?"
 - "I was the teacher."
 - "What had you?"
 - "I had a book and a pen."
 - "Yes, we had a pen and the paper."

LESSON III.

Present of loben. Definite Article.

Das Werk lobt den Meister. — Deutsches Sprichwort.

The work praises the master. — German Proverb.

13. Classification of Verbs. — Verbs are generally called strong, when the stem vowel changes in the past; weak, when it remains the same: (weak, loben, lobte; strong, fehen, fah). Compare English praise, praised; see, saw.

Note. These terms were invented by the German scholar, Jacob Grimm. A strong verb has strength enough to form its past by changing its vowel; a weak one requires the help of an ending.

14. The Weak Verb has the following personal endings in the present tense. These are added to the verb stem.

Singular.	${\it Plural}.$
1st e	— ен
2d (e)ft	(e)1
3d (e)t	en

- (a) Euphony requires that certain verbs have ses before the ending in the second person singular and plural and in the third singular: bu grüßest, thou greetest; er wartet, he waits, bu reizest, thou provokest; er babet, he bathes. Naturally it is awkward to write bu grüßst, er wartt, bu reizst, er babt.
 - 15. Present Tense of loben, to praise. Stem, lob.

id lobe, I praise.
bu lobe, thou praisest.
er, fie, es lobe, he, she, it praises.

wir loben, we praise. ihr lobt, you praise. fie loben, they praise.

(a) Conjugate the present tense of fagen and lernen like loben.

16. English Progressive and Emphatic Forms are given in German by the simple verb.

> I am learning, I do learn. 36 lerne. He was praising, he did praise. Er lobte. Were you saying? Did you say? Sagten Sie?

17.

The Definite Article.

	Singular.			Plural.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All Genders.	
Nom.	ber, the.	die, the.	bas , the.	die, the.	
Gen.	bes, of the.	der, of the.	bes, of the.	ber, of the.	
Dat.	bem, to the.	ber, to the.	dem, to the.	ben, to the.	
Acc.	ben, the.	die, the.	bas. the.	die, the.	

(a) Note the similarity of endings for the definite article and the personal pronoun: ber - er, bie - fie, bas - es, bie - fie.

18.

Vocabulary.

ber Bru'ber, brother.
der Stuhl, chair.
die Tiu'te, ink.
die Rrei'de, chalk.
das Glas, glass.

das Bult, desk. lo'ben, to praise. fa'gen, to say, tell. ler'nen, to learn, study. warum'? why?

19.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Der Lehrer lobt den Bruder; er lernt das Buch. 2. Warum hat ber Bruber einen Stuhl und ein Bult? 3. Was lernen Sie hier in der Schule? 4. Ich habe das Glas und die 5. Die Mutter lobt das Rind; das Rind lernt. Rreide.
 - (b) "Warum loben Sie ben Bruder?" "Er lernt das Buch."

"Wo waren die Tinte und die Kreide?"

"Ich sage, sie waren hier in der Schule." "Wir loben den Schüler; er ist gut; er lernt."

- (c) 1. What have I here? 2. You have the chalk and a glass. 3. The desk and the chair are here in the school. 4. What do you say? Why do you praise the ink? It (sie) is not good. 5. The teacher praises, and we learn.
 - (d) "What are you saying?"
 - "I am studying the book."
 - "Why are you studying?"
 - "I have a chair and a desk and a pen and the ink."
 - "The brother studies, and the teacher praises the pupil."

LESSON IV.

Past of Inben. Indefinite Article.

Wie geht es? Ganz gut, ich danke. How goes it? Quite well, I thank (you).

20. The Past Tense of Weak Verbs is formed by adding ste to the present stem. The personal endings are the same as in the present tense, except that the third person singular is like the first.

21. Past Tense of loben.

iff lobte, I praised.
bu lobtest, thou didst praise.
er, sie, es lobte, he, she, it praised.

wir lobten, we praised. ihr lobtet, you praised. fie lobten, they praised.

(a) Conjugate the past tense of suchen and machen like soben.

The Indefinite Article.

Singular.

Masc.		Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	ein, a.	eine, a.	ein, a.	
Gen.	eines, of a.	einer, of a.	eines, of a.	
Dat.	einem, to a.	einer, to a.	einem, to a.	
Acc.	einen, a.	eine, a.	eiu, a.	

- (a) The plural of course is wanting. Compare the endings of ber and ein.
- 23. Position of nicht. When nicht modifies the whole sentence it stands at or near the end; otherwise it comes just before the word or phrase it negatives.

Bir loben den Schüler nicht. We are not praising the pupil.

Der Bruder, nicht der Bater, lobt den Schüler. The brother, not the father, praises the pupil.

24.

Vocabulary.

ber Gar'ten, garden; in dem Garten, in the garden.
ber Tisch, table.
bie No'se, rose.
bie Blu'me, Nower.
bas Hans, house.
bas Kaleid, dress.
su'den, (past) sudite, to seek, look
for.
ma'den, (past) madite, to make.
rot, red.
bas Hans, house.

25.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Wie machte die Mutter das Kleid? 2. Sie machte das Kleid auf (on) einem Tisch. 3. Wie war das Kleid; war es nicht rot? 4. Das Haus war nicht in dem Garten. 5. Ich suchte den Lehrer in dem Garten.
- (b) "Was suchten Sie, eine Blume?"
 "Ja, ich suchte eine Rose in dem Garten."
 "Wie war die Rose? War sie (it) rot?"

- "Ja, ich suchte eine Rose, und sie war rot." "Die Rose, das Haus und das Kleid sind rot."
- (c) 1. Did you make the chair and the table? 2. Why was the teacher praising the pupil? 3. The house in the garden was not red. 4. The pupil was not studying the book. 5. How did she make the dress?
 - (d) "Were you looking for a flower in the garden?"
 - "Yes, I was looking for a rose; it (sie) was red."
 - "What did you say? The rose is not red."
 - "The teacher praised the flower."
 - "How and why were you looking for it (sie) in the garden?"

LESSON V.

Present of fehen. Review.

Er sieht den Wald vor Bäumen nicht. — Deutsches Sprichwort. He does not see the wood for the trees. — German Proverb.

26. Certain Strong Verbs change the stem vowel of the second and third persons singular in the present indicative, as in sehen (bu siehst, er sieht); sprechen (bu sprichst, er spricht). (A list of strong verbs and these stem changes will be found on pages 199 to 205.)

27. Present Tense of sehen, to see.

ich sehe, I see. du siehst, thou seest. er, sie, es sieht, he, she, it sees.

wir sehen, we see. ihr seht, you see. sie sehen, they see.

(a) Conjugate the present tense of sprechen (bu sprichst) and sinden (bu sindest) like sehen.

Vocabulary.

der Mann, man.
die Anf'gabe, exercise.
das Gras, grass.
das Dentsch, German, the German
language.

fpre'hen, to speak. fin'ben, to And. griin, green. a'ber, but. nein, no. fhwer, hard, difficult.

29.

fe'hen, to see.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Siehst du das Gras?

 2. Ja, ich sehe das Gras; es ist grün.

 3. Ich suche eine Feder, aber ich sinde sie (it) nicht.

 4. Spricht der Mann Deutsch?

 5. Ja, er spricht Deutsch; er sindet es nicht schwer.
 - (b) "Sprechen Sie Deutsch?"
 "Nein, ich serne Deutsch, aber der Lehrer spricht."
 "Wie finden Sie die Aufgabe? Ist sie (it) schwer?"
 "Nein, die Aufgabe ist nicht schwer."
 "Gut! *Sie sernen Deutsch, und Sie finden es nicht schwer."
- (c) 1. Does the man see the flower in the garden? 2. No, but he sees the grass; it (e\$) is green. 3. How do you speak German? 4. I do not find German hard, but I do not speak it (e\$). 5. She is looking for a book, but she does not find it.
 - (d) "Does the pupil speak German?"
 - "No, he is learning German, but he does not speak."
 - "Is he finding the book hard?"
- "No, he praises the book, and he does not find the exercise hard."

30.

Review Exercise.

(a) 1. Conjugate in the present and past: Ich habe ein Buch. Was bin ich? Ich lerne Deutsch. 2. Conjugate in

the present: Ich sehe es nicht. Spreche ich Deutsch? Ich sinde die Aufgabe schwer. 3. Decline the definite and indefinite articles. 4. Give the rule for the position of nicht; for the use of the second person pronouns.

- (b) 1. Ich habe das Buch. 2. Du bift der Schüler. 3. Er lernt die Aufgabe. 4. Wir loben den Lehrer. 5. Ihr macht das Kleid. 6. Sie suchen die Rose. 7. Wo waren Sie? 8. Was sagte der Lehrer? 9. Warum sprechen Sie nicht? 10. Wie war die Tinte?
- (c) 1. Is he speaking German? 2. Thou wast not at school. 3. She has a rose, hasn't she? 4. We are looking for the flower, but we do not find it (sie). 5. Were you studying German? 6. They do not find German hard. 7. Where did you look for the rose? 8. Why did they make a dress? 9. What was he studying? 10. How does she speak German?

Vergikmeinnicht.

Es blüht ein schönes Blümchen Auf unsrer grünen Au'; Sein Aug' ist wie der Himmel, So heiter und so blau.

Es weiß nicht viel zu reben, Und alles, was es spricht, Ist immer nur dasselbe, Ist nur: Bergismeinnicht.

- Hoffmann von Fallersleben.

Gute Racht!

Gute Nacht! Allen Müben sei's gebracht. Neigt ber Tag sich still zum Enbe, Ruhen alle fleiß'gen Hände, Bis der Morgen neu erwacht. Gute Nacht!

Geht zur Ruh'! Schließt die müden Augen zu. Stiller wird es auf den Straßen, Und den Wächter hört man blasen, Und die Nacht ruft allen zu: Geht zur Ruh'!

Schlummert süß! Träumt euch euer Paradies. Wem die Liebe raubt den Frieden, Sei ein schöner Traum beschieden, Als ob Liebchen ihn begrüß'.

Schlummert füß!

Gute Nacht!
Schlummert, bis der Tag erwacht.
Schlummert, bis der neue Morgen Kommt mit seinen neuen Sorgen, Ohne Furcht: der Vater wacht.
Sute Nacht!

- Theodor Körner.

LESSON VI.

Past of feben. Masculine Nouns of the First Class.

Was ift das? Ich verstehe es nicht. What is that? I don't understand it.

31. The Past Tense of Strong Verbs has the same personal endings as the present, except that the first and third persons singular have no personal ending.

32.

Past Tense of sehen.

ich fah, I saw. wir fahen, we saw. bu fahft, thou sawest. ihr faht, you saw. er, fie, es fah, he, she, it saw. fie fahen, they saw.

- (a) Conjugate the past of sprechen (sprach) and finden (fand).
- 33. Classes of Nouns. Nouns are divided into five classes according to the way they are declined. The first class contains those which do not change in the plural, except sometimes to take umlaut.
- (a) Umlaut means changed sound and is indicated by two dots over the vowel. A, o, and u are the only vowels that can take umlaut. Compare the English: man, men; foot, feet. See also I, c of the Introduction.
- 34. The First Class of Nouns contains only words of more than one syllable. It includes:
 - (1) All masculine and neuter nouns ending in sel, ser, sen.
 - (2) All diminutives ending in schen or slein.
 - (3) Neuter nouns with prefix Ge= and suffix =e.
 - (4) The two feminines Mutter and Tochter.

35. Declension of a Masculine Noun of the First Class.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. der Bruder, the brother.
Gen. des Bruders, the brother's.
Dat. dem Bruder, (to) the brother.
Acc. den Bruder, the brother.

bie Brüder, the brothers. ber Brüder, the brothers'. ben Brüderu, (to) the brothers. bie Brüder, the brothers.

(a) Like ber Bruber decline ber Schüler, ber Lehrer, ber Bater (bie Bäter), ber Garten (bie Gärten). Decline each of these nouns also in the singular with ein. See § 22.

36.

Vocabulary.

naß, wet.

der Som'mer, die Sommer, summer. der Win'ter, die Winter, winter. warm, warm. kalt, cold.

bas, that.
le'fen, er lieft, (past) las, to read.
versie'hen, (past) versiand, to understand.

37.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Die Sommer sind warm, und die Winter sind naß. 2. Was war das? Ich verstand es nicht. 3. Lasen die Brüder die Aufgabe? 4. Die Schüler verstanden nicht, was sie lasen. 5. Warum ist es kalt in der Schule? Ich verstehe es nicht.
 - (b) "Berftand ber Schüler Deutsch?"
 - "Ja, er verstand Deutsch, und er las es, aber er sprach es nicht." "Fand er die Aufgabe schwer?"
 - "Nein, er verstand die Aufgabe; sie (it) war nicht schwer."
 - "Das ift gut. Die Schüler finden das Buch nicht schwer."
- (c) 1. Are the summers here warm? 2. Yes, and the winters are cold and wet. 3. The teacher spoke German, and the pupils understood. 4. Did they see the rose in the garden? 5. The teachers were speaking (sprachen) German, and the pupils were reading, but they did not understand.

- (d) "Did you understand the exercise?"
- "Yes, but we found it (sie) hard."
- "Didn't you read the book?"
- "No, we didn't understand it (es)."
- "But you spoke German and you read it. Why didn't you understand?"

LESSON VII.

Present of werden. Feminine Nouns of the First Class.

Was schreiben Sie da? Das geht nicht. What are you writing there? That won't do.

38. Present Tense of werden, to become, get.

ich werde, I become, get. du wirst, thou becomest. er, sie, es wird, he, she, it becomes.

wir werden, we become. ihr werdet, you become. fie werden, they become.

39. Declension of a Feminine Noun of the First Class.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. die Tochter, the daughter.

Gen. ber Tochter, the daughter's.

ber Tochter, (to) the daughter.

Acc. die Tochter, the daughter.

die Töchter, the daughters. ber Töchter, the daughters'. den Töchtern, (to) the daughters. die Töchter, the daughters.

- (a) Note that feminine nouns keep the same form throughout the singular. Die Tochter forms the plural merely by taking umlaut, hence it is of the first class. Like die Tochter decline die Mutter, the only other feminine of the first class.
- 40. The Possessive Genitive. The German genitive, like the English possessive, is used to denote possession. As in English, it may precede or follow its noun.

Des Schülers Buch. The pupil's book. Die Rose der Tochter. The rose of the daughter.

(a) The genitive singular masculine and neuter of all nouns except Class V ends in (e)8.

41.

Vocabulary.

die Toch'ter, die Töchter, daughter.

das Wet'ter, weather.

im Som'mer, in (the) summer.

im Win'ter, in (the) winter.

fchr, very.

fdrei'ben, (past) schrieb, to write.

werden, to become, get.

zu, too.

heiß, hot.

wann? when?

alt, old.

42.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Die Töchter des Lehrers verstehen den Schüler nicht; sie werden sehr rot. 2. Es wird zu heiß hier in der Schule.

 3. Der Bater des Schülers wird sehr alt. 4. Schreiben Sie die Aufgabe hier in der Schule? 5. Die Mutter des Lehrers schrieb ein Buch; wir lasen es, aber wir verstanden es nicht.
 - (b) "Wann wird das Wetter warm, und wann wird es kalt?"
 "Das Wetter wird warm im Sommer und kalt im Winter."
 "Aber es wird nicht so sehr kalt im Winter."
 "Nein, es ist warm hier in der Schule im Winter."
 "Ja, aber es ist zu heiß in der Schule im Sommer."
- (c) 1. The weather gets very warm in summer. 2. The weather gets too cold in winter. 3. The exercise of the pupil is getting too hard. 4. The daughter of the teacher is getting very red. 5. The pupil's book was not green; it was old and red.
 - (d) "When did you write the exercise?"
 "I did not write it (fie)."

- "Why didn't you write it? Is it getting too hard?"
- "No, but it (e%) is getting too hot here at school."
- "Yes, it is very hot in summer at school."

LESSON VIII.

Past of merben. Neuter Nouns of the First Class.

Was tun Sie da? Zeigen Sie mir das Buch! What are you doing there? Show me the book.

43.

Past Tense of merben.

ich wurde, I became.

du wurdest, thou becamest.

er, sie, es wurde, he, she, it became.

wir wurden, we became. ihr wurdet, you became. sie wurden, they became.

44. Declension of a Neuter Noun of the First Class.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. das Mädchen, the girl.
Gen. des Mädchens, the girl's.
Dat. dem Mädchen, (to) the girl.
Acc. das Mädchen, the girl.

bie Mädchen, the girls. ber Mädchen, the girls'. ben Mädchen, (to) the girls. bie Mädchen, the girls.

- (a) Like das Mädden decline das Wetter, das Meffer, das Baffer.
- 45. The Indirect Object. The dative is used to denote the indirect object. If both objects are nouns, the dative generally precedes as in English.

Sie gab dem Lehrer ein Buch. She gave the teacher a book. Ich zeigte der Tochter eine Rose. I showed the daughter a rose, or I showed a rose to the daughter.

(a) The dative plural for all genders always ends in (e)n.

Vocabulary.

das Mef'ser, die Messer, knise. das Basser, die Basser, water. ge'ben, er gibt, (past) gab, to give. zei'gen, (past) zeigte, to show.

tun, (past) tat, to do.
ober, or.
mit, prep. with dative, with.
ba, there.

47.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Der Schüler gab bem Mädchen das Messer des Lehrers.

 2. Wurde das Wasser warm oder heiß?

 3. Es war warm, aber es wurde kalt.

 4. Das Wetter wurde heiß, und das Mädchen wurde rot.

 5. Da ist ein Glas; was taten Sie mit dem Wasser?
 - (b) "Was taten Sie mit dem Messer ba?"
 - "Ich zeigte dem Lehrer bas Meffer."
 - "Gaben Sie dem Lehrer das Buch?"
 - "Nein, ich gab dem Mädchen das Buch."
 - "Und das Mädchen wurde rot, nicht wahr?"
- (c) 1. What did you do with the water?

 2. Did the pupil's father have the water or the glass?

 3. We gave the pupils the pen with the ink.

 4. Was the man there with the teacher, or was he in the garden?

 5. The teacher gave the pupil a knife and a book.
- (d) "What did you do there? Did you show the teacher the pupil's exercise?"
 - "No, the exercise was getting very hard."
 - "What did you say? Was the exercise getting too hard?"
 - "Yes, and I gave the pupil's book to the teacher."
- "And the teacher saw the book, and he showed the exercise to the pupil's father."

LESSON IX.

The Future Tense.

Cernen Sie das Gedicht! Die Sätze find nicht lang. Learn the poem. The sentences are not long.

48. Formation of the Future Tense. — Used independently, merben means to become. Used as an auxiliary (that is, with a present infinitive), it forms the future tense. All verbs form the future in the same way, simply by prefixing the present indicative of merben to the present infinitive.

Ich werde alt. I become old. Ich werde loben. I shall praise.

49. Future Tense of loben.

ich werde loben, I shall praise.

du wirst loben, thou wilt praise.

er, sie, es wird loben, he, she, it
will praise.

wir werden loben, we shall praise. ihr werdet loben, you will praise. fie werden loben, they will praise. Future Tense of sehen.

ich werde sehen, I shall see.
du wirst sehen, thou wilt see.
er, sie, es wird sehen, he, she, it
will see,

wir werden sehen, we shall see. ihr werdet sehen, you will see. sie werden sehen, they will see.

- (a) Conjugate in full the future of haben, sein, and werben.
- 50. Position of the Infinitive. The infinitive stands after all its modifiers, usually at the end of the sentence.

Ishall not see the teacher.
Sie wird dem Schüler ein Buch geben. She will give the pupil a book.

51. The Second Class of Nouns contains a large number of masculine, feminine, and neuter monosyllables, and words of

more than one syllable ending in sig, sing, sfal, snis and stunft.

These nouns add se to form the plural. The masculines take umlaut usually, the feminines always, the neuters very seldom. Plurals that take umlaut must be learned from the vocabularies.

52. Declension of the Second Class of Nouns.

MASCULINE

MAS	CULINE.
Singular.	${m Plural}.$
der Hund, the dog.	rie Hunde, the dogs.
des Hundes, the dog's.	der Hunde, the dogs'.
dem Hund(e), (to) the dog.	den Hunden, (to) the dogs.
den Hund, the dog.	die Hunde, the dogs.
	Singular. der Hund, the dog. des Hundes, the dog's. dem Hund(e), (to) the dog.

FEMININE.

N.	die Bant, the bench.	die Bänke, the benches.
G.	der Bant, of the bench.	der Bänte, of the benches.
D.	ber Bant, (to) the bench.	den Bänken, (to) the benches.
A.	die Bant, the bench.	die Bäute, the benches.

NEUTER.

N.	das Bferd, the horse.	die Pferde, the horses.
G.	bes Pferdes, the horse's.	der Bferde, the horses'.
D.	dem Pferd(e), (to) the horse.	den Pferden, (to) the horses.
A.	das Bferd, the horse.	die Pferde, the horses.

(a) In like manner decline der Stuhl (die Stühle), die Hand (die Hande), das Pult (die Pulte), der Tisch (die Tische), das Papier (die Papiere), der Satz (die Sätze), ein Hund, eine Bank, ein Pferd.

53.

Vocabulary.

der Hut, die Hi'te, hat.

der Sat, die Sät'ze, sentence.

die Racht, die Räch'te, night.

die Stadt, die Städ'te, city.

das Spiel, die Spie'le, play, game.

das Gedicht', die Gedich'te, poem, piece of poetry.

lang, long.

groß, large, big, great.

hie spie'len, (past) spie'len, to play.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Werben Sie einen Hut machen? 2. Sie werben in bem Garten mit ben Schülern spielen. 3. Sehen Sie die Stadt? Sie (it) ist sehr groß. 4. Die Nächte werden sehr lang. 5. Die Schüler spielten ein Spiel mit einem Hut.
 - (b) "Werden Sie die Sätze der Aufgabe schreiben?"
 "Ja, wir werden die Sätze schreiben und dem Lehrer zeigen."
 "Warum lernen Sie die Gedichte nicht?"
 Die Gedichte sind zu lang aber mir werden sie (them) lernen
 - "Die Gedichte sind zu lang, aber wir werden sie (them) lernen."
 "Gut! Wir werden ein Spiel spielen."
- (c) 1. Will he learn the sentences or the poems? 2. Shall you make the hats; will they be very large? 3. They were not playing; the teacher was reading a book, and the pupil was learning a poem. 4. Will the game be very long? 5. The nights will get long and cold in winter.
 - (d) "Will the pupils learn the sentences of the poem?"
 - "Yes, they will learn the poem; it is not very long."
 - "And will they write the exercise with a pen and ink?"
 - "No, they will play with the girls in the garden."
 - "The sentences of the exercise are getting too long."

Mein Baterland.

Dem Land, wo meine Wiege stand, Ist doch kein andres gleich; Es ist mein liebes Baterland Und heißt: das Deutsche Reich.

- Julius Sturm.

LESSON X.

Review.

Übung macht den Meister. — Deutsches Sprichwort.

Practice makes perfect (lit. the master). — German Proverb.

55. The Use of the Present for the Future. — As in English, German often replaces the future by the present, when no misunderstanding can arise. This occurs usually when the sentence contains an adverbial expression referring to the future.

They will play. Sie werden spielen.

To-morrow they (will) play ball. Worgen spielen sie Ball.

We shall study German. Bir werden Dentsch lernen.

Next year we (shall) study German. Rächstes Jahr lernen wir Dentsch.

56. Review Questions.

- (a) 1. Make an outline table of the present, past, and future tenses of haben, sein, werden, soben, and sehen. 2. Note that the verb forms of the first and third persons plural and the second person for formal address are always alike. In the past the first and third persons singular are also alike. The second person singular always ends in sf; the second person plural always in st, except seib.
- (b) 1. How do the personal endings of the past differ from those of the present in weak verbs; in strong verbs?
 2. Do strong verbs always have the same root vowel in the present?
 3. Do weak verbs?
 4. How can you distinguish the two uses of mercen?

- (c) 1. In what letter does the dative plural always end?
 2. How do feminine nouns differ from masculine nouns in the singular?
 3. How is the indirect object expressed in German?
 4. How does the German express the progressive and emphatic forms, he is praising and he does praise?
- (d) 1. What endings are included in the first class of nouns? the second class? 2. What pronoun would you use in speaking to your mother? your brother? your dog? your teacher? a good friend among your classmates? several of your classmates? 3. Give two original sentences illustrating the use of the present for the future.

57. Review Exercise.

1. I am studying the exercise; I found the pen; I shall give the pupil the book. 2. You (translate three ways) have a garden, were reading a book, will make a dress. 3. He is getting warm; he spoke German; he will do it. is not looking for the paper; she wrote the sentence; she will not find the exercise hard. 5. We are showing the pupils the flower; we did not understand German; we shall not do it. 6. They are reading a book; they did not do it; they will study the exercise. 7. Why are the sentences so 8. When shall we play the games? 9. Does the weather get warm in summer? 10. What were you looking for in the garden?

Das Wiffen.

Nicht das viele Wissen tut's, Sondern wissen etwas Gut's.

— Friedrich von Logau.

Die Lorelei.

Ich weiß nicht, was foll es bebeuten, Daß ich so traurig bin; Ein Märchen aus alten Zeiten, Das kommt mir nicht aus bem Sinn.

Die Luft ift fühl, und es dunkelt, Und ruhig fließt der Rhein; Der Gipfel des Berges funkelt Im Abendsonnenschein.

Die schönste Jungfrau sitzet, Dort oben wunderbar; Ihr goldnes Geschmeide blitzet, Sie kämmt ihr goldenes Haar.

Sie kämmt es mit golbenem Kamme Und singt ein Lied babei; Das hat eine wundersame, Gewaltige Melobei.

Den Schiffer im kleinen Schiffe Ergreift es mit wildem Weh; Er schaut nicht die Felsenriffe, Er schaut nur hinauf in die Höh'.

Ich glaube, die Wellen verschlingen Am Ende Schiffer und Kahn; Und das hat mit ihrem Singen Die Lorelei getan.

- Beinrich Beine.

LESSON XI.

Perfect Tense. Nouns of the Third Class.

Was haben Sie gesagt? Ich habe Sie nicht gehört. What did you say? I did not hear you.

58. Formation of the Perfect Tense. — The perfect tense is formed, as in English, by prefixing the present tense of haben, to have, to the past participle.

Perfect Tense of loben.

ich habe gelobt, I (have) praised.

bu hast gelobt, thou (hast) praised.

in habt gelobt, we (have) praised.

in habt gelobt, you (have) praised.

it habt gelobt, you (have) praised.

(has) praised.

- (a) In like manner conjugate ich habe es gesehen, ich habe es gehabt, ich habe nicht gesprochen, ich habe Sie verstanden.
- 59. The Principal Parts of a German verb are, as in English, the present infinitive, past, and past participle: sein, war, gewesen; haben, hatte, gehabt; loben, lobte, gelobt; sehen, sah, gesehen.

The weak past participle always ends in *(e)t, the strong in *en. Verbs take the prefix ge* in the past participle, if accented on the first syllable.

- (a) From the list in § 304 learn the principal parts of finben, geben, lesen, sein, sehen, sprechen, tun.
- 60. Position of Participle. The past participle, like the infinitive, stands at the end of the sentence.

Ich habe das Buch nicht gefunden. I have not found the book. Haben Sie dem Lehrer eine Rose gegeben? Did you give the teacher a rose?

61. Use of Past and Perfect Tenses. — To report a single finished act, especially in conversation and in questions, the German uses the perfect where the English has the past. The English did is usually a sign that the German perfect should be used.

I did not understand. Ich habe nicht verstanden. Did you find the girl ? Saben Sie das Mädchen gefunden?

(a) The German past is the English past progressive, and is used in continued narration.

The teacher was speaking. Der Lehrer fprach.
The pupil was reading the book. Der Schüler las bas Buch.

62. Nouns of the Third Class add ser to form the plural and take umlaut whenever possible; that is, when the stem vowel is a, o, u, or au. This class contains a large number of neuter monosyllables and about twelve masculines, but no feminines. Nouns ending in stum modify the vowel in the ending stum, instead of in the stem.

63. Declension of the Third Class of Nouns.

MASCULINE.

Singular.

Plural.

N. der Mann, the man.
G. des Mannes, the man's.
der Männer, the men's.
der Männer, the men's.

D. dem Manne, (to or for) the man. den Männern, (to or for) the men.

A. den Mann, the man. die Männer, the men.

NEUTER.

N. das Buch, the book. die Bücher, the books.
G. des Buches, of the book. der Bücher, of the books.

D. dem Buche, (to or for) the book. den Büchern, (to or for) the books.

A. das Buch, the book. die Bücher, the books.

(a) In like manner decline bas Rind (bie Kinber), bas Haus (bie Haufer), bas Glas (bie Glafer).

Vocabulary.

try; auf dem Lau'de, in the country.
das Wort, word; die Wör'ter, separate words; die Wor'te, con-

nected words in a sentence.

bas Land, bie Lan'der, land, coun-

das Lied, die Lie'der, song.

das Feld, die Fel'der, field.
fin'gen, fang, gefun'gen (haben),
to sing.
braun, brown.
fcdon, beautiful.

65.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Die Felber auf dem Lande sind nicht schön im Sommer; sie sind braun. 2. Haben Sie die Häuser auf dem Lande gesehen? 3. Die Linder haben den Männern die Lieder gesungen. 4. Der Schüler hat die Worte des Liedes nicht gelernt. 5. Die Kelder auf dem Lande waren braun; wir haben sie (them) gesehen.
 - (b) ."Haben Sie die Lieder gefungen?"
 - "Ja, aber wir haben die Worte nicht verstanden."
 - "Haben Sie die Lieder schwer gefunden?"
- "Nein, die Worte waren nicht schwer zu lernen, aber wir haben sie (them) nicht verstanden."
 - "Ich habe die Lieder nicht gelernt, aber ich werde sie singen."
- (c) 1. Did you find the children in the country? 2. The fields in the country get green in summer and brown in winter.

 3. The sentences were too long, and the men did not understand the words. 4. They have been looking for the men, but will they find them (fie)? 5. What has he done with the books? Where are they?
 - (d) "Didn't you understand the words of the song?"
 - "No, I haven't learned the song; I didn't understand it."
 - "But you have sung the song, haven't you?"
 - "Yes, I have sung it, but I didn't learn it."
 - "The song is very beautiful, and it is not hard to learn."

LESSON XII.

Perfect with fein. Weak Nouns.

Sie find zu spät gekommen; er ist schon gegangen. You have come too late; he has already gone.

66. Use of sein as Auxiliary. — Some verbs take sein as the auxiliary for the perfect. They are (1) intransitives that indicate motion (like gehen, fommen, etc.) or change of condition (like sterben, to die, werden, etc.), (2) sein and bleiben, to remain, and (3) some impersonals (§ 251).

Perfect Tense of gehen.

ich bin gegangen, I have gone, I wir find gegangen, we have gone, we went.

bu bift gegangen, thou hast gone.

er, sie, es ift gegangen, he, she, it sie sind gegangen, they have gone.

has gone.

- (a) In like manner conjugate ich bin nicht gekommen, ich bin da gewesen, ich bin geworben.
- 67. The Fourth Class of Nouns, commonly called the Weak Declension, contains masculines and feminines. The masculines form all cases, singular and plural, by adding π or π to the nominative singular. Feminines, of course, do not change in the singular; in the plural they add π

The fourth class includes:

- (1) Most masculines ending in =e and about twenty masculine monosyllables which used to end in =e (Held, Marr, etc.).
- (2) Foreign masculines with the accent on the last syllable (Student', Photograph', etc.).

- (3) Most feminines of more than one syllable, and those of one syllable not in Class II.
 - 68. Weak Declension of Nouns. Fourth Class.

MASCULINE.

Singular.

Plural.

N. der Anabe, the boy.
G. des Anaben, the boy's.

die Anaben, the boys. der Anaben, the boys'.

G. Des Knaven, the boy's

den Anaben, (to or for) the boys.

D. dem Anaben, (to or for) the boy.

A. den Anaben, the boy.

die Anaben, the boys.

FEMININE.

N. die Frau, the woman.

die Franen, the women.

G. der Frau, the woman's.

ber Franen, the women's.

D. ber Frau, (to or for) the woman.

den Frauen, (to or for) the women.

A. die Fran, the woman.

die Frauen, the women.

69. The Imperative in formal address is like the indicative inverted. (For a full treatment, see §§ 200 and 201.) An exclamation mark usually follows a German command.

Read the sentence. Lesen Sie den Sat!
Write the exercise. Schreiben Sie die Aufgabe!

(a) German uses the expression (id) bitte, I beg (of you) for the English (if you) please.

70.

Vocabulary.

der Herr, des Herrn, die Her'ren, gentleman ; sir ; Mr.

der Ana'be, des Anaben, die Anaben, boy.

die Frau, die Fran'en, woman; wife; Mrs.

die Da'me, die Damen, lady.

fom'men, fam, gefom'men (fein), to come.

gehen, ging, gegangen (fein), to go.

sterben, starb, gestorben (sein), er stirbt, to die.

nach Hanse, (to) home.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Bitte, kommen Sie nach Hause, und schreiben Sie die Sätze des Knaben! 2. Der Herr ist gegangen, aber die Dame ist gekommen. 3. Die Frau des Herrn ist gestorben. 4. Wosind Sie gewesen; sind Sie nach Hause gegangen? 5. Wastun Sie? Bitte, geben Sie dem Herrn das Buch des Knaben!
 - (b) "Ist der Knabe des Herrn in der Schule gewesen?"
 - "Nein, er ift nach Haufe gegangen."
 - "Aber warum ist er nicht gekommen?"
 - "Der Bater des Anaben ift geftorben."
- "Gehen Sie nach Hause und sagen Sie, er ist nicht hier gewesen!"
- (c) 1. Please give the boy the pens and the ladies the flowers. 2. The wife of the gentleman has gone home.

 3. When did the women come, and why did they go home?

 4. Come, read the exercise and write the sentences: 5. Did you go home, or did you come with the gentlemen?
 - (d) "Where have you been? Did you go home?"
 - "No, I did not go home."
 - "But you have not been at school!"
 - "I have just (eben) come."
 - "Why did you come? Why didn't you go home?"

Frühlingsahnung.

O fanfter, süßer Hauch! Schon weckest du wieder Mir Frühlingslieder; Bald blühen die Beilchen auch.

— Ludwig Uhland.

LESSON XIII.

Past Perfect Tense. Mixed Nouns.

Wie lange find Sie schon hier? How long have you been here?

72. Formation of the Past Perfect Tense. — The past perfect is formed as in English: hatte or mar is the auxiliary used. See §§ 58 and 66.

with hatte.

ich hatte gelobt, I had praised. dn hattest gelobt, thou hadst praised. er, fie, es hatte gelobt, he, she, it, had praised.

wir hatten gelobt, we had praised. thr hattet gelobt, you had praised. fie hatten gelobt, they had praised.

Conjugation of the Past Perfect Conjugation of the Past Perfect with mar.

> ich war gegangen, I had gone. dn warft gegangen, thou hadst gone. er, fie, es war gegangen, he, she, it had gone.

> wir waren gegangen, we had gone. ihr wart gegangen, you had gone. fie waren gegangen, they had gone.

- (a) In like manner conjugate ich hatte es gesehen, ich war ba gewesen, ich hatte es gehabt, ich war nicht gekommen, ich hatte nicht gesprochen, ich war alt geworben, ich hatte es verstanden.
- 73. German Substitutes for English Perfect and Past Perfect. When the English perfect denotes what has been and still is, German uses the present with fchon, already.

Have you been here long? Sind Sie ichon lange bier? How long have you studied German? Bie lange lernen Sie icon Deutich?

(a) Similarly when the English past perfect denotes what had been and still was. German uses the past with ichon.

Had you been there long? Baren Sie icon lange da? How long had you studied German ? Wie lange lernten Sie fon Deutsch?

Note. If the question, How long have (had) you studied German should be translated, Wie lange haben (hatten) Sie Deutsch gelernt, it would imply that you have (had) stopped studying German at the time of the question.

74. The Mixed Declension. — A few masculines and neuters are declined strong in the singular and weak in the plural (fifth class). Hence they are said to belong to the Mixed Declension.

75. The Mixed Declension. Fifth Class.

MASCULINE.

Singular.

Plural.

N.	her	Staat.	the	state
74.	ner	Ctuut,	uice	ounce.

G. des Staates, of the state.

D. dem Staate, (to) the state.

A. den Staat, the state.

die Staaten, the states. der Staaten, of the states.

den Staaten, (to) the states.

die Staaten, the states.

NEUTER.

N. das Ange, the eye.

G. des Anges, of the eye.

D. dem Ange, (to or for) the eye.

A. das Ange, the eye.

die Angen, the eyes.

der Angen, of the eyes.

den Angen, (to or for) the eyes.

die Angen, the eyes.

76.

Vocabulary.

ber Dorn, des Dorns, die Dor'nen,

ber See, bes Sees, die Se'en, lake.

der Cohn, die Goh'ne, son. bas Bett, des Bettes, die Bet'ten, bed; an Bett, to bed.

bas En'de, des Endes, die Enden,

lan'ge, adv., long, a long time. fáon. already.

wieviel'? how much? wievie'le? how many?

zwei, two.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Der Sohn bes Herrn war nicht zu Bett gegangen.
 2. Hatten Sie die Dornen der Rose nicht gesehen?
 3. Wir hatten dem Sohne des Herrn die zwei Enden des Sees gezeigt.
 4. Wieviele Augen haben wir?
 5. Ich serne die Sätze schon lange; ich gehe zu Bett.
 - (b) "Wie lange lernen Sie schon Deutsch?"
 - "Ich lerne es schon lange, aber ich verstehe es nicht."
 - "Sind Sie schon lange hier in der Schule?"
 - "Nein, nicht fehr lange."
 - "Ich hatte Sie nicht gefehen."
- (c) 1. Had you seen the thorns of the flowers in the garden?
 2. The two sons of the gentleman had grown (become) very large.
 3. The ends of the lakes had been very beautiful in summer.
 4. How many books and pens have we?
 5. That is not the end of the exercise, but I am going to bed.
 - (d) "How long have you been here at school?"
- "I have been here one (einen) summer and one (einen) winter."
 - "Have you already studied German?"
- "No, I have not studied German, but I have understood it a long time."
 - "That is good! Please read the sentences."

Spruch.

Zwei Dinge lern' geduldig tragen: Dein eigen Leid, der andern Klagen.

- Marie von Ebner-Efchenbach.

LESSON XIV.

Future Perfect. Gender.

Ein Cag ist nicht dem anderen gleich. — Goethe.

One day is not like another. — Goethe.

78. The Future Perfect is formed by the future of the auxiliary (id) werbe haben, etc.) and the past participle; the infinitive of the auxiliary (haben or fein) follows the past participle.

Ich werde gelobt haben. I shall have praised. Ich werde gegangen sein. I shall have gone.

- (a) As in English, the German future perfect is seldom used.
- 79. Rules of Gender.—There are no very helpful rules of gender. Below are given those which have fewest exceptions. These rules fall into two classes: those that determine the gender by meaning, and those that determine it by ending.
 - (a) Nouns that determine the gender by their meaning:—
- 1. Names of males, days, months, and seasons are masculine.
- der Mann, the man; der Sonn'tag, Sunday; der Mai, May; der Sommer, summer.
- 2. Names of females and abstract nouns are mostly feminine.

die Frau, the woman; die Freude, joy; die Liebe, love.

- 3. Names of cities or countries and words not nouns but used as such are usually neuter.
 - bas schine Berlin', beautiful Berlin; bas trene Dentsch'sand, loyal Germany; bas Leben, life (leben, to live).

- (b) Nouns that determine the gender by their ending:—
- 1. Nouns having the ending sith, sig, sling, or ser expressing agency, are masculine. Those in ser belong to Class I, those in sith, sig, or sling to Class II.
- der Tep'pich, the carpet; der Rö'nig, the king; der Jüng'ling, the young man; der Lehrer, the teacher.
- 2. Nouns having the ending sei, sheit, steit, sin, shoft, or sung, and most names of things ending in se, are feminine. These are all weak (Class IV).
- bie Königin, the queen; die Hoff'nung, hope; die Freund'schaft, friendskip; die Frei'heit, freedom; die Blume, sower.
- 3. Nouns ending in the diminutive suffixes, shen or slein, are neuter. These belong to Class I.

das Mädchen, the girl; das Fraulein, the young lady.

80.

Vocabulary.

der Freund, die Freun'de, friend. der Tag, die Ta'ge, day. der Mö'nat, die Wonate, month. die Wö'che, die Wochen, week.

das Jahr, die Jah're, year. vier, four.

fie'ben, seven. zwölf, twelve.

81. Exercise.

- (a) 1. Wir werden die Freunde des Anaben gesehen haben.
 2. Der Sohn der Dame ist zwölf Jahre alt, und die Tochter des Herrn ist sieben Jahre alt.
 3. Der Freund des Lehrers hat dem Anaben die Rosen in dem Garten gezeigt.
 4. Die Aufgaben des Schülers waren sehr lang gewesen, aber die Sätze sind nicht schwer.
 5. Die vier Herren sprechen schon lange Deutsch, aber sie schreiben es nicht.
- (b) "Sagen Sie, bitte, wieviele Bochen lernen Sie schon Deutsch?"

"Ich lerne schon zwei Monate Deutsch, oder sieben Wochen und vier Tage."

"Wieviele Monate hat ein Jahr?"

"Ein Jahr hat zwölf Monate."

- "Gut! Bitte, schreiben Sie die Sate der Aufgabe!"
- (c) 1. The boy's friends will have studied German. 2. The days had been wet and cold, but the water of the lake was warm. 3. The boy had a pen and a book; he was writing the four sentences, wasn't he? 4. We have studied the exercise; we shall write the twelve sentences. 5. A week has seven days; how many months has a year?
 - (d) "How many days has a week?"
 - "A week has seven days."
 - "And how many weeks has a month?"
 - "A month has four weeks, and a year has twelve months."
 - "Good! You have studied German; please write the exercise."

Wiegenlied.

Singet leise, leise, leise, Singt ein flüsternd Wiegenlied! Bon dem Monde lernt die Weise, Der so still am Himmel zieht.

Singt ein Lied so süß gelinde, Wie die Quellen auf den Rieseln, Wie die Bienen um die Linde Summen, murmeln, flüstern, rieseln.

- Clemens Brentano.

LESSON XV.

Review.

Man muß etwas sein, um etwas zu machen. — Goethe.

One must be something in order to do (make) something. — Goethe.

82.

Outline of Declensions.

CLASS.	MASO.	Frm.	NEUT.	Plural.	TAKE UMLAUT
1st strong	el, en, er	(Mutter, Tochter)	el, en, er, chen, lein	add nothing	sometimes
2d strong	mono- syllables	mono- syllables	mono- syllables	add e	usually
3d strong	tum and mono- syllables	none	tum and mono- syllables	add er	always
4th weak	(e)	(e)	none	n, en, nen	never
5th mixed	few	none	few	n, en	never

83.

Strong Noun Endings.

Singular.			_ Plural.			
Clas	ss I.	Class II.	Class III.	Class I.	Class II.	Class III.
N.	_		_		"e	"er .
G.	-8	−e ₿	-e\$		#e	"er
D.		-(e)	-(e)	"n	"en	"ern
Α.		_		и.	шe	"er

Note. The above tables are not meant to be complete, but just to give a graphic impression of the declensions.

Perfect Tenses.

Present Perfect = present of auxiliary (haben or fein) + past (also called perfect) participle.

Past Perfect = past of auxiliary + past participle. Future Perfect = future of auxiliary + past participle.

85.

Table of Cases.

Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc. bes Mannes Masc. Der Bruber aab dem Lehrer ben Stubl. Die Tochter Fem. der Frau gab ber Mutter die Rofe. Neut. Das Rind bes Männleins gab dem Mädchen bas Rleid. little man

86. Infinitive of Purpose. — The expression to, in order to, denoting purpose in English, is given in German by um . . . au with the infinitive. A comma precedes um.

He came to see the teacher. Er fam, um ben Lehrer zu fehen. We read in order to understand. Wir lefen, um an verftehen.

87. Review Questions.

- (a) 1. How is the German perfect formed? 2. What verbs take haben as auxiliary, and what take fein? 3. Give the rule for the position of the past participle.
- (b) 1. Distinguish between the use of the past and the perfect tenses in German. 2. What are the principal parts of a German verb? Illustrate. 3. What nouns are included in the weak declension?
- (c) 1. How is the formal imperative formed? 2. When does German use the present and past for the English perfect and pluperfect? 3. Give the rules of gender according to meaning, and according to endings.

Review Exercise.

- (a) 1. Die Freunde des Knaben sind gegangen, um die Rosen in dem Garten zu sehen. 2. Ich habe die Staaten und Länder gesehen. 3. Suchen Sie die Feder und das Papier, um zu schreiben? 4. Bitte, geben Sie dem Knaben das Buch, und lesen Sie die Sätze! 5. Was hatten die Kinder des Lehrers mit der Kreide getan? 6. Wir werden dem Manne die Messergeigen. 7. Wieviele Wochen hat ein Monat? 8. Wann hat das Mädchen das Kleid gemacht? 9. Werden die Tage im Sommer schön und warm werden? 10. Das Wetter ist kalt und naß geworden; die Blumen in dem Garten sind gestorben.
- (b) 1. The boys came to look for the pens and the paper.

 2. I am studying German, in order to read and write it.

 3. When did you show the dress to the girl? 4. The weather got (use perf. tense) very warm in summer, and the grass died. 5. The garden has been very green, but it (er) is getting brown. 6. I went home to show the exercise to my (meiner) mother. 7. Please read the sentences and write the exercise. 8. It has become very warm; the children have gone home. 9. Please learn the words, in order to write the sentences of the exercise. 10. The days had become very hot, but the nights had been cold.

Des Mädchens Lieb.

Heute, nur heute bin ich so schön, Morgen, ach morgen muß alles vergehn; Nur diese Stunde bist du noch mein, Sterben, ach sterben soll ich allein.

- Theodor Storm.

Wandrers Rachtlieb.

über allen Gipfeln Ift Ruh, In allen Wipfeln Spürest du Raum einen Hauch; Die Böglein schweigen im Walde. Warte nur, balbe Ruhest du auch.

— Bolfgang von Goethe.

Wie ift boch die Erbe fo fcon!

Wie ift boch die Erde fo schön, so schön! Das wissen die Vögelein; Sie heben ihr leicht Gefieder Und singen so fröhliche Lieder In den blauen Himmel hinein.

Wie ist doch die Erde so schön, so schön! Das wissen die Flüss' und Seen; Sie malen in klarem Spiegel Die Gärten und Städt' und Hügel, Und die Wolken, die drüber gehn.

Und Sänger und Maler wissen es Und Kinder und andere Leut'; Und wer's nicht malt, der singt es, Und wer's nicht singt, dem klingt es In dem Herzen vor lauter Freud'.

- Robert Reinid.

LESSON XVI.

Prepositions with the Dative or Accusative.

Un der Könige Höfen, an den Tischen der Reichen und vor den Turen der Verliebten horchte man auf die Dichter. — Goethe.

At kings' courts, by the tables of the rich, and in front of the doors of lovers they harkened to the poets. — Goethe.

89. Prepositions with Dative or Accusative. — The prepositions used with either dative or accusative are: an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen.

They take the dative in answer to the question where? in what place? (mo).

They take the accusative in answer to the question whither? to or into what place? (mohin).

Er faß in dem Saufe. He sat in the house. (Bo faß er?)

Er tam in das Saus. He came into the house. (Bohin tam er?)

Er ftand in ber Sutte. He stood in the hut. (Bo ftanb er?)

Er ging in die Butte. He went into the hut. (Bohin ging er?)

Er ging in der Hütte auf und ab. He went back and forth in the hut. (Bo ging er auf und ab?)

(a) Many prepositions may unite with the definite article: am for an bem; im for in bem; ins for in bas; auss for aus bas, etc.

90.

hin'ter, behind.

Vocabulary.

der Arm, die Ar'me, arm.
das Anie', die Ani'e, knee.
fit'zen, faß, gefef'fen (haben), to
sit.
an, at, near, by (rarely on).
auf, on, upon, onto.

in, in, into.
ne'ben, beside.
il'ber, over, above, across; fig.,
about.

un'ter, under; among.
vor, before, in front of.
zwi'sheu, between.

91.

- (a) 1. Er saß an dem Bulte auf einem Stuhle. 2. Wir sind über die Felder in die Stadt gegangen. 3. Er hatte das Mädchen im Arme und den Anaben auf dem Anie. 4. Bitte, kommen Sie in das Haus und schreiben Sie die Sätze in das Buch! 5. Wo sitzen Sie? (Answer on, at, beside, between, behind, and in front of what or whom.)
- (b) "Ging der Knabe zwischen die Blumen in dem Garten?" "Nein, er war nicht in dem Garten; er ist in die Stadt gegangen."
 - "Wird er in die Schule kommen?"
 - "Ja, er kommt in die Schule. Wo fitt er hier?"
- "Er sitt hinter einem Anaben und vor einem Anaben, aber zwischen zwei Mädchen."
- (c) 1. He sat beside the boy, in order to see the sentences in the book. 2. Did you go into the city to look for a pen?

 3. The ink was among the books on a chair beside the table.

 4. The man was sitting beside the desk with two books in his (ben) arms and a paper on his (bem) knee. 5. We went across the garden in front of the house to go into the city.
- (d) "You were sitting in the garden; why did you go into the house?"
 - "I went into the house to look for a paper among the books."
 - "Did you find the paper in the house?"
 - "Yes, it was on a chair by the desk."
- "And you found it on the chair and came here to (in bie) school, didn't you?"

LESSON XVII.

Personal Pronouns. Position of Objects.

Wer ist da?	Ich bin es.	Sind Sie es?	Er ist es
Who is there?	It is I.	Is it you?	It is he.

92.

Personal Pronouns.

First Per	rson.	Second Person.			
N. id, I. G. meiner, of me. D. mir, to me. A. mid, me.	wir, we. unfer, of us. uns, to us. uns, us.	du, thou. deiner, of thee. dir, to thee. diff, thee.	ihr, Sie, you. euer, Ihrer, of you euch, Ihnen, to you euch, Sie, you.		
	Third	Person.			
N. er, he. G. feiner, of him. D. ihm, to him. A. ihn, him.	fif, she. ihrer, of her. ihr, to her. fie, her.	es, it. feiner, of it. ihm, to it. es, it.	fie, they. ihrer, of them. ihnen, to them. fie, them.		
			_		

- 93. Agreement of Pronouns. In German, a personal pronoun of the third person must agree with its antecedent in gender as well as in person and number.
- Ich habe die Blume nicht gesehen; sie war zu klein. I did not see the Nower; it was too small.
- Essen Sie den Fisch nicht; er ist nicht gut. Do not eat the sish; it isn't good. Sehen Sie das Haus? Es gehört mir. Do you see the house? It belongs to me.
 - 94. The Position of Objects in German is just like English.
- (a) A personal pronoun, whether the direct or the indirect object, stands right after the simple verb or auxiliary.

Er gab es bem Lehrer. He gave it to the teacher. Er hat mir einen Brief geschrieben. He has written me a letter. (b) If both direct and indirect objects are personal pronouns, the accusative comes first.

In have shown it to him.

(c) If both objects are nouns, the indirect object (dative) usually comes before the direct (accusative) (see § 45).

Er gab bem Lehrer ein Buch. He gave the teacher a book.

95.

Vocabulary.

ber Ball, die Bäl'le, ball.
der Schuh, die Schu'he, shoe.
die Bant, die Bän'te, bench.
die Klafj'se, die Klaffen, class.
daß Boot, die Boo'te, boat.
daß Schiff, die Schif'se, ship.

le'gen, legte, gelegt' (haben), to lay, laid, laid. lie'gen, lag, gele'gen (haben), to lie, lay, lain. fet'zen, fette, gefett' (haben), to set.

96.

- (a) 1. Der Schuh ist hier; ich habe ihn unter dem Bette gefunden. 2. Sie hat den Ball auf den Tisch gelegt; er lag auf einem Stuhle. 3. Die Männer haben die Bänke in das Schiff gesetzt und die Stühle in ein Boot gelegt. 4. Die Schüler der Klasse suchen den Ball; er liegt unter einer Bank, oder neben dem Pulte. 5. Wir sind in ein Boot gegangen, um in das Schiff zu kommen.
- (b) "Hat das Kind Ihnen einen Ball gegeben? Ich sehe ihn nicht."
 - "Ja, er ist hier; ich habe ihn auf die Bank gelegt."
 - "Ich finde ihn nicht; er liegt nicht auf der Bank."
 - "Er liegt unter bem Papier; sehen Sie?"
 - "Ja, er ist hier. Danke fehr."
- (c) 1. The man showed (use perf. tense) the ball to the class, but he gave it (§ 93) to me. 2. The boy found a shoe

in the garden and laid it on a bench.

3. We went into two boats in order to be beside the ship.

4. The father laid the child on the bench, but the child did not lie on the bench.

5. Where is the ball? I do not see it. It is lying on the table.

- (d) "I do not find the shoe. Did you set it under the bed?"
- "No, I laid it on the bench. It is lying beside the ball."
- "Why didn't you show it to me?"
- "It was not hard to see it. I did not come into the house to give it to you."

LESSON XVIII.

Prepositions with the Dative. Inverted Order.

Eile mit Weile. — Deutsches Sprichwort.

The more haste the less speed (lit. haste with delay).

97. Prepositions with Dative. — The commonest prepositions with the dative are and, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu.

Ans dem Hause, out of the house. Bei uns, with us, at our house. Rach der Stadt, to the city.

98. When referring to inanimate objects ba(r)= is generally used with prepositions instead of a personal pronoun. Compare the English thereupon, therewith.

On it, out of it, in it. Darauf, daraus, darin.
With it, beside it, from it. Damit, daneben, davon.

99. Inverted Order. — In the inverted order the subject stands directly after the simple verb or auxiliary.

(a) This order is used, as in English (1) in direct questions whose subject is not an interrogative pronoun, and (2) in commands where the form with Sie is used.

Do you speak German? Sprechen Sie Deutsch? When will he come? Waun wird er kommen? Give me the book. Geben Sie mir das Buch!

(b) The inverted order is used in declarative sentences, when they are introduced by some element other than the subject.

Now I am ready. Zent bin ich fertig. In summer it is beautiful. Im Sommer ist es schön. I'm looking for a pen, not for ink. Eine Feber suche ich, uicht Tinte.

100.

Vocabulary.

ber Mdn'tag, Monday.
bie But'ter, butter.
bie Sup'pe, die Suppen, soup.
bas Brot, die Bro'te, bread.
bas Fleisch, die Flei'sche, meat.
essign, ass, gegesssen (haben), er
. ist, to eat.
rei'chen, reichte, gereicht (haben), to
hand, pass (as at table).

ans, out of.

bei, near; at the house of (with persons).

. mit, with.

nach, after; to (a place).

feit, since; for.

von, from, of; by (to denote the agent).

zu, to (a person).

101.

- (a) 1. Bei dem Lehrer haben wir Fleisch, Brot und Butter gegessen. 2. Seit Montag haben die Knaben Brot und Butter mit der Suppe gegessen. 3. Die Schüler sind mit den Mädschen aus dem Hause zu dem Lehrer gegangen. 4. Ich habe bavon gelesen; was haben Sie damit getan? 5. Bitte, reichen Sie dem Knaben die Butter; sie ist auf dem Tische.
 - (b) "Bitte, reichen Sie mir bas Fleisch!" "Essen Sie Brot und Butter mit dem Fleisch?"

- "Ja, nach der Suppe effe ich Fleisch mit Brot und Butter."
- "Bei uns effen wir Brot und Butter nach dem Fleisch."
- "Ift das wahr? Bitte, reichen Sie mir das Brot mit der Butter!"
- (c) 1. I passed the boy the butter, and beside it he laid the bread. 2. At our house we eat meat after the soup. 3. At the teacher's (house) he passed us the bread and the butter with the meat. 4. Since Monday I have not gone home from school with the girls. 5. What have you done with it? I shall not speak of it.
 - (d) "Please pass me the bread and the butter."
 - "At our house we don't eat butter with the soup."
- "Here I eat bread with the soup and bread and butter with the meat."
- "Please pass me the meat. I eat meat after the soup and bread and butter with it."

LESSON XIX.

Prepositions with the Accusative. Possessives.

Ich danke Ihnen, (ich) danke sehr, (ich) danke schön, besten Dank, thanks. — Bitte, bitte sehr, bitte schön, you are welcome, lit. (1) beg (you not to mention it).

102. Prepositions with Accusative. — The prepositions used with the accusative are bis, burth, für, gegen, ohne, um, wider.

Ohne dich, without you.

Für das Kind, for the child.

v Durch ben Garten, through the garden.

103. The Possessive Adjectives are formed from the genitive of the personal pronouns, as follows:—

(ih) mein, my. (fie) ihr, her. (ihr) ener, your. (du) bein, thy. (es) fein, its. (fie) ihr, their. (er) fein, his. (wir) unfer, our. (Sie) Jhr, your.

(a) The possessives and the negative fein, not a, no, are called "ein" words, because they are declined in the singular like ein.

104. Declension of the Possessives.

Singular. Masc. Neut. Fem. N. mein Bruber meine Bant mein Buch G. meines Brubers meiner Bauf meines Buches D. meinem Rruder meiner Banf meinem Buche A. meinen Bruber meine Rant mein Buch Plural. N. meine Brüber meine Bante meine Bücher G. meiner Brüber meiner Bante meiner Bücher D. meinen Brübern meinen Banten meinen Büchern A. meine Brüber meine Bante meine Bücher

- (a) In like manner decline bein hut, seine Tochter, ihr haus, eure Stadt, unsere Blume, Ihr Kleid, kein Garten.
- (b) Note that the endings are the same for all genders in the plural, and that ener usually drops its second e for euphony when it has an ending; ener, ener; eners, ener, eners, etc. Unfer may do the same: unfer, unfre, unfer; unfres, unfrer, unfres, etc.
- 105. Agreement of Possessives. A possessive adjective must agree in stem with its antecedent; in ending, with its noun.

I have my book. Ich habe mein Buch.

I have my books. Ich habe meine Bücher.

We have our book. Wir haben unfer Buch.

The rose has its thorns. Die Rose hat ihre Dornen.

The girl sees her mother. Das Mädchen sieht seine Mutter.

106. Use of fein. — German uses fein to express no, not any, not a, unless it is meant to be very emphatic. Nicht ein means not one.

I haven't any bread. Ich habe fein Brot. He didn't say a word. Er fagte fein Bort. Not one word did he speak. Nicht ein Bort fprach er.

107.

Vocabulary.

ber Brief, bie Brie'fe, letter.
ber Hund, die Hun'de, dog.
die Ruh, die Rü'he, cow.
die Tür, die Tü'ren, door.
bit'ten, bat, gebe'ten (haben), to
beg, ask; for, nm; bitte, please;
you're welcome.
dau'fen, danfte, gedanft (haben),

with dative, to thank; for, für; (id) danke, thank you.
kein, no, not a, not any, none.
durch, through.
für, for.
ge'gen, against.
sh'ne, without.
um, for; around.

108.

- (a) 1. Sie gibt ihrem Hunde sein Fleisch; ich sehe ihn durch die Tür. 2. In dem Felde sindet der Mann kein Gras für seine Rühe; ohne Gras werden die Rühe sterben. 3. Wir sind durch Ihren Garten und um unser Haus gegangen, um unser Hund zu sinden. 4. Das Mädchen setzte sein Pult gegen die Tür, um seine Aufgabe für seinen Lehrer zu schreiben. 5. Der Knabe hat seine Mutter um Brot und Butter gebeten, aber er hat ihr nicht gedankt.
 - (b) "Haben Sie keine Briefe für mich?"
 - "Haben Sie ihre Freunde um Briefe gebeten?"
- "Ja, und mein Bater hat mir zwei durch die Tür gereicht, aber sie waren nicht für mich."
 - "Ich schreibe keine Briefe. Ich bin sehr dagegen!" "So? Aber es ist nicht gut, ohne Briefe zu sein."

- (c) 1. I don't see any cow; where is it? 2. Without their dog the boys went around our garden and through their father's field. 3. The lady did not ask for a flower, but her mother gave her a rose; she thanked her mother for it. 4. Through the door I saw our cow and your dog in the field.
- 5. Did you thank your mother for her letter? It (§ 93) was very beautiful.
 - (d) "Did your friend thank you for his letter?"
 - "No, he didn't have any letter."
 - "Didn't he ask you for any paper or any pen?"
- "Yes, and I gave them to him, but I hadn't any ink for him."
 - "He writes no letters without ink."

LESSON XX.

Apposition. Review.

Hunde, die bellen, beißen nicht. — Sprichwort. Barking dogs never bite.

- 109. Apposition. A noun in apposition with another has the same case.
- Nominative. Mein Bater, der Lehrer, ift gekommen. My father, the teacher, has come.
- Genitive. Ich lese das Buch meines Baters, des Lehrers. I am reading the book of my father, the teacher.
- Dative. Er hat es meinem Bater, dem Lehrer, gegeben. He gave it to my father, the teacher.
- Accusative. Haft du meinen Bater, den Lehrer, gesehen? Have you seen my father, the teacher?

110.

Review Questions.

- (a) 1. Which prepositions take dative or accusative?
- 2. When do they take the dative, and when the accusative?
- 3. Which prepositions take only the accusative? Which only the dative?
- (b) 1. Give the personal pronouns in German. all the cases where fie and ihr occur. 3. Give the rule for the order of objects when both are pronouns; both nouns; one a pronoun and one a noun.
- (c) 1. Give the rule for inverted order. 2. How are the possessive adjectives formed from the personal pronouns? 3. Give the rule for their agreement with their antecedent and with the noun they modify.
- (d) Distinguish carefully between lie, lay, lain (liegen, lag, gelegen) and lay, laid, laid (legen, legte, gelegt). Also between sit, sat, sat (figen, faß, gefeffen) and set, set, set (fegen, fege, gefest). Liegen and fitten are strong, never take an object, and always express rest; legen and feten are always weak, transitive, and express motion.

111. Review Exercise.

- (a) 1. She found a ball and laid it by a bench, on the bed, behind the door, in the garden, beside a desk, over the paper, under a table, in front of the man, between the houses. 2. Here is a rose; it lay by the chalk, on the grass, behind the dress, in the glass, beside the hat, over the paper, under the water, in front of the dog, between the flowers. girl found a rose in our garden, and she gave it to me. 4. The boy with a letter saw the girl, and he gave it to her.
- 5. He went out of the house, near the garden, with his dog,

to the city, from the field, to his father. 6. We had come through the door, without your flowers, around the field.

(b) 1. The girl has her flower, and the flower has its thorn. 2. Under the table the girl found a rose; we gave it to her. 3. Have you seen my brother, the teacher? He is in the gar-4. In the school the pupils had no ink; den with his books. they asked the teacher for it. 5. The boy asked for the butter on the table and I passed it to him. 6. You asked (use perfect tense) for it; what will you do with it? our garden I saw my dog with your father, the teacher. 8. In (the) school we speak German and write our exercises on our desks. 9. The girl came out of the school to go home: she had her books under her (use def. art.) arm. 10. What did you say? You have no paper? What did you do with it?

Berbftlieb.

Deine Blumen sind verblüht, Leer und kahl steht Felb und Hain. Mutter Erbe, du bist müb', Und der Winter hüllt dich ein.

Haft du doch genug geschafft, Allen reich den Tisch gedeckt; Sammle dir nun neue Kraft, Bis der Lerche Lied dich weckt!

— Julius Sturm.

Bor Jena.

Auf ben Bergen, die Burgen, Im Tale, die Saale, Die Mädchen im Städtchen— Einft alles wie heut! Ihr werten Gefährten, Wo seid ihr zur Zeit mir, Ihr lieben, geblieben? Ach, alle zerstreut!

Die einen, sie weinen, Die andern, sie wandern, Die dritten noch mitten Im Wechsel der Zeit; Auch viele am Ziele, Zu den Toten entboten, Berdorben, gestorben In Lust oder Leid.

Ich alleine, ber eine, Schau' wieder hernieder Zur Saale im Tale, Doch traurig und stumm; Eine Linde im Winde, Die wiegt sich und biegt sich, Rauscht schaurig und traurig, Ich weiß wohl warum!

- Lebrecht Dreves.

auten Büchern.

gute Bücher.

LESSON XXI.

Strong Declension of Adjectives. Nouns of Measure.

Guten Morgen, Herr Lehrer. Guten Tag, meine Kinder. Good morning, (Mr.) teacher. Good day, (my) children.

112. Strong Declension of Adjectives. — When not preceded by an article, or some other word with distinctive endings (§ 116), the adjective must indicate the number, gender, and case of the noun. This is called the Strong Declension of Adjectives.

The adjective takes the following endings, akin to the definite article, except that with strong nouns in the genitive singular masculine and neuter, euphony requires en instead of es. Here the adjective does not need to be strong, as the noun ending indicates its number and case.

Singular.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
N. guter Mann.	gute Fran.	gutes Buch.	
G. guten Mannes.	gnter Fran.	guten Buches.	
D. gutem Manue.	guter Frau.	gutem Buche.	
A. guten Mann.	gute Frau.	gutes Buch.	
	$\cdot Plural.$		
N. gute Manner.	gute Frauen.	gute Bücher.	
G. guter Männer.	guter Frauen.	guter Bücher.	

(a) In like manner decline junger Schüler, warmer Tag, weiße Ruh, schöne Tochter, schweres Rind, beifies Baffer.

guten Frauen.

aute Fraueu.

D. guten Mäunern.

A. aute Männer.

(b) At the top of the next page are given the typical strong endings. Note their resemblance to those of the definite article.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plu.
=er	*t	=e\$	=e
=e8 (en)	•er	ses (en)	=er
=em	=er	=em	=en
=en	*e	= t \$	= e

113. Omission of Preposition after Nouns of Measure. — Nouns following expressions like a glass of, a piece of, etc., are given in German without a preposition. They are put in apposition, and so are in the same case (§ 109).

A glass of milk. Ein Glas Milch.

A piece of bread. Gin Stud Brot.

A cup of white wine. Gine Taffe weißer Bein.

With a glass of hot water. Mit einem Glas heißem Baffer.

(a) Masculine and neuter nouns of measure after a numeral usually have the same form in both singular and plural. Feminines have the regular plural form.

Bier Fuß, four feet. Sieben Pfund, seven pounds. Zwei Zassen, two cups.

114.

Vocabulary.

ber Raffee, bes Raffees, coffee.
ber Tee, des Tees, tea.
die Taffe, die Taffen, cup.
die Wilch, der Wilch, milk.
das Stück, die Stücke, piece.

das Pfund, zwei Pfund, pound. blau, blue. jung, young.

rund, round. weiß, white.

115.

Exercise.

(a) 1. In kaltem Wetter haben wir warme Kleiber. 2. In bem Garten sehe ich weiße Blumen und grünes Gras. 3. Junge Mädchen schreiben lange Aufgaben mit runden Federn und blauer Tinte. 4. Wir haben ein Glas heiße Wilch und eine Tasse Tee

auf dem Pult gefunden. 5. Der Anabe hatte ein Stück weißes Brot in der Hand und vier Pfund Kaffee unter dem Arm.

(b) "Ich habe ein Glas kalten Tee. Bitte, geben Sie mir eine Tasse heißen Kaffee!"

"Eine Tasse warmer Tee ist gut für Sie."

- "Wieviel Kaffee und Tee haben Sie im Hause?"
- "Ich habe ein Pfund grünen Tee und zwei Pfund braunen Raffee, aber keine Milch."
- (c) 1. Please set a cup of tea and a glass of warm milk beside my piece of bread. 2 Young pupils were writing hard exercises on white paper with blue ink. 3. Round pieces of meat and a pound of coffee lay on the table beside a glass of hot water. 4. Our teacher was writing long sentences with a piece of white chalk. 5. On the table we saw two pounds of green tea, a piece of meat, a cup of hot coffee, and a glass of cold milk.
 - (d) "Have you warm milk in your cup?"
- "No, I have a cup of cold coffee. Please give me a glass of hot tea."
- "Good! I have here two pounds of green tea and four cups of hot water. But I haven't any coffee."
 - "Please give me a cup of tea. I thank you."

Müde bin ich.

Mübe bin ich, geh' zur Ruh, Schließe beibe Äuglein zu; Bater, laß die Augen bein Über meinem Bette sein.

- Luife Benfel.

LESSON XXII.

Weak Declension of Adjectives.

Jeder ist sich selbst der Nächste. — Sprichwort. Charity begins at home (lit. Every one is nearest to himself).

116. Weak Declension of Adjectives. — An adjective is weak when used with the definite article ber, or with biefer, this, jener, that, or jeber, every. These are called "ber" words, as they have endings like ber. The adjective following does not need strong endings, because number and case are shown by the "ber" word.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	der gute Mann	diese gute Frau	jenes gute Buch
G.	des guten Mannes	diefer guten Frau	jenes guten Buches
D.	dem guten Manne	diefer guten Frau	jenem guten Buche
A.	den guten Mann	diese gute Fran	jenes gute Buch
		Plural.	
N.	die guten Männer	diese gnten Franen	jene guten Bücher
G.	der guten Männer	diefer guten Frauen	jener guten Bücher
D.	den guten Männern	diefen guten Frauen	jenen guten Büchern
A.	die guten Männer	diefe guten Franen	jene guten Bücher

- (a) Decline ber icone Tag, jene rote Rofe, jedes fleine Stud.
- (b) Below are given the typical weak endings. Notice that a weak ending of an adjective is always preceded by a strong ending of another word.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plural.		
(-er) -e	(-e) - e	(-e\$) -e	(-e) -en		
(-e\$) -en	(-er) -en	(-es) -en	(-er) -en		
(-em) -en	(-er) -en	(-em) -en	(-en) -en		
(-en) -en	(-e) -e	(-e\$) -e	(-e) -en		

117. Accusative of Definite Time. — Expressions of definite time are put in the accusative.

Every day, jeden Tag; this year, diefes Jahr.

118.

Vocabulary.

der La'den, die Läden, store.
das Geld, die Gel'der, money.
tan'fen, taufte, getauft (haben), to
duy.
tlein, small, little.

verfau'fen, verfaufte, verfauft (haben), to sell.
bie'fer, this.
je'ber, every.
je'uer, that.

119.

- (a) 1. Jener junge Knabe hatte das schöne Mädchen jeden Tag gesehen. 2. Die alte Frau hatte kein Geld, um in dem kleinen Laden ein Pfund Kaffee zu kaufen. 3. Die kleine Tochter des alten Lehrers spricht diese Woche sehr gutes Deutsch.

 4. Mein Bruder hat diese kleinen Blumen verkauft und mit seinem Gelde in einem Laden ein Glas kalte Milch gekauft.

 5. Jeden Tag geht jener alte Mann ohne Geld in diesen kleinen Laden.
 - (b) "Hat jener kleine Schüler diesen langen Satz geschrieben?" "Nein, diese kleinen Schüler schreiben keine Sätze."
- "Aber jeder gute Anabe schreibt die kleinen Sätze. Warum schreiben jene Schüler nicht?"
 - "Diese jungen Kinder haben keine Feder und keine Tinte."
- "So? Ich werde Feder und Tinte für diese guten Knaben kaufen."
- (c) I haven't any money to buy a cup of coffee in that little store.

 2. The poor man sold that little house this week.

 3. In this little garden I looked every day for the red roses, but I did not find any flowers.

 4. My brother went into

that little store of his friend, but he hadn't any money to buy that brown hat. 5. Did the little boy sell his roses in that large store and buy these little books with the money?

- (d) "Haven't you any money? Why did you come into this little store?"
- "I did not come in order to buy. I came to sell these brown shoes for that old lady."
 - "What will she buy with the money?"
- "This week she has asked me every day for the money (in order) to buy bread for her children."

LESSON XXIII.

Mixed Declension of Adjectives.

Zu jedem ganzen Werk gehört ein ganzer Mann. — Rückert. Every complete work requires a complete man.

120. Mixed Declension of Adjectives.— An adjective is declined as shown at the top of the next page, when it follows the article ein, the negative fein, no, none, or any possessive, like mein, bein, ihr, etc. These are all declined like ein, and are called "ein" words. Note that unfer is an "ein" word and not a "ber" word.

In the nominative singular masculine, and nominative and accusative singular neuter, these words have no ending. Therefore a following adjective must be strong in order to show number and case. In all other cases the adjective is weak. Hence the term *Mixed Declension*, because the adjective is sometimes strong, sometimes weak.

Singular.

Mașc.	Fem.	Neut.		
N. mein armer Hund	feine andere Stadt	ihr kleines Kind		
G. meines armen Hundes	feiner anderen Stadt	ihres fleinen Kindes		
D. meinem armen Hunbe	feiner anderen Stadt	ihrem kleinen Kinde		
A. meinen armen Hund	feine andere Stadt	ihr kleines Kind		
	Plural.			
N maine armen Sunhe	teine anderen Städte	ihre Heinen Oinher		

- N. meine armen Hunde
 G. meiner armen Hunde
 D. meinen armen Hunde
 A. meine armen Hunde
 Teine anderen Städte
 Teine anderen Städten
 Teine anderen Städten
- (a) Decline ein alter Mann, Ihr großer Knabe, unsere alte Mutter, sein neues Messer, meine weiße Rose, euer altes Haus. (Soe § 104, b.)
- (b) Below are given the *mixed endings* for "ein" words and adjectives. Note that they are like the typical weak endings (§ 116, b) with "ber" words, except in the singular of the nominative masculine and of the nominative and accusative neuter.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plural.
(—) -er	(-e) -e	(—) -e \$	(-e) -en
(-e\$) -en	(-er) -en	(–es) –en	(-er) -en
(-em) -en	(-er) -en	(-em) -en	(-en) -en
(-en) -en	(-e) -e	(—) -e8	(-e) -en

121. Position of nie. — Nie has the same position in the sentence as nicht (§ 23).

I never saw those roses. Ich habe jene Rosen nie gesehen. He never came into the city. Er tam nie in die Stadt.

122. Vocabulary.

ber Löffel, die Löffel, spoon.
ber Teller, die Teller, plate.
bie Gabeln, fork.
bas Ei, die Eier, egg.
bas Ding, die Dinge, thing.
ander, other, different.

trin'ten, trant, getrunken (haben),
to drink.
neu, new.
arm, poor.
rein, clean.
nie, never.

123.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Sein armer Bruder hat nie aus einem großen Glase getrunken; er trinkt aus einer kleinen Tasse. 2. Unsere großen Teller und die anderen Dinge auf diesem Tische sind nie rein. 3. Mein neuer Löffel ist nicht so rein wie (as) Ihre alte Gabel; ich habe damit Eier gegessen. 4. Kein anderes Ding liegt zwischen meiner neuen Gabel und diesem reinen Löffel. 5. Der Löffel, die Gabel und das Messer liegen auf einem reinen Teller.
- (b) "Bitte, geben Sie mir eine andere Gabel! Diese Dinge sind nicht rein."
- "Hier ist ein neuer Löffel und eine reine Gabel. Sie liegen auf einen reinen Teller."
- "Ich habe meinen warmen Kaffee aus einer neuen Tasse getrunken."

"Und ich habe meine kalten Gier und diese anderen Dinge mit meinem alten Messer und meiner alten Gabel gegessen."

- (c) 1. His poor mother never drinks her warm tea out of a little cup; she drinks it (§ 93) out of a big glass. 2. Your new spoon is lying between your plate and those other things.
- 3. Every day I go into a large store, but I never buy new things.4. No other man has seen my poor friend's letter.
- 5. What is that clean, white round thing beside my plate?
- (d) "Here is my new fork; it is clean; I have never eaten eggs with it."
 - "Where are your new spoon and my little fork?"
- "Your little fork and my new spoon are lying on the table, but our other things are not here."
- "I will drink out of our old cup and eat an egg with your new spoon."

LESSON XXIV.

Adjectives after welch, folch, etc.

All good things come in threes. - Sprichwort.

124. Manch, many a, solch, such a, and welch, which, may be declined like "ber" words. A following adjective is then weak.

Many an old book, manches alte Buch. On such a warm day, an folchem warmen Tage. Which young boy? Welcher junge Knabe?

(a) But usually these words are indeclinable and do not affect a following construction at all. The adjective may be strong or mixed. When indeclinable, weld, is exclamatory and means what.

Many an old book, manch altes Buch.

manch ein altes Buch.

On such a warm day, an fold warmem Tage.

an folch einem warmen Tage.

What a young boy! Welch junger Knabe!

Welch ein junger Knabe!

With what a young boy! Mit welch jungem Knaben!
Wit welch einem jungen Knaben!

(b) All, all, is usually declined as a "ber" word when followed directly by an adjective. When followed by a "ber" word or an "ein" word, it is usually indeclinable.

All good tea, aller gute Tee.

Of all good things, aller guten Dinge.

All the old books, all die alten Bücher.

Of all these blue flowers, all diefer blanen Blumen.

With all ny little friends, mit all meinen fleinen Freunden.

125. Adverbs. — The uninflected form of most adjectives is used also as an adverb. A single adverb has the same position as night (§ 23).

Du bift gut (adj.). You are good. Du leruft gut (adv.). You learn well. Er ift ein hösticher Mann (adj.). He is a polite man. Er sprach sehr höstich (adv.). He spoke very politely.

126.

Vocabulary.

ber Bo'ben, die Boden, stoor. ber Tep'pich, die Teppiche, carpet. die Lam'pe, die Lampen, lamp. die Wand, die Wände, wall (of a room).

room).
das Bild, die Bilder, picture.
das Zim'mer, die Zimmer, room.

ho'len, holte, geholt (haben), to fetch, go and get.
han'gen, hing, gehangen (haben), er hängt, to hang (intrans.).
höf'lich, polite.
flei'fig, industrious; fleifig lernen,

to study hard.

127.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Manch alter Teppich liegt auf bem Boben. 2. Ich habe all meine Bücher und eine große Lampe aus meinem Zimmer geholt; ich werde fleißig lernen. 3. All diese jungen Schüler haben fleißig gelernt; sie schreiben all ihre Aufgaben sehr gut. 4. Mein junger Freund sprach sehr höslich; er hatte solch ein schönes Bilb nie gesehen. 5. Kein Teppich lag auf dem Boben des Zimmers, aber eine kleine Lampe war auf dem Tisch, und an der Wand hing ein schönes Bilb.
- (b) "Welch schönes Bilb hängt an ber Wand dieses alten Zimmers!"
- "Ich habe manch schönes Ding gesehen, aber solch ein schönes Bild habe ich nie gefunden."

"Haben Sie folch eine alte Lampe gesehen?"

"Nein, ich habe fleißig gesucht, aber solch eine Lampe habe ich

nie gefunden. Und ich sage dieses nicht, um höslich zu sprechen. Es ist wahr."

- (c) (Write adjective modifiers in as many ways as possible.)
- 1. All these young girls are studying hard; they write these long sentences very well.

 2. What large pictures on (an) the wall! I have never seen such beautiful things.

 3. Many
- an old woman has never seen such a carpet on the floor.
 - 4. We have seen many a beautiful flower, but we have never seen such red roses. 5. Which lamp did you fetch out of that big room?
 - (d) "What big words! We have never read such hard exercises."
 - "You will study hard in order to write many a long sentence."
 - "But I have never seen such long words."
 - "These long sentences are not hard. Get your paper and write."
 - "I will study hard, and we shall write the exercise well."

LESSON XXV.

Review.

Die Alten zum Rat, die Jungen zur Cat. — Sprichwort. The old for counsel, the young for action.

128. Summary of Adjective Declensions.

- (a) A predicate adjective is not inflected.
- (b) An attributive adjective is inflected. It is inflected weak when preceded by a "ber" word, mixed when preceded by an "ein" word, and strong when not preceded by either. But,

while an attributive adjective has these three kinds of declension, it has only two kinds of ending: (1) weak and (2) strong.

- (1) Its endings are weak when preceded by a "ber" word or an inflected form of an "ein" word. The adjective, when weak, has only two endings, se and s(e)n. It takes se in the nominative and accusative singular of all genders except the accusative masculine; s(e)n in all other cases.
- (2) The endings of an adjective are strong when not preceded by a "ber" word or an inflected form of an "ein" word. When strong it takes endings like the definite article.

Note. The endings of an adjective in the Mixed Declension are the same as those in the Weak, except in cases where the "ein" word has no ending (is not inflected). Then the strong ending (wanting in "ein" words) is substituted for the weak ending in the adjective.

(c) An adjective used as a noun is written with a capital to show its noun nature, and declined like ah adjective to show its adjective nature.

Giu Armer, a poor man. Der Junge, the young man. Das Gute, the good.

(d) To translate English one following an adjective, German uses simply the inflected adjective, agreeing in gender with the noun implied in one.

Give me this book and that one. Geben Sie mir dieses Buch und jenes. That's not my hat; I bought a new one. Das ift mein Hut nicht; ich habe einen neuen gekanft.

Here is a pen; haven't you any (one)? Hier ift eine Feber; haben Sie teine?

129. Review Questions.

(a) 1. What is the peculiarity of the German expressions for a glass of, a piece of, a cup of, etc.? 2. What is the posi-

- tion of a single adverb in the sentence? 3. When does German use fein? 4. How is definite time expressed in German?
- (b) 1. Why must the adjective be strong when no article modifies a noun? 2. Why may the adjective be weak in the genitive singular of masculine and neuter nouns? 3. Is there any reason why it should be weak? 4. Give and illustrate the peculiarities of manth, folds, welch, and all.
- (c) 1. Name the "ber" words and the "ein" words. 2. When is the adjective following them weak, and when strong?

 3. What is meant by an inflected form? 4. How do adjectives used as nouns differ from other inflected adjectives?

130. Review Exercise.

1. Good boy, a good boy, the good boy, this good boy, such a good boy, what a good boy, which good boy, your good boy, many a good boy.

2. Put each of the above expressions into the genitive and accusative singular.

3. We go every day; we go every warm day.

4. I have a glass of water, a piece of bread, a cup of coffee, and a pound of meat.

5. She will never write well.

6. The good die young, but the poor we have always (immer) with (bei) us.

7. I have never seen that little school, such a little one (school), your beautiful garden, this old dress, blue roses.

8. Every day this summer we have had warm weather.

9. My young friend set a cup of tea on the table and laid a piece of bread beside it.

10. We have never sold such good meat to the poor.

Lied des Fischerknaben.

Es lächelt ber See; er labet zum Babe. Der Knabe schlief ein am grünen Gestabe; Dort hört er ein Klingen, wie Flöten so süß, Wie Stimmen ber Engel im Paradies.—Schiller.

Der erfte Mai.

Der erste Tag im Monat Mai Ift mir ber glücklichste von allen. Dich fah ich und geftand dir frei, Den erften Tag im Monat Mai, Dag dir mein Berg ergeben fei. Wenn mein Geftandniß dir gefallen, So ist ber erfte Tag im Mai Für mich ber glücklichste von allen.

- Friedrich von Sageborn.

Du deutst an mich fo felten

Du bentst an mich fo felten, 3ch bent' an dich so viel ; Getrennt wie beide Welten Ift unser beiber Biel.

Doch möcht' ich beide Welten Durchziehn an beiner Band, Bald schlummern unter Zelten, Bald gehn von Land zu Land.

Und möchtest du vergelten Durch Liebe bies Gebicht, So flieft um beide Welten Ein rosenfarbnes Licht.

- August, Graf von Blaten.

LESSON XXVI.

Present of Modal Auxiliaries.

Sechs Wörter nehmen mich in Unspruch jeden Cag: Ich soll, ich muß, ich kann, ich will, ich darf, ich mag. — Rückert.

131. The Modal Auxiliaries are followed by the present infinitive. They correspond to the English modals as follows:—

	Present Infinitive.	Past.	Past Participle.		
-	bürfen, may, to be permitted, must not.	durfte	gedurft		
	föunen, can, to be able to; may (possibly).	fonute	gefount		
	mögen, may; to like (to).	mochte	gemocht		
	müssen, must, to be obliged to.	mußte	gemußt		
	follen, shall, (ought), to be to.	follte	gefollt		
	wellen, will, to want to; to be about to.	wollte	gewollt		

Present Indicative of Modals.

ich barf	fanu	mag	mnß	foll	will
du barfft	fauuft	magft	mußt	follft	willst
er darf	fanu	mag	muğ	joll	will
wir dürfen	fönnen	mögen	müffen	follen	wollen
ihr dürft	fönnt	mögt	müğt	follt	wollt
fie dürfen	fönnen	mögen	müffen	follen	wollen

132. Use of Auxiliaries. — (a) The English will is translated in two ways in German: to indicate simple futurity, merben is used; to indicate desire, use mollen. Reread § 55.

He will go. Er wird gehen.

He wants to go. Er will gehen.

Berben Sie fommen? Shall you come? (at some future time.)

Esolen Sie fommen? Will you come? (are you willing to, do you want to?)

(b) English shall we is usually mosten wir. Use sollen wir only when you can substitute are we to.

Shall we go home? Bollen wir nach Hause gehen?
Shall we translate the next page? (to the teacher). Sollen wir die nächste Seite übersetzen?

Note. Berben is used for future meanings of shall and will. Sollen is used when the decision rests with some one besides the subject; wollen, when the decision rests with the subject.

133.

Vocabulary.

bie Sei'te, bie Seiten, page.
bie Zei'le, bie Zeilen, line.
überset'zen, überset'te, überset'
(haben), to translate.
fra'gen, fragte, gefragt (haben),
with the accusative or two accusatives, to ask (a question, as con-

trasted with bitten, to ask a favor).
ganz, whole, entire, all.
nächft, next.
ge'ftern, yesterday.
hen'te, to-day.
mor'gen, to-morrow.

134.

- (a) 1. Gestern haben wir zwölf Zeilen übersetzt; heute sollen wir eine ganze Seite übersetzen; morgen müssen wir die nächste Aufgabe übersetzen. 2. Was wollen Sie mich fragen? Mögen Sie diese langen Sätze nicht? 3. Morgen übersetzen wir zwölf Zeilen auf dieser nächsten Seite; können Sie das verstehen? 4. Wir müssen die ganze nächste Seite lesen; wollen wir sie übersetzen? 5. Der junge Schüler soll die nächste Zeile übersetzen, aber er kann nicht gut lesen.
 - (b) "Bitte, wollen Sie die nächste Zeile überseten?"
 "Darf ich lesen? Ich kann nicht gut überseten."
- "Nein, Sie muffen lefen und überfeten. Wir follen heute eine ganze Seite lefen."

- "Ich kann diese Sate nicht verstehen. Darf ich nicht morgen überseten?"
 - "Ja, aber morgen muffen Sie die ganze Aufgabe lefen."
- (c) 1. Will you please pass me the butter? 2. I can read the whole line very well; shall I translate the next one?
 3. To-day I must read a whole page; to-morrow I shall translate the next twelve lines. 4. Shall you see my young friend? Will you give him this book? 5. She likes German, but she cannot translate it very well. 6. Children, you must come into the house; you must (bürfen) not go into the garden.
 - (d) "Are we to translate the next page to-morrow?"
- "Yes, you must read all the sentences. To-morrow we shall translate a whole page."
- "What did you ask us to-day? I cannot understand such long words."
- "I will ask the next boy. He likes German, and yesterday he translated very well."
- "I cannot translate these next sentences. May I go home?"
 - "Yes, but to-morrow you must read the whole next page."

Spruch.

Möge jeder still beglückt Seiner Freuden warten! Wenn die Rose selbst sich schmückt, Schmückt sie auch den Garten.

- Friedrich Rückert.

LESSON XXVII.

Past and Future of Modals.

Wenn	ich wollte,	was ich	sollte,	fönnt'	iф	alles,	was	iф	wollte.
							_	- Ø	prichwort.

135. Past Tense of Modals. — The Modal Auxiliaries are conjugated in the past indicative like any weak verb.

ich founte, I could.
bu fountest, thou couldst.
er founte. he could.

wir founten, we could.
ihr fountet, you could.
fie founten, they could.

- (a) Conjugate the other five modals in the past.
- 136. Future Tense of Modals. The future is regular.

ich werde sprechen dürsen, I shall be permitted to speak. Du wirst kommen können, thou wilt be able to come. er wird gehen können, he will be able to go. wir werden lernen müssen, we shall have to study. ihr werdet sterben müssen, you will have to die. sie werden spielen wollen, they will want to play.

- (a) Mögen and follen are rarely used in the future tense.
- 137. Modals with es and zu.—(a) Where English says I can, you must, and so on, German generally uses es as object of the auxiliary, 3th tann es, Sie müssen es, etc. In negative sentences, es is not necessary, 3th tann nicht, Sie müssen nicht.
- (b) When zu is used with the modal auxiliaries, it comes between the auxiliary and the verb.
- He studied to be able to read German. Er lernte, um Dentich lefen gu fonnen.
- We stood up to be able to see better. Wir ftanben auf, um beffer feben zu tounen.

138.

Vocabulary.

ber A'bend, die Abende, evening. ber Wor'gen, die Worgen, morning. ber Nach'mittag, die Nachmittage, afternoon. blei'ben, blieb, geblieben (fein), to stay. remain. hö'ren, hörte, gehört (haben), to hear. ru'fen, rief, gerufen (haben), to call (in the sense of call out, call to, not visit or call upon). jest, now.

(a) With gestern, heute, and morgen, nouns are written without a capital: yesterday morning, gestern morgen; this afternoon, heute nachmittag; to-morrow evening, morgen abend. Do not confuse morgen and der Morgen, and note the use of heute for this when this means to-day.

139.

- (a) 1. Gestern abend konnten wir nicht kommen, aber morgen werden wir den ganzen Abend bleiben dürfen. 2. Morgen nachmittag werde ich einen neuen Ball kaufen müssen, um spielen zu können. 3. Sie dürfen hier nicht bleiben; wir werden Sie rufen müssen. 4. Ich konnte das Lied nicht hören; wollten Sie es hören? 5. Ja, ich wollte es, aber- ich durfte nicht. 6. Gestern abend wollten wir spielen; heute morgen mußten wir hier bleiben; aber morgen nachmittag werden wir spielen dürfen.
 - (b) "Wollten Sie gestern nachmittag nicht Ball spielen?"
 "Ich wollte spielen, aber ich konnte nicht."
 - "Was mußten Sie tun?"
- "Ich durfte nicht spielen; ich mußte für meinen Bater in die Stadt gehen."
 - "Aber jett werden Sie spielen konnen, nicht mahr?"
- (c) 1. Shall you want to go into the city to-morrow afternoon? 2. No, I wanted to (e\$) yesterday, but to-morrow I shall have to stay here the whole afternoon. 3. Yesterday morning we were permitted to play in the garden, but to-day

we shall have to stay in the house. 4. He was to translate the next sentence, but he couldn't. 5. Shall I give you your new book and this old one now or this afternoon? 6. The boys were permitted to play in the house, and we did not want to call them.

- (d) "Shall you want to play ball to-morrow, or shall you have to stay here?"
- "Yesterday afternoon I wanted to play, but I could not; to-morrow afternoon I shall be permitted to play."
- "Yesterday morning I wanted to go to the field, but I was not permitted."
- "Why? Were the big boys playing there the whole morning?"
- "Yes, I could hear them, but I couldn't go on the field to see." (§ 86.)
- "To-morrow we shall have to play well, in order to be able to win (geminnen)."

LESSON XXVIII.

Perfect Tenses of Modals.

Es hat nicht sollen fein. - Scheffel.

140. The Perfect Tenses of Modals are conjugated with haben.

Present Perfect.

ich habe, du haft, etc., gekonnt, gemußt, etc., I have been able, etc.

Past Perfect.

ich hatte, du hattest, etc., gekonnt, gemußt, etc., I had been able, etc.

Future Perfect.

The Future Perfect of the modals is regular, but rarely used.

(a) These regular past participles of the modal are used when there is no dependent infinitive. (§ 137, a.)

I couldn't. Ich habe es nicht gekonnt. He didn't want to. Er hat es nicht gewollt.

141. "Two Infinitives." — The modals and nine other verbs (fühlen, feel; heißen, bid; helßen, help; hören, hear; lassen, let or have done; lehren, teach; lernen, learn; machen, make; and sehen, see) have two past participles, one of which has the same form as the infinitive. This latter form is used in compound tenses governing a dependent infinitive. The dependent infinitive precedes the past participle (with infinitive form) of the modal.

Present Perfect.

ich habe spielen bürsen, I have been or was permitted to play. bu hast schreiben können, thou hast been or wast able to write. er hat schreiben lernen, he (has) learned to write. wir haben kommen müssen, we (have) had to come. ihr habt arbeiten helsen, you (have) helped work. sie haben gehen wollen, they (have) wanted to go.

Past Perfect.

- ich hatte spielen bürfen, etc., I had been allowed to play, etc.
- (a) Conjugate each of the above combinations in full throughout the perfect and past perfect.
- (b) Remember that German often uses the perfect where English employs the past. (See § 61.)

Er hat nicht spielen wollen. He didn't want to play. Ich habe bleiben müssen. I was obliged to (had to) stay.

142.

Vocabulary.

ar'beiten, arbeitete, gearbeitet (haben), to work. war'ten, wartete, gewartet (haben), to wait; for, auf with acc. dann, then (in the sense of after that, next). lant, loud.

fer'tig, ready; through (in the sense of finished).

îpăt, adv., late (used as a predicate adjective only with es; es ift fpăt, es wird îpăt. But, He is late, er fommt îpăt). 3u Haufe, at home.

143.

- (a) 1. Geftern morgen haben wir warten wollen, aber wir haben arbeiten müssen. 2. Dann haben die Knaben zu Hause spielen dürfen, aber sie haben da nicht so saut spielen können.

 3. Er ist so spät nach Haben da nicht so saut spielen können.

 4. Dann hat die alte Frau saut sprechen wollen, aber sie hat es nicht gekonnt.

 5. Das kleine Mädchen hatte da sitzen und auf den Lehrer warten wollen.

 6. Jetzt bin ich fertig und es ist nicht zu spät, um Ball spielen zu können.
- (b) "Warum haben Sie gestern abend so spät arbeiten muffen?"
 - "Ich habe mit meiner Aufgabe nicht fertig werden können."
- "Ich habe zu Hause nicht warten wollen, aber ich habe es gemußt."
 - "So? Sie haben da nicht spielen dürfen?"
- "Nein, ich habe zu Haufe bleiben muffen, um fertig werden zu können."
- (c) (Use perfect tense when possible; see § 61.) 1. Yesterday afternoon I was not able to come; I had to work too late.

 2. He did not want to wait at home, but he was not permitted to go into the city.

 3. Then he waited there and worked,

but he couldn't get ready. 4. Please do not speak so loud; the boys in the next room have to work. 5. Why have you had to work so late? Couldn't you wait? 6. I didn't want 'to stay there and work, but I was not permitted to go.

- (d) "Did you have to stay at home and work yesterday afternoon?"
- "Yes, I couldn't wait; it was getting late and I had to get ready."
 - "Did you want to go to (au) the game?"
- "I wasn't permitted to go. I wanted to, but I couldn't. To-morrow I shall be able to go."
 - "Good! Then we'll wait till to-morrow."

LESSON XXIX.

Special Uses of Modals. Lassen.

Saf das! 3ch mag es nicht.

- 144. Special Uses of Modals and sassen. Dürsen, können, wossen and müssen, are used regularly in the meanings already given; mögen and sossen also special uses.
- (a) Mögen is usually translated by English like, especially when accompanied by the adverb gern, gladly.

Ich mag gern fingen or ich finge gern. I like to sing. Mögen Sie diese Blumen? Do you like these flowers?

(1) English may is usually rendered by burfen to denote permission; by fonnen to denote possibility.

You may speak. On barfft sprechen. That may be. Das tanu sein.

(b) Sollen is often used, especially in the present, to report hearsay. It is translated is said to.

Er foll fehr arm fein. He is said to be very poor. Sie foll fehr gut fingen. She is said to sing very well.

- (1) An especially common German idiom is the question, Bas foll (benn) bas? What is the meaning of that? What do you mean by that?
- (2) The past subjunctive of sollen (sollte) is like the past indicative. It regularly means ought to.

Du folltest lernen. You ought to study. Gr follte arbeiten. He ought to work.

(c) Besides its regular meaning, mosten is often used in the sense of to be about to or to be determined to.

Er wollte gehen. He was about to go. Ich will gehört werden. I insist upon being heard.

(d) Raffer in its causative meaning, to have (done), to cause to (be done), is used like the modals. It always takes the active infinitive but sometimes with passive sense.

Er läßt einen Rod machen. He is having a coat made. Bir haben neue Hüte kaufen laffen. We have had new hats bought. Billst du mein Buch holen laffen? Will you have my book brought?

145.

Vocabulary.

das Mal, die Male, time (a single point of time).

die Beit, die Beiten, time (in general; an extent of time).

die Stun'de, die Stunden, hour; lesson.

laffen, ließ, gelassen (haben), er läßt, to let; to have or cause to be (done).

früh, early; morgen früh, to-morrow morning (to avoid morgen morgen).

gern, adv., gladly; usually translated like to.

natür'lich, adv., of course.

mun, exclamation, well (rarely, now).

vielleicht', perhaps.

146.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Er soll sehr arm sein; er sollte ein anderes Mal arbeiten. 2. Natürlich; das kann sein; aber vielleicht mag er nicht arbeiten. 3. Nun, morgen früh werde ich vielleicht Zeit haben, ein neues Rleid machen zu lassen. 4. Ich mag meine deutschen Stunden sehr gern, aber ich habe keine Zeit, all die Sätze zu überssehen. 5. Das nächste Mal sollten Sie mich nicht so früh rufen; wir haben viel Zeit, eine ganze Stunde. 6. Nun, was soll (denn) das? Haben Sie mein neues Kleid nicht machen lassen?
- (b) "Was foll das? Warum haben Sie mich rufen laffen?" "Nun, ich habe ein neues Kleid machen laffen wollen. Bielleicht mögen Sie es gern fehen."

"Natürlich, aber ein anderes Mal; jest habe ich feine Zeit. Ich habe eine beutsche Stunde bei meinem Lehrer."

"Bielleicht kommen Sie morgen früh?"
"Ja, gern."

- (c) 1. Of course I have time to have a new dress made; I'll do it gladly. 2. Perhaps you ought not to have a new one made. 3. He is said to sing very well; perhaps he has lessons. 4. Of course I'll be glad to call you the next time, perhaps to-morrow morning. 5. Well, it is summer now; is it too early to have a new hat made? 6. I ought to write these sentences, but I have no time.
- (d) "Well, the next time in the German lesson I shall have my exercise written by (von) my brother."
- "Perhaps, but you ought not to do that. Don't you like to write these sentences?"

"Yes, of course. I like German, but I have no time to study it."

"Well, I work early and late and I like these German lessons. You ought to."

"Well, perhaps I'll do it. My father is calling me; I must go."

LESSON XXX.

Review.

Willst du immer weiter schweifen?
Sieh, das Gute liegt so nah, Lerne nur das Glück ergreifen,
Denn das Glück ist immer da. — Goethe.

147.

Review Questions.

- (a) 1. Give the German modals. 2. What two ways may English will be translated? 3. Give the ways of translating English may. 4. What does mogen usually mean?
- (b) 1. Which modal means must (not) in withholding permission?

 2. What peculiarity have the modals when governing a dependent infinitive?

 3. What is the difference in the use of the past participles of modals?
- (c) 1. What tense does German sometimes prefer when English uses the past? 2. Give two meanings for follen; two for lassen; two for tonnen. 3. Explain the use of e8 and 3u with modals.

148. Review Exercise.

(a) 1. Haben Sie uns rufen lassen? Was soll das?
2. Das nächste Mal sollten Sie laut sprechen, wir haben Sie nicht hören können.
3. Das kann sein, aber ich mag diese langen Aufgaben nicht.
4. Warum lassen Sie sie nicht von

- einem anderen Schüler schreiben? 5. Dieses Mal hatte ich keine Zeit, aber das nächste Mal werde ich vielleicht eine ganze Stunde haben. 6. Natürlich mögen wir unsere deutschen Stunden; die Aufgaben sollen nicht schwer sein. 7. Gestern abend hatten wir keine Zeit; heute morgen müssen wir arbeiten; morgen früh werden wir spielen dürsen. 8. Die Tochter des Lehrers hat heute morgen ein neues Kleid machen lassen wollen. 9. Der Knabe soll sehr arm sein; natürlich sollte er arbeiten. 10. Mögen Sie diese schönen Blumen nicht?
- (b) 1. Of course I shall have to have it made. 2. Well, perhaps you ought to. 3. He had wanted to read the whole next page, but he was not permitted to translate it. ought to have a whole year to be able to speak German well; 5. Yesterday afternoon I wanted to shall we be able to? play, but I had to work the whole afternoon. 6. Yesterday evening we had to be ready, but it was too late to be able to play, and we didn't want to work. 7. What do you mean by that? You mustn't play here in the house. play in the garden, or must we stay at home the whole day? 9. I like German, but I have to have my exercises written by (von) my brother. 10. He is said to be very poor.
- (c) A Story (Gine Geschichte). The children had wanted to play in the house, but they had not been permitted. But they had been able to go into the garden to play there. They had wanted to have their German sentences written by (von) a friend, but they had had to write them themselves (selbst). The whole afternoon they had been permitted to play in the garden. Then their mother called them.
- (d) Write the above story, substituting perfect for past perfect tenses.

Mein Baterland.

Treue Liebe bis zum Grabe Schwör' ich dir mit Herz und Hand; Was ich bin, und was ich habe, Dant' ich dir, mein Baterland.

Nicht in Worten nur und Liebern Ist mein Herz zum Dank bereit: Mit der Tat will ich's erwidern Dir in Not, in Kampf und Streit.

In der Freude wie im Leibe Ruf' ich's Freund und Feinden zu: Ewig sind vereint wir beibe, Und mein Trost, mein Glück bist du.

Treue Liebe bis zum Grabe
Schwör' ich dir mit Herz und Hand;
Was ich bin, und was ich habe,
Dant' ich dir, mein Vaterland!
— Hoffmann von Fallersleben,

LESSON XXXI.

Possessive and Intensive Pronouns.

Chret die Frauen, fie flechten und weben Bimmlische Rosen ins irdische Leben. - Schiller.

Review Sections 92, 93, 94, 98, 103, 104, and 105.

149. The Possessive Pronoun stands for a noun. It is sometimes called the *independent possessive*, because it is used independently, without its noun. Below are given the neuter forms of the possessive pronouns and the corresponding possessive adjectives. See § 103.

Possessive Adjectives.		Possessive Pronouns.		
my	mein	mine	meines	bas mein(ig)e
thy	bein	thine	deines	das dein(ig)e
his	fein .	his	feines	das fein(ig)e
her	ihr	hers	ihres	das ihr(ig)e
our	unser	ou rs	unf(e)res	das unfr(ig)e
your	Ihr	yours	Thres	das Ihr(ig)e
	ener		eures	das eur(ig)e
their	ihr	theirs	ihres	das ihr(ig)e

(a) When the German possessive pronoun is preceded by the definite article, it is declined like a weak adjective. The article agrees with the noun which the pronoun represents.

Mein Buch ift alt, das deine (deinige) ift neu. My book is old, yours is new. Meine Bücher find alt, die deinen (deinigen) find neu. My books are old, yours are new.

(b) If the article is not used, the possessive takes the endings of a strong adjective agreeing with the noun understood. The forms in sig cannot be used without the article.

Mein Buch ist alt, Ihres (das Ihre, das Ihrige) ist nen. My book is old, yours is new.

Sein Bruder ift der Lehrer, meiner (der meine, der meinige) ift der Schüler. His brother is the teacher, mine is the pupil.

Ich habe mein Buch hier, aber Johann hat feines (das feine, das feinige) verloren. I have my book here, but John has lost his.

hier ift Ihr hut, aber meinen (den meinen, den meinigen) habe ich nicht gefunden. Here is your hat, but mine I have not found.

Note. — The same rule applies also to ein and fein, except that they do not take the suffix sig, and fein cannot be preceded by the article.

Reiner von ihnen sieht es. No one (none) of them sees it. Der eine ist nicht hier. One (of them) is not here. Einer muß heiraten. One (of them) must marry.

150. The Intensive Pronoun, felbst or selber, myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves, is indeclinable. It is used for all persons, genders, numbers, and cases.

Sie ist selber gekommen. She came herself. Bir haben es selbst gesehen. We saw it ourselves. Ich habe es selber (selbst) getan. I did it myself.

(a) When felbst precedes its noun, it means even.

Sie mag felbst die Rosen nicht. She does not even like roses. Selbst sein Bruder liebt ihn nicht. Even his drother does not love him.

151. Vocabulary.

der An'zug, die An'züge, suit (of clothes).

der Rod, die Röde, coat.

lie'ben, liebte, geliebt (haben), to love.

love.

im'mer, always.

ber An'züge, suit (of verlie'ren, verloren (haben), to lose.

frant, sick.

mü'de, tired.

reich, rich.

genug', enough.

152.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Ich liebe meinen alten Bater, aber er ist immer mübe ober krank.

 2. Hier ist mein neuer Rock; mein Bruder hat ben seinigen selbst gemacht.

 3. Selbst seine Tochter liebt ben alten Mann nicht immer.

 4. Mein Rock liegt auf dem Bett; aber meine Freunde haben die ihrigen verloren.

 5. Der eine hat seinen hier gesucht, der andere den seinigen da, aber keiner hat die Anzüge gesunden.

 6. Aber sie sind reich genug, um neue kaufen zu können.
- (b) "Hier ist mein neuer Anzug; wo haben Sie den Ihrigen machen lassen?"
- "Ich habe meinen felbst gemacht, aber mein Bruder hat den seinen machen lassen."
- "Haben Sie ein Messer? Ich habe meines verloren, und ich bin nicht reich genug, um ein neues zu kaufen."
 - "Sie dürfen meines haben; ich habe zwei."
- (c) 1. This is my old coat; I am not rich enough to buy a new one. 2. Where is yours? Have you lost it (§ 93)?

 3. Your brother is always sick or tired; mine can play the whole day.

 4. My father has had a new suit made; I had to make mine myself.

 5. All the pupils lost their books and none of them has found his.

 6. That boy was very tired, but he wasn't sick enough to stay at home.
 - (d) "Is that your new suit? I like it."
 - "Yes, and I like yours. Did you buy it yourself?"
- "No, my father bought it for me. I am not rich enough to buy such a suit."
 - "That boy has lost his coat. Won't you give him yours?"
 - "No, he can look for his; perhaps he will find it."
 - "Yes, he is always losing everything (alles)."

LESSON XXXII.

Interrogative Pronouns.

Wenige wissen, wieviel man wissen muß, um zu wissen, wie wenig man weiß. — Sprichwort.

- 153. The Interrogative Pronouns are wer, who; was, what; welch, which, what; and was für (ein), what kind of (a), what. Wer and was can never be used as adjectives.
 - (a) Declension of Wer.

Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. wer, who.	was, what.
G. wessen, whose, of whom.	wessen, of what.
D. wem, to whom.	
A. wen, whom.	was, what.

As in English, the plural is the same.

(b) Weldher, which? what? has the strong endings of a "ber" word:—

Singular.			${\it Plural}.$	
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	For all genders.	
welcher	welche	welches	welche	
welches	welcher	welches	welcher	
welchem	welcher	welchen.	welchen	
welchen	welche	welches	welche	

- (c) In was für ein, the ein is of course omitted in the plural. Bas für ein alter Hut ist das? What kind of an old hat is that? Bas für einen Rod sausen Sie? What sort of a coat are you buying? Bas für Bücher hat er? What sort of books has he?
- 154. Combination of Interrogative and Preposition. When referring to an inanimate object, $\mathfrak{wo}(r)$ is used with preposi-

tions, instead of was: woven, of what; womit, with what; worin, in what; etc. (See § 98.) Compare whereof, wherewith, wherein, etc.

155. Use of bas, bies and es with sein.—In speaking of they, these or those, with to be, German generally uses the neuter singular where English has the plural.

What kind of books are those? Bas für Bücher sind das?

Which children are those? Belche Kinder sind das?

Those are our trees. Das sind unsere Bäume.

These are hard exercises. Dies sind schwere Ansgaben.

What boys are those? Are they our friends? Belche Knaben sind das? Sind es unsere Freunde?

156.

Vocabulary.

ber Baum, die Bäume, tree.
ber Busch, die Büsche, dush.
die Fami'lie, die Familien (four syllables), family.
das Paar, die Paare, pair; ein paar, a few, a couple of, used as an adjective, not affecting the following case.

bas Hen, das Hen(e)s, hay.
gehö'ren, gehörte, gehört (haben),
to belong to, with dative.
wif'sen, wußte, gewußt (haben),
ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, to
know, have knowledge of.
fen'nen, fannte, gefannt (haben),
to know, be acquainted with.

157.

Exercise.

(a) 1. Was für ein Baum ist das, und wem gehört er? Wissen Sie? 2. Das ist kein Baum; das ist ein Busch, und er gehört mir. 3. Unter dem Baum fanden wir ein paar Damen, sie saßen auf dem Heu. 4. Wovon haben Sie gesprochen? Ich weiß nicht, was Sie sagten. 5. Mit welchen Freunden sind Sie gekommen? Ich kenne sie alle nicht. 6. Welche Damen sind das, und was für einer Familie gehöften sie?

- (b) "Was für Bucher sind das, und wem gehören sie?"
 "Dies sind die meinigen; sie gehören jener Dame nicht."
 "Rennen Sie den alten Herrn? Ich weiß nicht, wer er ist."
 "Welchen Herrn? Nein, ich kenne ihn nicht."
 "Aber sie kennen die Damen seiner Familie, nicht?"
- (c) 1. What kind of trees are those, or are they (§ 155) bushes?

 2. I don't know; I don't know them; they belong to our teacher.

 3. Which family does that lady belong to?

 4. I don't know, but I know a couple of ladies of (von) another family.

 5. What kind of bushes are those there beside the hay?

 6. I don't know, but they belong to that old man. You ought to ask him.
 - (d) "What ladies are those? Do you know?"
 - "Who are they? I don't know them."
- "What are you talking about (§ 154)? They belong to the family of your friend, don't they?"
- "Yes, but I don't know them. They (§ 155) are a couple of beautiful women."
 - "I know it. You ought to know them."

LESSON XXXIII.

Demonstrative and Indeclinable Indefinite Pronouns.

Aus nichts wird nichts, das merke wohl, Wenn aus dir etwas werden soll. — Claubius.

- 158. The Demonstrative Pronouns are dieser, this; jener, that; ber, berjenige, that, the one (who); derselbe, the same; solcher, such (a).
 - (a) The demonstrative per is declined as follows:—

Singular.			${\it Plural}.$	
N	lasc.	Fem.	Neut.	For all genders.
N.	der	die	ba8	die
G.	beffen	deren	beffen	derer
D.	dem	der	dem	benen
A.	ben	die	das	die

Note. It is like the definite article except throughout the genitive and in the dative plural. To distinguish it from the article, it is often written with spaces between the letters: ber, bie, bas. This is the German way of emphasizing or italicizing.

- (b) For the declension of dieser and jener see Lesson XXII.
- (c) Derjenige and berfelbe are composed of the article ber and the weak adjectives jenige and felbe, each of which has its regular declension: berjenige, besjenigen, bemjenigen, etc.
- (d) Derjettige may be used instead of ber when the demonstrative is modified by a phrase or clause. But in conversation ber is preferred.

The one on the table, das(jenige) auf dem Tische. Those that I saw, die(jenigen), die ich sah.

- 159. The Indefinites. The following indefinites are indeclinable:—
- (a) Etwas, something, somewhat, some, any. See (e) below. An adjective following is strong and, except ander, always begins with a capital.

Etwas Gutes, something good. Etwas Geld, some (any) money. Etwas ander(e)s, something else.

(b) Greens, which is used with some other word to give it a more general meaning.

Irgend etwas, anything at all.
Irgend jemand, irgend einer, some one, any one.

(c) Man, one, they, people. It is used only in the nominative, and is often best rendered by the passive voice.

Man fagt. They or people say, it is said. Man bittet. It is requested.

Note. Gines, einem, einen are used for the gen., dat., and acc. of man; fid is its reflexive, and sein its possessive.

(d) Mehr, more.

(e) Nichts, nothing, not anything. Nichts is always used instead of a negative and etmas. A following adjective is strong and, except anter, always begins with a capital.

Richts Schönes, nothing beautiful. Richts ander(e)8, nothing else. Er fah nichts. He did not see anything.

(f) Weniger, less, fewer.

Beniger Gelb, less money. Beniger Kinder, fewer children.

(g) The following generally have no inflection, except an *8 in the genitive: jebermann, every one, everybody; jemand, some one, somebody; niemand, no one, nobody, not anybody. After jemand and niemand adjectives are used as after etwas and nichts.

Jemand Fremdes, some one strange. Riemand ander(c)s, no one else.

160.

Vocabulary.

glau'ben, glaubte, geglaubt (haben), to think, to believe, with the accusative when that believed is a thing, and with the dative when it is a person. So is not used with glauben: I think so, Das glaube ich, or simply, ich glaube.

falfå, false; wrong. lest. last.

nod, yet; nod nidt, not yet; with nouns, more, or other in the sense of more, as distinguished from ander, other, in the sense of different: noch Brot, more bread; noch eine Tasse, one more cup, another cup; noch ein Stück, one more piece, another piece.

161. Exercise.

- (a) 1. Das ift nicht bieselbe Tasse; sie hat weniger Kassee.
 2. Ja, bas glaube ich; geben Sie mir noch eine Tasse; die letzte war zu kalt.
 3. Ich sehe nichts Falsches in dieser Aufgabe, aber ich glaube dem kleinen Schüler nicht.
 4. Man hat die blauen Blumen in unserem Garten gefunden; glauben Sie es nicht?
 5. Der letzte Satz ist nicht derselbe; ich sehe etwas Falsches darin.
 6. Glauben Sie mir, wir sind mit der letzten Stunde noch nicht fertig.
- (b) "Will irgend jemand anders noch ein Stück Brot haben?"
 "Ja, ich glaube, aber dieses soll mein letztes Stück sein. Ich kann nichts mehr essen."
 - "Ich esse noch etwas Warmes. Dieses ist nicht dasselbe." "Das glaube ich, aber das auf dem Tische mag ich nicht." "Dann sollten Sie etwas Kaltes essen."
- (c) 1. Haven't you translated that last sentence yet?

 2. Yes, but I think I translated it wrong.

 3. I don't believe you; I don't find anything wrong in that sentence.

 4. These sentences are not the same; this one has fewer words; that one has more.

 5. Do you find anything wrong in this exercise?

 6. That is false; nobody else believes it.
- (d) "That last sentence is not wrong. Did you write it yourself?"
- "Yes, I wrote all these sentences. To-morrow I shall have to write another exercise."

- "But you have not yet written this one. Someone else will have to write the next one."
- "I think so. To-morrow I shall write fewer sentences, and then I shall have more time."
 - "Then you will not write anything wrong."

LESSON XXXIV.

Inflected Indefinite Pronouns.

Was du nicht willst, daß man dir tu', Das füg' auch keinem andern zu. — Sprichwort.

- 162. Inflected Indefinites. The following indefinites usually take the regular inflection of adjectives: —
- (a) All is usually uninflected before her (demonstrative or article) or a possessive pronoun. See § 124, b.

All der Tee, all the tea. Mit all feinen Kindern, with all his children.

- (1) All is never inflected weak.
 - All that, das alles.
- (2) When all is used for whole or entire, the German uses ganz.

All day, den ganzen Tag. All the year, das ganze Jahr.

- (3) The neuter alles, used alone, means everything, all.
- (b) Ander, other, different. Another (for one more) is noth ein. See § 160.

Some other day, ein anderer Tag. One day more, noch ein Tag.

(c) Beibe, both, two, is preceded by the article, which follows in English.

Both the girls, die beiden Mädchen. The two friends, die beiden Frennde.

(d) Einige . . . , some; mehrere . . . , several.

Some pens, einige Federn. Several boys, mehrere Knaben.

(e) Biel, much, many, and menig, little, few, are usually uninflected in the singular; in the plural they are inflected like other adjectives. A following adjective without its noun is capitalized and takes strong neuter endings. See § 159, a and e.

Biel Geld, much money; Biele Bücher, many books. Ein wenig, a little; Wenige Lage, sew days. Biel gutes Brot, much good bread. Biel Gutes, much good.

163.

Vocabulary.

der Feh'ler, die Fehler, mistake.
die Schwe'ster, die Schwesteru,
sister.
halb, half; half the sentence, der
halbe Satz.
als, after a comparitive, than.
auch, also, besides, too.
rich'tig, correct, right.
es ist, es sind, es war, es ist ge-

wefen, there is, there are, followed by the nominative and used of something in a definite place.

es gibt, es gab, es hat gegeben, there is, there are, followed by the accusative and used of things less definite. Bas gibt's? What is there? What's up?

164.

Exercise.

(a) 1. Es find wenige Fehler in diesem Sat, aber es sind mehr Fehler als in jenem langen. 2. Diese beiden Sätze sind auch richtig, aber der andere ist falsch. 3. Es waren keine

Fehler in einigen Sätzen, aber viele Sätze hatten mehrere Fehler. 4. Was gibt's? Einige andere Sätze haben mehr Fehler als diese beiden. 5. Ich mag viel Milch in meinem Kaffee. 6. Es sind mehrere Fehler in diesem letzen Satz, und all die anderen haben einige falsche Wörter.

(b) "Was gibt's? Ich verstehe das alles nicht."

"Es sind zu viele Fehler in dieser Aufgabe. All die Sätze sind falsch."

"Ich sehe viel Falsches, aber ich glaube, die halbe Aufgabe ist richtig."

"Es sind einige Fehler in diesem Sate und zwei Fehler in den beiden letten."

"Ja, aber es sind wenige Fehler in den anderen."

- (c) 1. Some men have much money, but few friends; others have more friends than money. 2. What's up? Couldn't those two boys write all the words right? 3. There are several mistakes in the other sentence, but none in both these.

 4. My little sister wrote half the exercise without any (irgend einen) mistake. 5. There were more mistakes in that sentence than in this; this one is right. 6. That one is also right, I think, but perhaps there is something wrong in it.
 - (d) "Who has found few mistakes in his exercise?"

"Those two boys have more mistakes than I. I translated the last sentence right, I think."

"No, half the sentence is wrong. Does anyone see anything wrong?"

"Yes, it has too few words. He must write another word for more."

"Can anyone find anything else (not) etwas) wrong? Good! Read the sentence and translate."

LESSON XXXV.

Review of Pronouns.

Wer vieles bringt, wird manchem etwas bringen. - Goethe.

165.

Review Questions.

- (a) 1. Give all the German translations of mine, yours, hers, theirs.
 2. How do these differ in English from my, your, her, their?
 3. Give the rule for the independent use of ein and fein.
 4. Give the two uses of felbst.
- (b) 1. Explain the use of bas, bies, and es with fein.

 2. What are the German interrogative pronouns?

 3. How do they combine with prepositions?

 4. What other combination with prepositions have you learned?
- (c). 1. What peculiarities has an adjective following etwas or nights? after alles? after viel? 2. Give two translations for the two brothers. 3. How are other and another expressed in German? 4. How do you say in German with something good, with everything good?

166. Review Exercise.

(a) 1. He has lost his new coat, but mine is here. 2. What did you do with yours? 3. What kind of books are those? Which one belongs to you? 4. With whom and of what were you speaking? 5. I know a couple of ladies, and they are both very beautiful. 6. We wanted to see something new, but there was nothing new there. 7. There are fewer mistakes in that last sentence, I think. 8. Won't you drink another cup of tea? Another time, thank you. 9. I can see

much good in those two girls. 10. There were several mistakes in these last sentences.

(b) A Story (Eine Geschichte). Half the class wanted to write their exercises in school. The others wanted to write theirs at home. Both (bie beiben) could read the sentences, but they could not translate them right. Those at school made many mistakes in their sentences. And those at home had several mistakes in theirs. There are perhaps some sentences without mistakes. I think so. But there are more with something wrong. Who will be able to find it? Has any one found anything wrong in these last sentences?

Es war, als hatt' ber himmel.

Es war, als hätt' der Himmel Die Erde still gefüßt, Daß sie im Blütenschimmer Bon ihm nun träumen müßt'.

Die Luft ging durch die Felber, Die Ahren wogten facht, Es rauschten leis' die Wälber, So sternklar war die Nacht.

Und meine Seele spannte Weit ihre Flügel aus, Flog durch die stillen Lande, Als slöge sie nach Haus.

- Joseph, Freiherr von Gichenborff.

Un den Monb.

Guter Mond, du gehst so stille Durch die Abendwolken hin; Deines Schöpfers weiser Wille Hieß auf jener Bahn dich ziehn. Leuchte freundlich jedem Müden In das stille Kämmerlein! Und dein Schimmer gieße Frieden Ins bedrängte Herz hinein!

Guter Mond, du wandelst leise An dem blauen Himmelszelt, Wo dich Gott zu seinem Preise Hat als Leuchte hingestellt. Blicke traulich zu uns nieder Durch die Nacht auss Erdenrund! Als ein treuer Menschenhüter Tust du Gottes Liebe kund.

Suter Mond, so sanft und milbe Glänzest du im Sternenmeer, Wallest in dem Lichtgefilde Hehr und feierlich einher. Menschentröster, Gottesbote, Der auf Friedenswolken thront; Zu dem schönsten Morgenrote Führst du uns, o guter Mond!

- Rarl Enslin.

LESSON XXXVI.

Relative Pronouns. Dependent Order.

Wahre Größe hat allein, Wer die Größe meffen kann; Wer's versteht, ein großer Mann Und ein schlichter Mensch zu sein. — Siebel.

- 167. The Relative Pronouns are ber and welcher, meaning who, which, that.
- (a) The relative ber is declined like the demonstrative ber, except that the genitive plural is always beren instead of berer (§ 158, a).

The relative weither is declined like the interrogative weither (§ 153, b), but is not used in the genitive. The genitive of the relative ber (bessen, beren) must be used instead.

(b) The relative must agree with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in the clause it introduces.

Das Haus, das (welches) ich fah, the house which I saw.

Die Rose, die (welche) ich sah, the rose which I saw.

Der Mann, deffen hut ich fand, the man whose hat I found.

Der Mann, bei dem (welchem) ich wohne, the man with whom I live.

Der Maun, ben (welchen) ich fenne, the man whom I know.

168. Compound Relatives. — Wer and mas (§ 153, a) are both used as compound relatives, meaning he who, whoever, that which, whatever, what.

Wer keine Freunde hat, ift arm. He who has no friends is poor. Ich habe getan, was ich tun konnte. I have done what I could.

- (a) Bus is also generally used as a relative after neuter adjectives and neuter pronouns.
- I give to you the best that I have Er hatte nichts, was ich haben wollte. He had nothing that I wanted.
- (b) When referring to an inanimate object, mo(r): is generally used with prepositions instead of a relative pronoun: moven, of which; morin, in which; momit, with which; mofür, for which; etc. Compare § 98 and § 154.
- 169. The Use of Relatives in German differs from the English use.
 - (a) The relative is never omitted in German as in English.

The house I bought, das Sans, das ich gefauft habe. The man you saw, der Mann, den Sie geschen haben.

(b) When the antecedent is first or second person, (1) it may be repeated directly after the relative, the verb agreeing with it.

I who did this, ich, der ich dies getau habe. You who know that, du, der du das weißt.

(2) If the antecedent is not repeated, the verb is in the third person.

Ich, der dies getan hat, I who did this. Du, der das weiß, you who know that.

- (c) Commas always set off the relative clause in German.
- 170. Dependent Order. In the dependent order, the personal part of the verb (in compound tenses, the auxiliary) stands at the end of the clause. This order is used in all dependent clauses. These are introduced either by a relative pronoun, or by a subordinating conjunction (ba, weil, wo, etc.). They are set off from the main clause by commas. Illustrations: All the preceding examples in this lesson.

(a) Remember that the main clause is inverted when the dependent clause precedes.

When he saw me, he went home. Als er mich fah, ging er nach Hanse. As you have no book, I will give you mine. Da Sie kein Buch haben, werde ich Jhuen das meine geben.

171.

Vocabulary.

ber Fisch, die Fische, sish. ber Bo'gel, die Bögel, bird. die Bie'ne, die Bienen, bee. die Flie'ge, die Fliegen, sy. das Huhn, die Hühner, chicken. das Rest, die Rester, nest.
bald, soon.
schnell, fast, quickly.
san'gen, sing, gesangen (haben), er
fängt, to catch.

172.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Mit einer Fliege habe ich den Fisch gefangen, der im Wasser war. 2. Bald werden wir die Bögel sehen, die in dem Neste liegen. 3. Der Knade, der die Fische gefangen hat, ging schnell nach Hause. 4. Ich habe Ihnen nichts gelesen, was ich selbst nicht übersetzen konnte. 5. Die Kinder, mit denen ich in die Schule gehe, haben Hühner und Bienen zu Hause. 6. Der Bogel, dessen Ei wir in dem Neste fanden, saß auf dem Baum.
- (b) "Kommen Sie schnell! Bald können wir die Bögel sehen, beren Nest in diesem Baum ist."
 - "Sind das die Bogel, die wir geftern nicht fangen konnten?"
- "Nein, dies sind andere Bögel, die wir gestern nicht gesehen haben."
- "Gehören Ihnen die Bienen und die Hühner, die ich im Garten sehe?"
 - "Ja, bas find alle die meinigen."
- (c) (Write both ber and mescher for all relatives.) 1. Soon we shall catch all the flies that are in this room. 2. Are

those the fishes that you caught yesterday in that little lake?

- 3. You read that page too fast, that I had not yet translated.
- 4. There is in this sentence something hard, which I cannot translate fast. 5. There are bees and chickens in our garden, and some birds that have made their nests in a big tree. 6. My little sister quickly caught the fish that she saw in the
- water.
 - (d) "Have you seen any one who caught more fish than I?"
 - "I don't know. How many did (§ 61) you catch?"
 - "I caught all (§ 169, a) there were in the lake, I think."
- "I don't believe it. It is too hard to catch all the fish one sees."
 - "But I caught a lot (viele), and I caught them very fast."

LESSON XXXVII.

Indirect Ouestions. Review of Lessons I.-XV.

Ich weiß nicht, was soll es bedeuten, Daß ich so traurig bin. - Beine.

173. Indirect Questions. — When a direct question is put into a subordinate clause in German, it takes the dependent order.

(Direct) Where is your book? Bo ift Ihr Buch?

(Indirect) I do not know where your book is. Ich weiß nicht, wo Ihr Buch ift.

(Direct) Why did he do that ? Warum hat er das getan?

(Indirect) He told me why he did that. Er hat mir gefagt, warum er bas getan hat.

174. The Article with Parts of the Body. — When words for parts of the body are used in the predicate, German generally has the definite article and the dative of a personal or reflexive pronoun (sid) where English has the possessive.

I broke my hand. Ich habe mir die Hand gebruchen. He hurt his foot. Er hat sich den Fuß verletzt. Did you have your hair cut? Hast du dir das Haar schneiden lassen?

175.

Vocabulary.

ber Fin'ger, die Finger, finger.
der Fuß, die Füße, foot.
die Ba'de, die Baden, cheek.
die Lip'pe, die Lippen, lip.
das Haar, die Haare, hair, used in
both singular and plural for hair.
das Bein, die Beine, leg.
sich, reslexive pronoun for the dative and accusative, third person

singular and plural, and for the polite form Sie, himself, herself, themselves, yourself, etc. lint, left.
recht, right (as opposed to left).
bre'chen, brach, gebrochen (haben), er bricht, to break.
verlet'zen, verlette, verlett (haben), to hurt.

176.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Wissen Sie, wann der Lehrer sich den kleinen Finger und das rechte Bein gebrochen hat.

 2. Das Kind sieht nicht, was er mit einer langen Feder auf das Papier schreibt.

 3. Ich verstehe nicht, wie ich mir den linken Fuß und das rechte Bein verletzt habe.

 4. Wir wußten nicht, wann die Dame, die Mutter des jungen Knaben, gestorben ist.

 5. Ich lerne schon zwei Jahre Deutsch, um gut lesen zu können, aber ich verstehe nicht, warum Sie es lernen.

 6. Wissen Sie nicht, was der Bater des Schüslers dem Herrn gegeben hat?
 - (b) "Ich verstehe nicht, warum Ihre kleine Schwester solche rote Baden und solch schönes Haar hat."
 - "Ich weiß auch nicht. Ihre Füße und Lippen sind nicht schon."
 "Wissen Sie, wie sie sich die Finger ber rechten Hand verlett hat."

"Nein, aber ich will sie fragen, wie sie sich die Finger gebrochen hat."

- "Ich sehe nicht, warum Sie noch nicht gefragt haben."
- (c) 1. I don't know how I hurt my little finger and my left foot.

 2. You saw where he had broken his right leg, didn't you?

 3. That little boy doesn't understand why his sister has such red cheeks and such beautiful hair.

 4. Of course her lips are red, but I don't see why she has red cheeks.

 5. I have been studying German half a year; I don't know when I shall be able to speak it well.

 6. I hurt my right foot, but I broke my left leg.
 - (d) "Well, did you break your finger?"
 - "No, I didn't break my finger, but I hurt my left foot."
 - "I don't understand how you did that."
 - "There was a knife on the floor and I didn't see it."
 - "Then you will not be able to play to-morrow."
 - "No, I don't know when I shall be able to play."

LESSON XXXVIII.

Conjunctions. Review of Lessons XVI.-XXV.

Wenn Menschen auseinandergehn, So sagen fie: Auf Wiedersehn. — Feuchtersteben.

- 177. The Coordinating Conjunctions, unb, and; aber (sondern), but; benn, for; and ober, or, do not affect the order. They are used in compound sentences.
- Icame, und er ging nach Hause. I came, and he went home. Er muß kommen, oder ich werde nach Hause gehen. He must come, or I shall go home.

- (a) When but in English introduces a contrast with a preceding negative, that is, when you can say "on the contrary," German uses forbern instead of aber.
- Er ift nicht mein Freund, sondern mein Feind. He is not my friend, but my enemy.
- Sie ift nicht schön, sondern häftlich, aber sie ist reizend. She is not beautiful, but homely, but she is charming.
- (1) Sonbern is always used in the correlative, not only . . . but also. Wir waren nicht nur arm, sonbern auch krank. We were not only poor, but also sick.
- 178. Subordinating Conjunctions are used in complex sentences and are followed by the dependent order (§ 170). The commonest ones are als, ba, baß, ehe, nachbem, ob, sobalb, wäherend, weil, and wenn.

Icame before he went home. Er muß kommen, weil ich nach Hause gehe. He must come, because I am going home.

179.

Vocabulary.

als, when, used only of past time.
ba, as, usually giving a reason.
ehe, before.
nachdem', after.
ob, whether, if.
jobald', as soon as.
wäh'rend, while.

wenn, when, used generally of present time, but in the sense of whenever, also of the past.

benn, for, followed by the normal order.

fou'bern, but (instead), but (on the contrary), followed by the normal order.

180.

weil, because.

Exercise.

(a) 1. Ehe er sein Buch auf bas Pult legte, setzte er seine Schuhe unter bie Bank. 2. Nachdem ich ein kleines Boot gemacht hatte, ging ich damit nach dem See. 3. Als seine Mutter gegangen war, aß mein Bruder kein Brot, weil er es nicht

J

- mochte. 4. Wenn wir Fleisch haben, esse ich es nicht mit meinem Messer, sondern mit einer Gabel. 5. Wir haben ein Pfund gutes Brot gekauft, weil wir nichts zu Hause hatten. 6. Wenn wir bei Ihnen sind, trinken wir keinen Kassee, sondern Tee.
- (b) "Che Sie das Stud Fleisch essen, mussen Sie uns ein Glas kalte Milch geben."

"Aber ich habe kein Glas Milch, sondern eine Tasse warmen Tee."

"Sobald Sie uns das gegeben haben, müssen wir gehen, da es spät wird."

"Während ich fertig werbe, dürfen Sie hier bleiben."
"Nachdem wir gegangen sind, sollten Sie nicht arbeiten."

- (c) 1. How many legs has the bee? 2. After the boy has eaten that piece of bread, he will come with us into the next room. 3. While you are reading, I will go to the city, for I must buy a pound of meat. 4. It isn't meat, but fish that you must buy when you go to the city. 5. When you are ready, we ought to write this exercise, because our teacher is coming. 6. When she had fetched a piece of bread, she drank her cup of hot tea.
 - (d) "Well, when you are ready, I will read."
- "As soon as you read, I can translate, because I know these words."
- "While you are translating, the other pupils may write their exercises, for they will have plenty of [much] time."
- "After you have read the sentences and before you write them, you must translate."
 - "Well, as I am ready, I can read now."
 - "You mustn't read this exercise, but the next one."

LESSON XXXIX.

Dependent Order for Modals. Review of Lessons XXVI.-XXX.

Drum fröhlich in den Kampf hinein! Wer siegen will, muß sterben können. Ja, soll das Leben recht gedeihn Muß man dem Code auch was gönnen.—Prus.

181. Modals in Dependent Sentences. — In the dependent order in simple tenses, the auxiliaries of mode stand at the end of the clause, just like auxiliaries of tense. In a compound tense of the modal, when there is a dependent infinitive, the tense auxiliary (haben or merben) stands just before the rest of the verb phrase ("two infinitives").

He told me why he had to go. Er sagte mir, warum er gehen mußte. Here is an exercise you will have to write. Hier ift eine Anfgabe, die du wirst schreiben müssen.

That is the man who wanted to buy my horse. Das ift der Mann, der mein Pferd hat kaufen wollen.

(a) In translating two or more German infinitives at the end of a clause, always begin at the end, then take the one next to the end, then the third from the end.

Ich habe euch spielen hören können. I was able to hear you play.

182. The Use of bag. — The conjunction bag, not to be confused with the demonstrative or relative bas, introduces dependent clauses.

He knows that I shall come. Er weiß, daß ich fommen werde. I saw that you were tired. Ich habe gesehen, daß Sie müde waren.

183.

Vocabulary.

ber Budsstaben, bes Budsstaben(s), bie Budsstaben, letter (of the alphabet).

der Konsonant', des Konsonan'ten, die Konsonanten, consonant. der Botal', die Botale, vowel. drei, three. beden'ten, bedeutete, bedeutet (haben), to mean (of things). buchstable'ren, buchstabler'te, buchstablert' (haben), to spell. los, loose; the matter. Was ift los? What's the matter? unr, only.

184.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Ich wußte, daß der andere Schüler die Wörter nicht hat buchstadieren wollen. 2. Was ist los? Es sind nur vier Buchsstaden in diesem Worte; das sind nicht genug. 3. Verstehst du nicht, daß drei Konsonanten und zwei Vokale darin gehören.

 4. Siehst du, daß es nicht lie, sondern lay bedeutet? 5. Etwas ist los; es sind zwölf Fehler in dieser Aufgabe. 6. Ich habe Ihnen gesagt, daß ich sie nicht richtig habe übersetzen können.
- (b) "Was ist 108? Sie wissen, nicht wahr, daß Sie das Wort nicht haben buchstabieren können."
 - "Ja, aber ich verstehe, mas es bedeuten muß."
- "Sehen Sie, daß es nur fünf Buchstaben, zwei Vokale und brei Konsonanten, haben darf?"

"Aber es sind hier andere Schüler, die es nicht haben buchftabieren wollen."

- "Ich sehe, daß etwas los ist, wenn Sie nicht buchstabieren können."
- (c) 1. What's the matter? Can't you spell that next word?

 2. There are only three letters in it, two consonants and one vowel.

 3. I saw that he hadn't been able to spell it.

 4. You know that that word must not have three vowels, but three consonants.

 5. I hear that you will be permitted to

play only in the garden. 6. The teacher knew that the pupil had not wanted to spell all those words.

- (d) "What's the matter? Don't you know that that sentence doesn't mean anything?"
 - "Yes, now I see that I wasn't able to translate it right."
- "I think that you didn't want to translate it. Can you spell all the words?"
- "No, there are too many consonants and too few vowels in that last word."
- "Well, I see that you have been able to find your mistakes. Now we will translate."

LESSON XL.

Review of Lessons XXXI.-XXXVI.

Die Menschen, die die Ruhe suchen, die finden Ruhe nimmermehr, Weil sie die Ruhe, die sie suchen, in Gile jagen vor sich her.

- Müller.

185. The Modified Demonstrative. — In conversation, German generally uses ber for the demonstrative, when this is modified by a phrase or clause (§ 158, d). In more formal language berjenige may be used. Remember that this is the regular translation for the one, the ones, and that German never omits the relative. See § 128, d.

Where are those (the ones) I gave you? Wo find die, die ich Ihnen gab? Is he the one (whom) you saw? If er der, den (derjenige, welchen) Sie fahen?

She is not the one who came. Sie ift nicht die, die (biejenige, welche) fam.

186.

Review Questions.

- (a) 1. Name the relative pronouns in German. 2. How do they combine with prepositions? 3. What is used as a relative after neuter adjectives and neuter pronouns? 4. Name the indefinite compound relatives.
- (b) 1. What punctuation precedes the relative in German?
- 2. May the German relative be omitted, as in English?
- 3. How is the relative for the first or second person used?
- (c) 1. What word order follows the relative? 2. What kind of conjunctions are followed by the same order as the relative? 3. How do compound tenses of the modals in dependent clauses differ from compound tenses of other verbs so used?

187.

Review Exercise.

- (a) 1. Das sind die Wörter, die wir nicht haben buchstadieren wollen.

 2. Ist dieser kleine Schüler der, der sich das Bein gebrochen hat?

 3. Als der Knabe sah, daß er die Aufgabe überssehen konnte, las er den nächsten Sak.

 4. Ist dieser Rock der (berjenige), den Sie haben verkausen wollen?

 5. Nein, das ist der, den ich gestern für meinen Bruder habe kausen müssen.

 6. Der Knabe wußte nicht, daß das das richtige Wort war.

 7. Wir verstehen nicht, was Sie haben sagen wollen.

 8. Da ich das Wort nicht habe buchstadieren können, habe ich es nicht lesen wollen.

 9. Ich sehe nicht, wie wir Wörter ohne Vokale buchstadieren können.

 10. Die, die die, die die Fehler gemacht haben, sehen, dürfen nach Hause gehen.
- (b) 1. That man isn't the one I saw, but another. 2. When we heard the boy spell, we didn't know what was the matter.

- 3. Are these children the ones whom we saw playing in the garden yesterday? 4. Yes, those are the ones you saw, but I do not know where they were playing. 5. As you haven't been able to spell those words, perhaps you will be willing to read the next sentence. 6. No, that is the one that I hadn't been able to translate.
- (c) A Letter. Dear (lieber) father: I must write you (§ 10) what we did yesterday in school. We had a long exercise, and it was not the one we had studied. The teacher asked (fragen): "Who is ready?" and no one could translate. But when he asked me, I was able to spell all the words in the first sentence. After I had spelled the words, he asked (bitten) me to read. And after I had read, I found that I could translate the sentence. But the other pupils could not translate.

Your son,

Karl.

Das Schloft am Meer.

Haft du das Schloß gesehen, Das hohe Schloß am Meer? Golben und rosig wehen Die Wolken drüber her.

Es möchte sich nieberneigen In die spiegelklare Flut, Es möchte streben und steigen In der Abendwolken Glut. "Wohl hab' ich es gesehen, Das hohe Schloß am Meer, Und den Wond darüber stehen Und Nebel weit umher."

Der Wind und des Meeres Wallen, Gaben sie frischen Klang? Bernahmst du aus hohen Hallen Saiten und Festgesang?

"Die Winde, die Wogen alle Lagen in tiefer Ruh'; Einem Klagelied aus der Halle Hört' ich mit Tränen zu."

Sahest du oben gehen Den König und sein Gemahl? Der roten Mäntel Wehen, Der goldnen Kronen Strahl?

Führten sie nicht mit Wonne Eine schöne Jungfrau dar, Herrlich wie eine Sonne, Strahlend im goldnen Haar?

"Wohl sah ich die Eltern beibe, Ohne der Kronen Licht, Im schwarzen Trauerkleide; Die Jungfrau sah ich nicht."

- Lubwig Uhland.

LESSON XLI.

Separable and Inseparable Verbs.

Das kommt darauf an. That depends.

188. Inseparable Verbs differ from simple verbs in only one way — they never take the prefix ge= for the past participle. The inseparable prefix is always directly before the verb, attached to it, and (except miß=) is never accented. The inseparable prefixes are be=, emp=, ent=, er=, ge=, miß=, ver=, zer=.

Synopsis of Inseparable Verbs.

Weak.	Strong.
Pres. ich erzähle, I tell.	ich verstehe, I understand.
Past. ich erzählte, I told.	ich verstand, I understood.
Fut ich werde erzählen, I shall tell.	ich werde verstehen, I shall understand.
Perf. ich habe erzählt, I have told.	ich habe verstanden, I have unders stood.
Past Perf. ich hatte erzählt, I had told.	ich hatte verstanden, I had under- stood.
Fut. Perf. ich werde erzählt haben, I shall have told.	ich werde verstanden haben, I shall have understood.

- (a) Conjugate each tense in full.
- 189. Separable Verbs. All other prefixes are separable. Separable verbs have the following peculiarities:—
- (a) The prefix always takes the accent, as in English: pick up', take down'.

an'fangen, fing an', an'gefangen, to begin.

(b) With simple tenses in independent clauses the prefix is put at the end of the clause.

Ich fange hente diese Arbeit an. I begin this work to-day. Du fingst gestern deine Ansgabe an. You began your exercise yesterday.

(c) In compound tenses and in dependent clauses the prefix is attached to the verb.

Rorgen wird er an'fangen. To-morrow he will begin.
Sahst du, wo wir an'fingen? Did you see where we began?

(d) The signs zu of the infinitive and ge= of the past participle are put between prefix and verb.

Sie haben sehr gut an'gefangen. They have begun very well. Warum wünscht ihr nicht an'zusangen? Why don't you want to begin?

190. Conjugation of Separable Verbs.

anfangen, to begin.

PRESENT TENSE.	, , ,	Synopsis.
ich fange an	Pres.	ich fange an
du fängst an	Past.	ich fing an
er fängt an	Fut.	ich werde anfangen
wir fangen an	Perf.	ich habe angefangen
ihr fangt an	Past Perf.	ich hatte angefangen
fie fangen an		ich werbe angefangen haben
Formal 1	Imperative. far	igen Sie an

- (a) Conjugate each tense throughout in full. In like manner conjugate auffören, auffiehen, and fortfahren (§ 193).
- 191. Use of Separable Verbs. In translating a printed or written sentence it is always well to look toward the end for a separable prefix, as separable verbs are very common in German.

When two verbs mean the same in German and one is separable, Germans usually prefer to use this. Thus, while Ich habe die Aufgabe begonnen, and Bitte, wollen Sie das Fenster

öffnen? are perfectly correct, a German is more likely to say, Ich habe die Aufgabe angefangen, and Bitte, wollen Sie das Fenster aufmachen?

192. The Complementary Infinitive usually follows the separable prefix. A modified infinitive phrase is generally preceded by a comma.

Please begin to translate. Bitte, fangen Sie an zu überseten. He began to read the sentence. Er hat angefangen, ben Sat zu lefen.

193.

Vocabulary.

erflä'ren, erflärte, erflärt (haben), to explain.
enthal'ten, enthielt, enthalten (haben), es enthält, to contain.
an'fangen, fing an', an'gefangen (haben), er fängt an', to begin, with accusative or a complementary infinitive and zn.
anf'hören, hörte anf', anf'gehört

(haben), to stop, with a complementary infinitive and an where English has a verbal in -ing.
anf'stehen, stand anf', anf'gestanden (sein), to stand up, get up, rise.
fort'sahren, suhr fort', fort'gesahren (haben), er sährt fort', to continue, go on, with a complementary infinitive and an.

194.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Wenn Sie anfangen zu übersetzen, stehen Sie auf und lesen Sie die Worte! 2. Als wir aufgehort hatten zu schreiben, hat der nächste Schüler fortgefahren. 3. Der nächste Schüler fährt fort, wenn dieser aufgehört hat. 4. Bitte, erklären Sie uns, wieviele Fehler diese Aufgabe enthält! 5. Er stand auf und fuhr fort zu übersetzen, nachdem wir alle aufgehört hatten. 6. Die Aufgabe hört nicht hier auf; bitte, fahren Sie fort zu übersetzen!
- (b) "Bitte, stehen Sie auf und erklären Sie uns, was der lette Sat bedeutet!"

- "Ich habe aufgehört zu lesen, ehe wir den letten Sat übersett hatten."
 - "So? Dann fahren Sie fort, wo Sie aufgehört haben!"
 - "Aber Sie müffen mir ben Sat erklären, ehe ich anfange."
- "Nein, fangen Sie an, ober wir wollen irgend jemand anders fortfahren lassen."
- (c) Did you explain to that pupil that his exercise contained too many mistakes? 2. Please stand up and begin to translate where that other boy stopped reading. 3. He continues to explain the mistakes to the children, after they have stopped studying and have begun to play. 4. Did she stand up and begin to read, or did the other girl continue reading? 5. We stopped explaining the sentences as soon as the teacher came into the room. 6. This last exercise is not the one I had begun to translate.
 - (d) "Please stand up and read the exercise on this page."
 - "Where shall I begin to translate, and when shall I stop?"
- "Begin with this line and read two sentences. I will explain to the class what you read."
- "Shall I continue to read when I have translated two sentences? I know what the next line means."
- "No, you must stop reading, and we will let some one else (§ 159, g) translate."
 - "I like to go on translating when I have begun."
 - "Yes, I know that, but now you must stop."

LESSON XLII.

Separable and Inseparable Verbs.

Jett geht es los. Now it is going to begin (familiar). Das fällt mir gar nicht ein. I haven't the least idea (of doing that).

195. Meaning of Prefixes. — The meaning of many inseparable prefixes is hard to define. In general miß= equals mis-; ger= means to pieces, and ent= denotes separation. The others vary.

lanfen, to rûn; entlaufen, to run away. verstehen, to understand; miß'verstehen, to misunderstand. brechen, to break; zerbrechen, to smash, to break to pieces.

- (a) The separable prefixes usually have their literal meaning: fiehen, to stand; anffiehen, to stand up, get up. brechen, to break; abbrechen, to break off. lanfen, to run; weglanfen, to run away, to escape.
- 196. Common Prefixes. The four prepositions, burth, über, um, and unter are sometimes separable, sometimes inseparable.
- (a) They are inseparable when used in a figurative meaning, or one not exactly literal. The verbs are usually transitive, have haven as auxiliary, take the accent on the root of the verb, not on the prefix, and do not take ges in the past participle. The inseparable use is much commoner than the separable.

durchrei'sen, durchrei'ste, durchreist' (haben) to travel over, to "do."
Ich durchrei'se Deutschland seden Sommer. I travel all over ("do")
Germany every summer.

Ich habe Deutschland letten Sommer durchreift'. I "did" Germany last summer.

überge'hen, überging', übergan'gen (haben), to omit, skip. Bir werden diese Seite überge'hen. We will skip this page. Bir haben diese Seite übergan'gen. We have skipped this page.

umge'hen, umging', umgan'gen (haben), to avoid, to evade.

Sie umge'hen diefes Gefet. They evade this law.

Sie haben biefes Gefet umgan'gen. They evaded this law.

unterhal'ten, unterhielt', unterhal'ten (haben), to entertain.

Sie unterhalt' viele Freunde. She entertains many friends.

Sie hat viele Freunde unterhal'ten. She entertained many friends.

(b) They are separable when both prefix and verb are used in their natural meaning. The verbs are often intransitive, take the auxiliary of the simple verb, and have the accent upon the preposition, as in the case of all separable verbs.

Icarry out my will.

Er ift ü'bergefahren. He crossed over.

Die Sonne ift nu'tergegangen. The sun has set.

Rach einer Beile kehrten wir um. After a while we turned round.

(c) When used regularly with a simple verb, these four prepositions sometimes look like separable prefixes. Hence they are often so called, and the principal parts of the verbs are so given. But really they are simple verbs used with a preposition. Compare the examples below with those under (a) above.

ü'bergehen, ging ü'ber, ü'bergegangen (fein), to go over.

36 gehe über. I go across (separable).

I go across the field (simple verb).

un'terhalten, hielt un'ter, un'tergehalten (haben), to hold under.

Er hält die Rate unter. He holds the cat under (separable).

Er half die Rate unter dem Tische. He holds the cat under the table (simple verb).

burch'reisen, reiste durch', durch'gereist (sein), to travel through. Bir reisen durch. We travel through (separable). Bir reisen durch Deutschland. We travel through Germany (simple verb).

um'gehen, giug um', um'gegangen (sein), to go around.
Sie gehen um. You go around (separable).
Sie gehen um ben Baib. You are going around the wood (simple verb).

197. Hin and Her. — All verbs of motion are commonly compounded with hin or her to denote direction of motion. Hin always means away from the speaker, her, toward the speaker.

Da geht er hin. There he goes (away from here). Bollen Sie her (or.hierher) kommen? Will you come here? Können Sie heranfkommen? Can you come up (here)? Ich kann nicht hinaufgehen. I can't go up (there).

- (a) Hin und her means here and there, hither and thither.

 Gr lief hin und her. He ran hither and thither.
- (b) We means where (rest); wehin' means where to, whither; weher' means where from, whence. The two parts may be separated.

Where are you going? Bohin gehen Sie? or Bo gehen Sie hin?

198.

Vocabulary.

die Re'gel, die Regeln, rule. die Schwie'rigkeit, die Schwierigkeiten, difficulty.

durchblät'tern, durchblät'terte, durch= blät'tert (haben), to skim over, run through (of a book).

überzen'gen, überzeng'te, überzengt' (haben), to convince.

umge'ben, umgab', umge'ben (haben), er umgibt', to surround.

unterhal'ten, unterhielt', unterhal'ten (haben), er unterhält', to entertain.

unterueh'men, unteruhhm', unternom'men (haben), er unternimmt', to undertake.

wiederho'len, wiederhol'te, wiederholt' (haben), to repeat. This is the only inseparable compound of wieder.

199.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Wir haben ihn überzeugt, daß er nicht hingehen sollte.

 2. Er hat es unternommen, all die Regeln in diesem Buche zu wiederholen.

 3. Schöne Bäume umgaben unseren Garten, wo wir unsere Freunde unterhalten hatten.

 4. Bitte, wiederholen Sie die Schwierigkeiten, die Sie fanden, als Sie das Buch durchblätterten!

 5. Er weiß, woher er kommt, aber er weiß nicht, wohin er geht.

 6. Wir suchten hin und her, aber wir konnten kein Wasser sinden.
- (b) "Wollen Sie biese Sätze durchblättern und uns die Schwierigkeiten erklären?"
 - "Ich bin überzeugt, daß ich es nicht unternehmen follte."
 - "Dann müffen Sie die Regeln wiederholen."
 - "Ja, das wird die anderen fehr gut unterhalten."
- "Sie werden wenige Schwierigkeiten finden, wenn Sie es unternommen haben."
- (c) 1. Did you undertake [it] to explain all these difficulties? 2. I ran through his sentences and convinced him that they contained too many mistakes. 3. It does not entertain the pupils, when they have to repeat these rules. 4. The man was running hither and thither; he did not know where he wanted to go. 5. Big trees surround the field where these flowers came from (herfamen). 6. Please repeat the last rules in this book.
- (d) "Now I will run through your exercises and explain the difficulties. How many have made mistakes?"
- "I didn't make any mistakes; I will undertake [it] to repeat all the rules."
- "I think I shall be able to convince you that you made several mistakes. Did the exercise contain difficulties?"

- "The whole class was surrounding me, while I was writing this exercise. I entertained them well."
- "Good, but you have not yet convinced me that you understand all the rules."
 - "Well, I am willing to undertake [it] to repeat them."

LESSON XLIII.

Imperative.

Sei duldsam gegen alles Underssein, Und laß dich keinen Widerspruch verdrießen; Aur immer steh' auf deinen eignen füßen, Und sprich zur rechten Zeit entschlosines Nein. — Bichert.

- 200. The Imperative for formal address is like the inverted indicative (§ 69); Ioben Sie, praise; sehen Sie, look; fangen Sie an, begin; übersetzen Sie, translate.
- (a) The second singular imperative adds se to the stem. This se may be dropped in conversation: lobe, praise; hore, listen; fange an, begin; stehe auf, stand up; übersete, translate.
- (b) When the root vowel e changes to it or i in the second singular indicative, the same vowel change occurs in the imperative and se is not added. Strong verbs in a do not take umlaut. sieh, see; gib, give; hast, stop.
- (c) The second plural imperative is like the indicative without the pronoun. The connecting vowel *e* may be inserted for euphony. See § 14, a.

201.

Conjugation of the Imperative.

Second Singular.	Second Plural.	Formal.		
lobe	lobt	loben Sie, praise		
fieh	feht	fehen Sie, see		
fomm	fommt	fommen Sie, come		
fange an	fangt an	fangen Sie an, begin		
überfețe	überfețt	übersețen Sie, translate		
habe	habt	haben Sie, have		
fei feid		feien Sie, be		

(a) The only imperatives offering any difficulty are those of verbs whose root vowel is e, which changes to it or i in the second singular. These form the imperative simply by dropping the (e)st of the second person singular present indicative active: werfen, bu wirfst, wirf; geben, bu gibst, gib; lesen, bu lies(es)t, lies; spreden, bu sprichst, sprich.

202.

Vocabulary.

genü'gen, genüg'te, genügt' (haben), to suffice, be enough; das genügt, that will do, that is enough or sufficient.
hei'hen, hieh, geheihen (haben), to be called, to be named, to be (translated); Wie heihen Sie? What's your name?
her'fagen, fagte her', her'gefagt (haben), to recite.
neh'men, nahm, genom'men (haben), er nimmt, to take.

verbef'fern, verbef'ferte, verbef'fert (haben), to correct.

vor'lefen, las vor', vor'gelefen (haben), er lieft vor', to read (aloud).

wei'terlesen, las wei'ter, wei'tergelesen (haben), er liest wei'ter, to read on (further).

dentich, adj., German; auf dentich, in German.

eng'lifch, adj., English; auf englifch, in English.

203.

Exercise.

(a) 1. Lies weiter, nachdem die anderen Schüler die englischen Regeln hergesagt haben! 2. Nehmt diese Aufgaben und versbessert all die Sätze, die Fehler enthalten! 3. Komm her und sage mir, wie dein Bruder heißt! 4. Nimm ein Stück Papier

und eine Feber und schreibe ben nächsten englischen Satz auf beutsch! 5. Sagt die letzte beutsche Zeile auf englisch her! Wie heißt das lange Wort? 6. Ehe wir die Regeln hersagen, nehmt Febern und Tinte und schreibt auf beutsch, was ich euch vorlese!

- (b) "Bitte, lies auf beutsch weiter! Wie heißt bas nächste Wort?"
 - "Das weiß ich nicht; ich habe nicht weitergelesen."
 - "Nimm bein beutsches Buch und lies ben nächsten Sat vor!"
- "Ich kann ben Sat nicht hersagen; ich weiß nicht, wie er auf beutsch heißt."
- "So höre auf und verbeffere die anderen Sate! Das ge-
- (c) (Write all imperatives three ways.) 1. Take these German books and read on in English. 2. That will do. Read the next sentence aloud in German before we correct it.

 3. Recite the English rules, and then we will read the exercise aloud in German and translate it. 4. What is that last word in English? Yes, that will do. 5. Take these papers and read aloud the German sentences which we have translated and corrected. 6. Read on in German; I will tell you when it's enough.
- (d) "Take this book and read this English exercise aloud in German."
- "Please explain the difficulties to us in English before we read on."
- "No, I will correct your mistakes after you have recited the rules."
- "What is the next German word in English? I do not understand how I am to translate it."

"Recite the rules in English and you will be able to understand the German sentences."

"Now I have read the sentences aloud in German and in English. Is that enough?"

"Yes, that will do."

LESSON XLIV.

Infinitives and Participles.

Selbst gesponnen, selbst gemacht, Rein dabei, ift Bauerntracht. - Sprichwort.

- 204. The Infinitives. There are two infinitives in German: present, loben, to praise; gehen, to go; and perfect, gelobt zu haben, to have praised; gegangen zu sein, to have gone.
- (a) The infinitive without the sign zu is used after modal auxiliaries and after finden, fühlen, heißen, helfen, hören, lassen, sehen. (See § 141.)

Icould see him.

Ich fah ihn am Fenfter ftehen. I saw him stand at the window.

Er lernte gut lefen. He learned to read well.

Ich hörte ihn kommen. I heard him come.

(b) In most other cases zu is used when the infinitive has to in English.

Er fing an, einen Brief gu ichreiben. He began to write a letter.

Die Aufgabe ist schwer zu überseten. The exercise is hard to translate.

(c) The infinitive may be used as a noun. It is a neuter noun of the first class.

Das Leben ift fehr fonn. Life (to live) is very beautiful.

(d) Besides um, denoting purpose (§ 86), the infinitive is also used after anfiatt, instead of, and onne, without, where English employs a verbal.

Instead of going, he came. Anftatt zu gehen, ift er gekommen. Without asking me, she went home. Ohne mich zu fragen, ging sie nach Hause.

205. Position of the Infinitive. — An infinitive with zu usually comes outside the clause.

He began to write. Er fing an an ichreiben. We continued to translate. Wir fuhren fort zu überfeten.

(a) An infinitive is always preceded by its objects and modifiers. When so preceded it may be treated as a separate clause and set off by commas (§ 192).

He began to write a long letter. Er fing an, einen langen Brief gu fchreiben.

We continued to translate these sentences without a mistake. Wir fuhren fort, ohne einen Fehler diese Sätze zu übersetzen.

- 206. The Participles. There are two participles in German: present, lobend, praising; gehend, going; past (also called perfect), gelobt, praised; gegangen, gone.
- (a) The participle may be used as an adjective or a noun, but it is always declined like an adjective. Unlike the English, it is preceded by its modifiers, and as an adjective it stands before its noun. It is not common in conversation.

Gin (flein) er Fluß, a little river.

Ein (durch die Stadt fließend)er Fluß, a river flowing through the city.

Ein (von einem gelehrten Lehrer geschrieben)es Buch, a book written by a learned teacher.

Die (Anfommend)en, the newcomers.

- 207. The Use of Infinitives and Participles is not so common in German as in English.
- (a) German does not possess the progressive and emphatic forms of the verb (§ 16). For the three forms, he praises, he is praising, and he does praise, the German has but one form: er lobt.
- (b) Often where English has an infinitive or participial phrase, German uses a finite clause, commonly introduced by ba. To avoid errors, change the English phrase to an English clause with when or as, and then translate.

Not finding him in the house, I looked for him in the garden. Da ich ihn nicht im Hause fand, suchte ich ihn im Garten.

Coming home, he found the letter on his table. Als er nach Saufe fam, fand er ben Brief auf feinem Tifche.

I knew him to be my friend. Ich wußte, daß er mein Freund war.

208.

Vocabulary.

die Ans'sprache, die Anssprachen, pronunciation, accent.

die Gramma'tik, die Gramma'tikeu, grammar.

das Le'febuch, die Lefebücher, reader, reading book.

end'lich, finally, at last.

bor'gen, borgte, geborgt (haben), to borrow.

lei'hen, lieh, geliehen (haben), to lend.

e'ben, just; ja, c'ben, yes, that's

überall', everywhere, all over.

209.

Exercise.

(a) 1. Jett haben Sie eben einem Freunde das geborgte Gelb geliehen. 2. Nein, anstatt es zu leihen, habe ich endlich noch etwas geborgt. 3. Das ist ein sehr gut geschriebenes Lesebuch, aber es enthält nur wenig Grammatik. 4. Das Lesen, ohne die Sätz zu übersetzen, ist mir nicht schwer. 5. Wollen wir fortsfahren, diese noch nicht übersetzen Wörter vorzulesen? 6. Unser

Lehrer lobt unfere deutsche Aussprache überall in der Stadt, ohne uns in der Schule ein Wort davon zu sagen.

- (b) "Wie haben Sie so gut Deutsch sprechen lernen?" (§ 141).
- "Anstatt aus einer Grammatik ober einem Lesebuch zu lesen, habe ich meine Aussprache burch Sprechen gelernt."
- "Ich habe noch nie einen so gut sprechenden Schüler gesehen. Sie sollten die anderen sprechen lehren."
- "Ja, eben, aber man muß überall sprechen. Dann endlich geht es."
- (c) 1. Not being able to see well, we finally went home without waiting. 2. Instead of lending me her reader when I had lost mine, she made (144, d) me look everywhere for it. 3. Not being able to learn a good pronunciation from your reader, you must borrow a grammar. 4. Do you find this a well-written grammar? Yes, that's so. 5. Coming into the room, the teacher found the pupils playing instead of writing their exercises. 6. The pupils finally began to write their sentences, after the teacher had seen them playing (§ 141).
- (d) "Do you know that to be the right pronunciation of that sentence?"
 - "No, but I heard another pupil read it so."
- "Borrow a grammar and learn the pronunciation of these words. Who will lend him a grammar?"
- "Here is my reader, but I have looked everywhere for my grammar without finding it."
- "When you finally find it, let me see a well-written exercise and hear a good pronunciation. You must work hard to learn well."
 - "Yes, that's so."

LESSON XLV.

Review.

In Hochmut überheb' dich nicht, Und laß den Mut nicht finken, Mit deinem Wipfel reich' ins Licht, Und laß die Wurzel trinken. — Rückert.

210. Review Questions.

- (a) 1. Give the inseparable prefixes.
 2. Where do the separable prefixes stand in simple tenses (a) in independent clauses? (b) in dependent clauses?
 3. In compound tenses (a) in independent clauses?
 4. With the infinitive?
 5. What prefixes are sometimes separable and sometimes inseparable?
 6. Give the rule for distinguishing these by their accent.
 7. Explain the distinction in the use of hin and her.
 8. What is the position, order, and punctuation of infinitive phrases?
- (b) 1. Give the rule for regular formation of the imperative second singular.

 2. Give the rule for the second singular imperative of verbs whose root vowel is ϵ , that change ϵ to it or i in the second singular indicative.

 3. Is "bitte" an imperative? Might it be?
- . (c) 1. Give the cases where English uses to with the infinitive, where zu is omitted in German. 2. What is the position of the infinitive with reference to its modifiers? 3. What is the force of um with the infinitive? 4. What other prepositions are regularly used with the infinitive?
- (d) 1. Give the two chief uses of the participle in German.

 2. What is the German equivalent for the following: He is

singing very beautifully. Not seeing anything in the garden, I went into the house.

3. What is the position of the participle with reference to its modifiers?

4. Which language uses participles more frequently, German or English?

211. Review Exercise.

- (a) 1. Ich verstehe nicht, was das bedeutet. Bitte, erkläre es mir! 2. Er hat angefangen, die Regeln vorzulesen. 3. Die Schüler haben den Lehrer überzeugt, daß die Aufgabe viele Schwierigkeiten enthielt. 4. Bitte, verbessern Sie diese engslischen Sätze, ehe Sie auf deutsch weiterlesen! 5. Wie heißt das auf deutsch? Ja, das genügt. 6. Nimm dein Lesebuch und lies auf der nächsten Seite vor, anstatt mit der letzten anzusfangen! 7. Wann glauben Sie, daß ich endlich eine gute deutsche Aussprache haben werde? 8. Da der Lehrer die Schüler arbeiten sah, lobte er sie. 9. Anstatt nach Hausgehen, din ich in der Schule geblieben. 10. Das Mädchen mit der guten Aussprache hat die ganze Aufgabe gelesen, ohne einen Fehler zu machen.
- (b) 1. The teacher was explaining to the class what the rules meant. 2. We undertook [it] to convince him that he had not begun to translate right. 3. Rise, please, and tell us where you are going (§ 197, b). 4. We went hither and thither, but everywhere the trees surrounded us. 5. Coming home without seeing anybody, I looked everywhere for my friends. 6. Take this book, stand up, and read the next sentence in German, instead of correcting the last one. 7. Please recite the last rules in this grammar in English. 8. Seeing the boys playing instead of working, the teacher stopped reading. 9. I have just borrowed the teacher's grammar, in order to learn a good pronunciation. 10. You

will never be able to do that without speaking a great deal (much).

(c) A Letter.—Dear Mother: I like to study German. When I began to study it, I did not speak well. But instead of stopping, I read aloud every time that I could, and now I have a good accent. But you cannot learn to speak German without working. I work hard every day, instead of playing the whole time. Please write me a letter soon, and tell me what you are doing.

Your [you] loving daughter.

3m Bolfeton.

Einen Brief soll ich schreiben Meinem Schat in der Fern'; Sie hat mich gebeten, Sie hätt's gar zu gern.

Als wir noch mitsammen Uns lustig gemacht, Da haben wir nimmer Ans Schreiben gebacht.

Was hilft mir nun Feber Und Tint' und Papier? Du weißt, die Gedanken Sind allzeit bei dir!

- Theodor Storm.

LESSON XLVI.

Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs.

Ein edler Held ift, der fürs Daterland, ein edlerer, der für des Candes Wohl, der edelfte, der für die Menschheit kämpft. — Herber.

- 212. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs. Adjectives and adverbs are compared by adding ser and s(e) it. Monosyllabic stems in a, o, or u usually take umlaut. Euphony requires the use of the connecting vowel e before it in the superlative, when the positive ends in a diphthong or a sound like s or t (s, h, h, h): freieit, älteit, fürzeit. Some adjectives are irregularly compared.
- (a) The comparative and superlative are declined like other adjectives. The uninflected superlative is very rare.

Ein befferes Buch, a better book.

Der höchste Baum, the highest tree.

Schöneres Better, iconeren Betters, more beautiful weather.

(b) For the English superlative in the predicate, when not modified by a phrase or clause, the German uses am with the superlative ending in sen for both numbers and all genders.

Dieser Baum ift am höchsten. This tree is the highest.

- Diefer Baum ist der höchste im Garten. This tree is the highest in the garden.
- (c) For the adverbial superlative absolute, in the —est possible way, German uses the phrase aufs —-ste.

He spoke in the clearest possible way. Er sprach aufs deutlichste. She gave you the highest praise possible. Sie hat dich aufs höchste gelobt. (d) Unlike English, long words are regularly compared in German, mehr being used only when one adjective is compared with another.

I know nothing more disagreeable. Ich tenne nichts Unaugenehmeres. He is more lazy than sick. Er ift mehr faul als trant.

213. Table of Comparisons.

POSITIVE. COMPARATIVE. SUPERLATIVE. Regular. Adj. and Adv. · Adj. and Adv. Adj. Adv. and Pred. Adj. tief, deep. tiefer, deeper. ber tieffte, am tiefften, deepest. der ältefte, am älteften, oldest. alt, old. älter, older. fconer, more der schöufte, am schönften, most fon, beautiful. beautiful. beautiful.

Irregular.

Adj. and Adv. A	dj. and Adv.	Adj. Adv. and Pred. Adj.
gut, good (adv. well). viel, much. hoch, high.	mehr, more.	der beste, am besten, best. der meiste, am meisten, most. der höchste, am höchsten, highest.
nah, near. groß, great.	näher, nearer. größer, greater.	der nächste, am nächsten, nearest. der größte, am größten, greatest.
	der erstere, former.	der erste, zuerst (adv.), first.
	ber lettere, latter.	der lette, zulet (adv.), last.
wenig, little.	meniger dess.	am wenigsten $\left. egin{array}{c} am \ mindesten \end{array} ight. ight.$
gern (adv.) gladly.	lieber, rather.	am liebsten, (to like) best.

214. Particles of Comparison.

(a) As is translated by wie; than usually by als, sometimes by wie.

He is not so large as you. Er ift nicht fo groß wie du. He is larger than I. Er ift größer als (or wie) ich.

- (b) As . . . as is translated ebenso . . . wie (or als).

 She is as pretty as you. Sie ist cheuso schon wie (or als) Sie.
- (c) The . . . the is translated by je . . . besto.

The longer the sentence, the harder it is to write. Je langer ber Sat, besto schwerer ist er zu schreiben:

215.

Vocabulary.

die A'bung, die Abungen, practice. das Bör'terbuch, die Börterbücher, dictionary.

auf'machen, machte auf', auf'gemacht (habeu), to open.

ans'sprechen, sprach ans', ans'gesprochen (haben), er spricht ans', to pronounce. brau'den, brandste, gebraucht (haben), to need.

nach'schlagen, schlug nach', nach'geschlagen (haben), er schlägt nach', to look up (of words, etc.).

verfn'den, verfndte, verfndt (haben), to try. leicht, easy.

216.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Um bessere Übung zu haben, braucht man aufs schnellste im Wörterbuch nachzuschlagen. 2. Ich habe die Übung schneller gelesen und besser ausgesprochen als mein Bruder; der Lehrer hat mich aufs höchste gelobt. 3. Sie spielt besser als ich, und sie singt auch am schönsten. 4. Milch ist gut, Tee ist besser als Wilch, aber Kaffee ist am besten. 5. Je besser wir die Wörter verstehen, desto weniger brauchen wir unsere Grammatik aufzumachen, um nachzuschlagen. 6. Dieser Baum ist nicht so hoch wie jener; der nächste Baum ist am höchsten.
- (b) "Sie sprechen nicht so schnell wie die anderen; Sie muffen versuchen, die Sätze schneller auszusprechen."

"Das ist nicht so leicht, wie Sie glauben, wenn man Übung braucht."

"Diese Knaben haben eine bessere Aussprache als Sie, aber bas Mädchen spricht die Worte am besten aus."

"Ja, sie spricht aufs schnellste, aber ich brauche im Wörterbuch nachzuschlagen, ehe ich die Sätze ausspreche."

"Ja, eben, aber Sie follten fortfahren, es zu versuchen."

(c) 1. Can you pronounce this sentence faster than I? Try it. 2. You need practice; begin with the easiest exercises.

3. The faster we read, the harder it is to try to understand.

4. It is easier to open the dictionary and look up these words than to try to pronounce them without knowing what they mean.

5. That last sentence is the longest (§ 212, b) that we

6. She is the most beautiful girl I know.

have had.

(d) Dear Karl: The more I see of this country, the better I like it. It is as beautiful as you told me. The fields are the greenest I have seen, and the trees are larger and higher than ours. But I do not like the most beautiful things here so well as those at home. At home it is always most beautiful. I shall try to come home next week.

Your friend.

LESSON XLVII.

Numerals.

Zwei Hälften machen zwar ein Ganzes, aber merk': Uus halb und halb getan entsteht kein ganzes Werk.— Rückert.

217. The Cardinal Numerals correspond to the English as below. They are indeclinable except eins (see § 22) and eine Million, zwei Millionen.

1	ein8	3	brei	5	fünf
2	zwei	4	vier	6	fech8

7	fieben	18	achtzehn	80	achtzig
8	acht	.19	neunzehn 90 neunzig		neunzig
9	neun	20	0 zwanzig 100 hundert		hundert
10	zehn .	21	ein'undzwanzig	200	zwei'hundert
11	elf	22	zwei'undzwanzig	225	zweihundert=
12	zwölf	30	dreißig (not		fünfundzwanzig
13	dreizehn		dreizig)	1000	tausend
14	vierzehn	40	vierzig	1901	tausend neun=
15	fünfzehn	5 0	fünfzig		hundertundeins
16	sechzehn	60	sechzig	1,000	,000 eine Mil=
17	fieb(en)zehn	70	sieb(en)zig		lion'

(a) German numbers of the same group are usually written as one word.

56 sechsundfünfzig.

147 hundert (und) sieben und vierzig.

329,564 dreihundertneunundzwanzigtausend fünfhundertvierundsechzig.

3,784,632 drei Millionen siebenhundertvierundachtzigtausend sechshundertzweiunddreißig.

- (b) Cardinal adverbs are formed by adding smal (bas Mal, the time) to the cardinal: einmal, once; zweimal, twice; breimal, three times, etc.
- (c) German translates a hundred by hundert, a thousand by tausent; ein hundert and ein tausend mean one hundred and one thousand.
- 218. The Ordinal Numerals are formed from the cardinals by adding at up to 20, and aft, from 20 up. Exceptions: ber erfte, ber britte, ber achte. They are declined like other adjectives, and their uninflected use is rare.

ber erste, 1st ber zwanzigste, 20th
ber zweite, 2d ber hundertste, 100th
ber der tausendste, 1000th
ber vierte, 4th ber tausend achthundertsechsunds
ber fünste, 5th neunzigste, 1896th

- (a) Ordinal adverbs are formed by adding sens to the ordinal stem: erstens, firstly, in the first place; zweitens, secondly, in the second place, etc.
- 219. Fractions (except bie Hälfte, the half and ein Drittel, a third) are formed by adding stel (a softening of her Teil, the part) to the ordinal stem up to 20, and stel from 20 on. They are all neuter nouns of the first class.

Drei Biertel, three fourths; ein Zwanzigstel, a twentieth; sieben Hunbertstel, seven hundredths.

(a) To express and a half with small numbers, besides the regular expression, German may add $\epsilon(e)$ half to the ordinal stem of the number next larger than the one to be expressed. Thus brittehalb really means two whole ones (understood) and half the third; anderthalb means one whole one (understood) and half another. They are indeclinable.

One and a half, einundeinhalb, anderthalb. Two and a half, zweiundeinhalb, drittehalb. Three and a half, dreinndeinhalb, viertehalb.

(b) The half (of) is die Hälfte.

Half (of) the book, die Salfte des Buches.

(c) The adjectives halb, half, and ganz, all, whole, are declined regularly following the article.

Half a page, eine halbe Seite; all the sentence, ben gangen Sat.

220.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Sie hat anderthalb Tassen Tee getrunken, und ich zweiundeinhalb. 2. Er hat die Hälfte der dritten Seite lesen
 wollen, aber er konnte nur zehn Zeilen lesen. 3. Erstens
 hatte sie zwölf Rosen, wovon sie mir nur ein Biertel geben
 wollte. 4. Zweitens war es das erste Mal, und drittens
 wollte sie selbst drei Biertel haben. 5. Bieviel ist siebenmal
 acht? 6. Es sind sechs Buchstaben in dem dritten Wort auf
 ber siebenundsünfzigsten Seite.
- (b) "Machen Sie die Bücher auf, und fangen Sie mit der neunsten Zeile auf Seite dreiundvierzig an!"
- "Soll ich mit berselben Zeile auf der vierzigsten Seite auf-
- "Sie haben nur anderthalb Zeilen gelesen und haben fünf Fehler gemacht. Die Hälfte des Sates mar falfch."
- "Ich habe' es zweimal gelesen; das dritte Mal werde ich nur drei Biertel so viele Fehler machen."
- (c) 1. How much is seven times twelve? 2. We read one and a half lines on the twenty-third page and three quarters of page twenty-four. 3. In the first place I can't read three and a half pages in an hour and a half; and in the second place I don't want to. 4. She translated half the exercise in three quarters of the time, but I did it in half an hour. 5. You are half as old as I, and I am seventeen and a half years old. 6. In the year a thousand nine hundred and thirteen we read a hundred and thirty-three pages in our reader.
- (d) "Please begin with the third line on the forty-seventh page and read five and a half lines."
 - "I cannot translate the first half of that second exercise."

- "Read half the sentence and try to translate a line and a half."
- "I know only a third of the words; you will have to translate three fourths of the sentence for me."
 - "That will do. We will try some one else."

LESSON XLVIII.

Time, Days, Months, Dates.

Im wunderschönen Monat Mai, als alle Knospen sprangen, Da ift in meinem Herzen die Liebe aufgegangen. — Seine.

221. Telling Time of Day. — German uses Uhr for English o'clock. As in English, it is expressed usually only on the complete hours.

What time is it? Bieviel Uhr ift es? It is ten o'clock. Es ift zehn Uhr. It is half past eight. Es ift halb neun.

(a) German usually reckons ahead to the following hour, and instead of saying quarter past any hour, it says one quarter towards the succeeding hour.

It is quarter past sive. Es ift ein Biertel (auf) sechs.

It is half past sive. Es ift halb sechs.

It is quarter of six. Es ift drei Biertel (auf) sechs.

At quarter to eight. Um drei Biertel acht.

(b) Minutes are reckoned as in English, before (vor) and after (nach) the hour.

It is ten minutes to nine. Es ift zehn Minuten vor nenn.

It is twenty-three minutes past seven. Es ift breiundzwanzig Minuten nach fieben.

222. Other Time. — Days of the week are put in the accusative of time (§ 117) or in the dative with am.

What day (of the week) is to-day? Welchen Tag haben wir heute?

To-day is Monday. Hente ift Montag.

Monday we went home. Montag (am Montag) gingen wir nach Hanse.

(a) Days of the month are put in the accusative of time (§ 117) or in the dative with am. In dating a letter use ben. Notice the idiomatic expression by which German asks, What day of the month is to-day?

What day of the month is to-day? Den wievielten haben wir heute? To-day is the thirteenth. Sente ift der dreizehnte. We arrive (on) the eighth. Wir kommen den achten (or am achten) an. Chicago, June 7, Chicago, den 7ten (b. 7.) Juni.

(b) The name of the month follows the date without article or preposition. Im Jahre usually precedes the year date.

Fourth of July, ben 4ten Inli.

(On) the first of January, den (am) erften Januar.

In 1492, im Jahre tansend vierhundertzweiundneunzig, or simply 1492, vierzehnhundertzweiundneunzig.

223. Names of Days and Months.

(a) The days of the week are:—

der Sonn'tag, der Diens'tag, der Don'nerstag, der Mön'tag, der Mitt'woch, der Frei'tag, der Son'nabend, der Sams'tag (South Germany).

(b) The names of the months are:—

der Jan'nar, der Mai, der Septem'ber, ber Fe'bruar, der Ju'ni, der Otto'ber, der März, der Ju'li, der Novem'ber, der April', der Angust', der Dezem'ber.

224.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Es fing um zwanzig Minuten vor acht am Donnerstag bem siebten März im Jahre neunzehnhundertdreizehn an.
 2. Im Sommer, in Juni, Juli und August gehe ich um halb elf zu Bett.
 3. Letten Winter in Dezember und Januar kam ich jeden Tag um halb neun in die Schule.
 4. Jede Woche fängt die Schule am Montag um drei Viertel neun an, und sie hört am Freitag um halb zwei auf.
 5. Welchen Tag haben wir heute?
 6. Heute ist Sonnabend, gestern war Freitag, und morgen wird Sonntag sein.
 - (b) "Wieviel Uhr ift es, und den wievielten haben wir heute?"
 "Heute ist der erste und es ist ein Biertel zehn."

"Gestern morgen bin ich um drei Biertel sieben aufgestanden, aber am vierten Juli standen wir alle um halb vier auf."

"Das ist zu früh für mich. Ich stehe nie vor zehn Minuten nach sieben auf."

"Dann kommen Sie spät in die Schule. Wir fangen um drei Biertel neun an."

(c) 1. What day of the week and of the month is to-day?

2. To-day is Wednesday, the twelfth of February.

3. What time was it when you went to bed last Sunday evening?

4. It was half past ten, or perhaps it was quarter to eleven, but on Monday I went to bed at twenty-five minutes past nine.

5. I saw him here in the city at quarter past eleven on Thursday, the seventh of October, 1913.

6. Where were you at two o'clock and at half past two on Saturday the eighth of May, 1897?

Tuesday, March 18, 1915.

(d) A Letter. — Dear Sister: Last Friday, the fourteenth of March, we got up at quarter past six. After we had eaten

at seven o'clock, we went into the city at quarter to eight. Before eleven o'clock I had bought a new dress. Then we waited till quarter to twelve before we came home. We were both very tired before half past twelve, but I bought a beautiful dress.

Your [you] loving sister.

LESSON XLIX.

Proper Nouns.

Alt Heidelberg, du feine, Du Stadt an Chren reich; Am Neckar und am Rheine Kein' andre kommt dir gleich. — Scheffel.

225. Proper Names. — Names of persons or places usually have no inflection except an -8 in the genitive singular.

Bilhelms Bücher, William's books. Herrn Müller's Haus, Mr. Miller's house. Die Straßen Berlins, the streets of Berlin. Die Flüsse Rußlands, the rivers of Russia.

(a) Names of persons ending in an s sound take an apostrophe in the genitive; names of places ending in an s sound substitute the dative with non.

Frit' Meffer, Fritz's knife. Die Strafen von Baris, the streets of Paris.

(b) When modified by the definite article, proper nouns are uninflected. When they are modified by an adjective, this must be preceded by the definite article.

Das hans des herrn Müller, the house of Mr. Miller. Die Mutter der guten Anna, good Anna's mother. Er gab es dem fleinen Wilhelm. He gave it to little William. Die Bälder des fernen Rußland, the forests of distant Russia.

(c) German often uses the article with a proper noun where English does not.

That's Charles. Das ift (der) Rarl. Give it to Mary. Gib es der Marie.

226.

Vocabulary.

ber Frit, Fred.
ber Fo'hann, John.
ber Karl, Charles.
bie An'na, Anna, Ann.
bie Marie', Mary, Marie.
bas Amē'rita, America.

bas Deutsch'land, Germany.
betom'men, betam', betom'men
(haben), to get, secure.
hal'ten, hielt, gehalten (haben),
er hält, to hold.
turz, short.

227.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Der kleine Johann hat Frig' Bücher genommen und ber guten Marie gegeben. 2. Das sind Johanns Federn, die Marie hält; sie hat sie von Karl bekommen. 3. Anna ist dreis undeinhalb Jahre älter als Karl, aber Frig' Bruder Johann ist anderthalb Jahre älter als Anna. 4. Die Bäume des alten Deutschland sind nicht so groß wie die des schönen Amerika. 5. Karl, wo haben Sie den kurzen Rock bekommen? 6. Das ist kein Rock; es ist ein Kleid, das der kleinen Anna gehört.
 - (b) "Johann, was halten Sie da in der Hand?" "Das ist Fritz' Buch über das schöne Deutschland." "Und haben Sie es von Fritz bekommen?"
- "Nein, Frit hat es (dem) Karl gegeben und Karl gab es der kleinen Marie."

"Und die kleine Marie hat es Ihnen gegeben?"
"Ja, und ich werde es (der) Anna geben."

- (c) 1. John and Charles are Fred's brothers. 2. Anna and Marie are sisters. 3. Fred's brother John knows Marie's sister Anna. 4. All the children went from America to Germany, where they stayed a short time. 5. There little Fred's brother Charles got more things than he could hold in both hands. 6. When they came home to America in March, Anna's dresses were shorter than in January.
 - (d) "John, where did you get that reader?"
- "This isn't a reader; this is Fred's grammar. I got it from Fred."
- "Well, hold it in your (ber) left hand and read a line and a half in the third exercise on page seventy-three."
 - "I can read two and a half lines, but I cannot translate."
 - "Well, perhaps John or Charles will translate for you."

LESSON L.

Review.

Das kleine Wörtchen "Muß" Ift doch von allen Rüffen, Die Menschen knacken muffen, Die allerhärtste Auß. — Bechstein.

228.

Review Questions.

(a) 1. How are adjectives and adverbs compared?
2. Do adverbs or adjectives have two forms in the superlative?
3. Explain the uses of these two forms.
4. Give eight

- irregular comparisons. 5. How is than following a comparative expressed in German? 6. Give the German for as . . . as and the . . . the.
- (b) 1. Count from one to one hundred in German. 2. How does German distinguish a hundred and one hundred? 3. Give the rule for forming ordinals. 4. What are the various German equivalents for half?
- (c) 1. Name the months and the days of the week.
 2. Give all the rules for telling the time of day.
 3. Illustrate each.
 4. How does German ask the day of the week?
 5. Of the month?
 6. Give the rule for dating a letter.
 7. What expression usually precedes the year date?
- (d) 1. What is the only difference between German and English use of proper nouns?
 2. What is the distinction in use between names of persons ending in an s sound and names of places ending in an s sound?
 3. Comment on the use of the article with German proper names.

229. Review Exercise.

(a) 1. Karl ift nicht so groß wie Johann, aber er ist größer als Anna, und Frit ist am größten.

2. Je länger wir lernen, besto mehr wissen wir.

3. Achtmal neun ist zweiundsiebzig, und die Hälfte von zweiundsiebzig ist sechsundreißig.

4. In der dritten Aufgabe auf der neunundachtzigsten Seite haben wir nur anderthalb Zeilen übersetzen können.

5. Wieviel Uhr ist es? Den wievielten haben wir heute?

6. Am Donnerstag dem vierten Juli, im Jahre achtzehnhundertssiebenundneunzig haben meine beiden Brüder zweiundeinhalb Stunden warten müssen.

7. Er ist am dritten Februar um drei Biertel neun gekommen, und um halb zehn ist er gegangen.

8. Sonntag den ersten März sind wir um ein Viertel sieben auf-

- gestanden. 9. Die Mutter der kleinen Anna hat Fritz' Wesser in Deutschland gekauft. 10. Dann hat sie es (dem) Karl geliehen.
- (b) 1. Her oldest daughter has the most beautiful clothes. 2. This tree is higher than that; it is the highest in the gar-3. Anna is as old as Fred's sister, but not so old as 4. John is bigger than his brother, but Charles is Marie. the biggest. 5. The faster we try to translate, the more 6. Six times eight is twice as much as mistakes we make. 7. 629,354 and 756,871 is 1,386,225. twelve times two. 8. Please read a line and a half in the third exercise on the seventy-fourth page. 9. What day of the week and of the month is it, and what time is it? 10. It was quarter to ten when you came; now it is quarter past ten.

Boston, August 18, 1916.

(c) A Letter. — My dear friend: You asked me about my brothers and sisters. I have three brothers and two sisters. The brothers are named Fred, Charles, and John, and the sisters, Mary and Anna. Fred is older than Mary, but not so old as Charles. Anna is as old as Fred, and John is the oldest in the family. Mary can sing better than the boys; but Anna sings most beautifully. We all go to school every morning at half past eight and come home at quarter past one.

Your friend.

Der gute Kamerad.

Ich hatt' einen Kameraben, Einen bessern findst du nit; Die Trommel schlug zum Streite, Er ging an meiner Seite In gleichem Schritt und Tritt.

Gine Rugel fam geflogen; Gilt's mir ober gilt es bir? Ihn hat es weggeriffen, Er liegt mir vor den Rugen, Als mar's ein Stud von mir.

Will mir die Sand noch reichen, Derweil ich eben lad'; "Rann dir die Hand nicht geben; Bleib' du im em'gen Leben Mein guter Kamerad!"

- Lubwig Ubland.

Die arme kleine Idee.

Es war einmal eine arme, kleine Ibee, Ein armes, schmächtiges Wefen,-Da kamen drei Dichter des Wegs, o weh! Und haben sie aufgelesen. Der eine macht einen Spruch baraus-Das hielt die kleine Idee noch aus ; Der zweite, eine Ballabe -Da wurde sie schwach und malade: Der dritte wollt' fie verwenden Bu einem Roman in zwei Banden, Dem ftarb fie unter den Sänden.

- Otto Sommerstorff.

LESSON LI.

The Passive Voice.

Glück läßt sich nicht von Gott erbitten Und nicht vom Himmel sich ersiehn, Es wird erkämpft nicht, nicht erstritten, Und nie errungen kann man's sehn. — Wehl.

- 230. The Passive Voice of transitive verbs is formed by conjugating merben with the past participle (the third one of the principal parts). In the perfect tenses the form morben is used for gemorben.
- (a) Werben thus has two meanings in English besides its regular meaning, to become. In the future it means shall or will; in the passive, am, is, or are. Distinguish carefully: ich merbe, I become; ich merbe loben, I shall praise; ich merbe gelobt, I am praised. When you see a form of merben, look carefully to see whether it is used independently, or is followed by a simple infinitive, or by a past participle, and then translate accordingly. Except in the future it may often be translated by get. 3ch murbe frant, I got sick. 3ch murbe geschlagen, I got hit.

231. Conjugation of the Passive.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

id werde gelobt, gefehen
I am praised, seen.
bu wirft gelobt, gefehen
thou art praised, seen.
er wird gelobt, gefehen
he is praised, seen.

wir werden gelobt, gesehen we are praised, seen. ihr werdet gelobt, gesehen you are praised, seen. sie werden gelobt, gesehen they are praised, seen.

SYNOPSIS.

Pres. ich werbe gelobt, I am Perf. ich bin gelobt worden, I praised.

Past. id) wurde gelobt, I was P. Perf. id) war gelobt worden, praised.

I had been praised.

Fut. id werde gelobt werden, F. Perf. id werde gelobt worden

I shall be praised.

fein, I shall have been
praised.

IMPERATIVE. — werde gelobt (rare), werdet gelobt (rare), be praised.

Note. — The passive imperative is usually formed with sein: — fei gelobt, seid gelobt, seid gelobt, seid gelobt, be praised.

Infinitive. — Pres. gelobt (zu) werden, to be praised. Perf. gelobt worden (zu) fein, to have been praised.

- Participle. Pres. zu lovend, to be praised (used only as a declinable adjective preceding its noun): ein zu lovender Mann, a man to be praised. Past. gelobt, praised.
- (a) Conjugate each tense of the indicative in full, and give complete synopses in the second and third singular, and first, second, and third persons plural.
- 232. Dative of Agent. The agent is put in the dative after non. The English by with the agent is never German bei.

Ich werde von dem Lehrer gelobt. I am praised by the teacher.

Du bist von deiner Mutter gelobt worden. You have been praised by your mother.

233.

Vocabulary.

der Besuch', die Besuche, visit.
die Mit'te, middle, center.
das Fen'ster, die Fenster, window.
besuchen, besuch'te, besucht' (haben), to visit; (in speaking of school) to attend (as a pupil, not as a visitor).

erhal'ten, erhielt', erhal'ten (haben), er erhält', to receive.
fal'len, fiel, gefallen (fein), er fällt, to fall.
zerbre'chen, zerbrach', zerbro'chen (haben), er zerbricht', to smash,

break to pieces.

234.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Er ist aus dem Fenster in die Mitte des Gartens gefallen, aber er wurde nicht verletzt. 2. Die Eier, die wir von Johann erhalten haben, sind alle von dem Mädchen zerbrochen worden. 3. Heute morgen werden Sie gelobt werden, denn die Aufgabe ist von Ihnen richtig übersetzt worden. 4. Die Tasse und der Teller sind vom Tische gefallen und sind beide zerbrochen worden. 5. Nachdem die Sätze übersetzt werden, wird die Aufgabe auf deutsch geschrieben werden. 6. Wenn ich meinen Freund besuche, werde ich von seinen kleinen Brüdern unterhalten.
 - (b) "Bon wem ist das Fenster zerbrochen worden?"
- "Das Fenster wurde von keinem der Schüler zerbrochen, die unsere Schule besuchen."

"Aber es ist zerbrochen worden, als ich einen Besuch von einem Freunde erhielt."

- "Ich habe etwas aus dem Fenster fallen sehen, aber es war schon zerbrochen worden, ehe ich das sah."
- (c) 1. When I fell out of the window, I was not hurt.

 2. What school do you attend, and from whom did you receive those books?

 3. In the middle of the lesson the window was smashed by a ball.

 4. Your visit is too short; you must stay longer when you visit us.

 5. It is fine (schön) to be called out of the class to be praised by the teacher.

 6. When these words have been written, the whole exercise will have to be translated.
- (d) "What school does your brother Charles attend? Where is he?"
- "To-day he isn't attending any school. He fell out of the window yesterday and was hurt."

"Did he receive his books at home, or weren't these exercises written by him?"

"Yes, his books were brought (holen) by a friend, and all these sentences were translated by Charles."

"Good. He will be praised by his teacher, because these sentences were all written correctly."

LESSON LII.

The Passive Voice.

Es ist bestimmt in Gottes Rat, Daß man vom Liebsten, was man hat, Muß scheiden. — Feuchtersleben.

235. Uses of the Past Participle. — When the Past Participle is used as an adjective in English, German uses fein as copula.

The door is shut. Die Tür ift geschloffen. The cloth is torn. Das Tuch ift zerriffen.

(a) This must not be confused with the passive construction, often expressed the same way in English (because in English to be is both the copula and the sign of the passive).'

The door is (being) shut. Die Tür wird geschlossen. The cloth is (being) torn. Das Tuch wird zerrissen.

(b) The auxiliary depends upon whether a condition is asserted or an action. A simple way to distinguish is to make the verb active. If the tense stays the same without changing the meaning of the original sentence, use merben. But if, in

order to keep the original meaning, you have to change the tense, use fein.

PASSIVE. ACTIVE. RULE. EXAMPLE. Use werben. The door is being Some one is shut-Die Eur wird geshut. ting the door. foloffen. The door is shut. Some one has shut Use fein. Die Tür ift gethe door. fdloffen. The cloth is being Some one is tear- Use werden. Das Tuch wird zertorn. ing the cloth. riffen. Das Ench ift zerrif-The cloth is torn. Some one has torn Use fein. the cloth. fen.

- (c) Always use merben when the agent is expressed. The cloth was torn may be translated correctly, Das Tuch war zerrifen or Das Tuch wurde zerriffen, depending on the meaning, but The cloth was torn by the man can be translated correctly only by Das Tuch wurde von dem Manne zerriffen.
- 236. Passive of Verbs governing the Dative. Verbs followed by the dative are used only impersonally (that is, with es as subject) in the passive, the subject being put in the dative of indirect object. In dependent or inverted clauses es is omitted.

I am thanked. Es wird mir gedankt (lit. it is thanked to me).

- You were helped by a man. Dir (euch, Ihnen) wurde von einem Manne geholfen.
- 237. Substitutes for the Passive. German uses the passive less than English.
- (a) When the agent is not expressed, man with the active may be used.

I am thanked. Man bankt mir.
You were asked. Man fragte bich (ench, Sie).
We shall be convinced. Man wird uns überzengen.
It is said. Man fagt.

(b) When the agent is expressed, we may invert, making the agent the subject, and the subject, the object.

You were helped by a man. Gin Mann hat dir geholfen. The cloth was torn by the man. Der Mann zerriß das Tuch.

238.

Vocabulary.

ber Ap'fel, die Äpfel, apple.
ber Beg, die Bege, way, road.
bie Uhr, die Uhren, clock, watch.
bas Anch, die Aücher, cloth.
hel'fen, half, geholfen (haben), er
hilft, to help, followed by the
dative.
gefal'len, gefiel', gefal'len (haben),

er gefällt', to please, followed by the dative.

ichi'den, ichidte, geschidt (haben), to send.

gerrei'sen, zerris', zerris'sen (haben), to tear (to pieces).

breit, wide, broad.

weit, far (not wide).

239.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Bon wem wurden Ihnen diese Apfel gegeben?

 2. Der Knabe wurde in die Stadt geschickt, um eine Uhr zu kaufen; es wurde ihm auf dem Wege von einem Freunde gesholfen.

 3. Gefallen Ihnen jene breiten Tücher, die für unsere Kleider gemacht wurden?

 4. Es wurde dem Schüler von den anderen gedankt, als man ihm die schönen Apfel schiekte, die er den anderen Schülern gab.

 5. Man spielt und singt auf dem Wege nach Hause, nachdem die Ausgaben geschrieben sind.

 6. Der sleißigste Knabe ist nach Hause geschickt worden, weil die Säze von ihm so schnell übersett wurden.
 - (b) "Es gefällt mir nicht, dieses zerrissene Tuch hier zu sehen." "So? Ist das Tuch zerrissen?"
- "Ja. Es ist von jenem Anaben zerrissen worden. Es wurde ihm von seinem Bruder geholfen."
 - "Man follte ihn nach Hause schicken."
 - "Nein, es ist zu weit; der Weg ist zu lang."

- (c) 1. John was sent the long way to the city to fetch a clock and some apples. 2. That broad piece of cloth that has been torn doesn't please me. 3. The pupil was helped by the teacher, and the teacher was thanked by the pupil.

 4. The cloth is torn, they say, but by whom was it torn?

 5. How far is it home, and is the way beautiful? 6. The girl became red when she was praised by her mother.
- (d) "Did it please your mother when you were sent home with a torn coat?"
- "She did not know that my coat was torn; I did not show it to her."
 - "Is it far to your house? Is the way long?"
 - "Yes, but I was helped on the way by an old man."
- "Did you thank him? Old men must always be thanked by boys, when the boys are helped by them."
- "Yes, he gave me an apple and I thanked him, and I showed him where the cloth was torn."

LESSON LIII.

Reflexive Verbs.

Es bildet ein Calent sich in der Stille, Sich ein Charafter in dem Strom der Welt. — Goethe.

- 240. Reflexive Verbs. A reflexive verb is one whose object is a pronoun referring to the subject.
- (a) The reflexive pronoun for the first and second persons is the same as the personal, except for Sie (formal address). For the third person, including man and Sie, it is fich in both numbers and cases (dat. and acc.).

(b) As the reflexive verb always has an object (the pronoun), the auxiliary is always haben.

241.

Conjugation of a Reflexive.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

ich freue mich, I rejoice.
In freust dich, thou rejoicest.
er freut sich, he rejoices.
wir freuen uns, we rejoice.
ihr freut euch, you rejoice.
sie freuen sich, they rejoice.

Past.

ich freute mich, I rejoiced.

du freutest dich, thou rejoicedst.

er freute sich, he rejoiced.

wir freuten uns, we rejoiced.

ihr freutet ench, you rejoiced.

sie freuten sich, they rejoiced.

Future.

ich werde mich frenen, I shall rejoice. du wirst dich frenen, thou wilt rejoice, etc.

Perfect.

ich habe mich gefreut, I have rejoiced. du haft dich gefreut, thou hast rejoiced, etc.

Past Perfect.

ich hatte mich gefreut, I had rejoiced. du hattest dich gefreut, thou hadst rejoiced, etc.

Future Perfect.

ich werde mich gefreut haben, I shall have rejoiced. du wirst dich gefreut haben, thou wilt have rejoiced, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

freue dich, freut euch, freuen Sie fich, rejoice.

Infinitives.

Pres. sich (mich, bich, etc.) (zu) freuen, to rejoice.

Perf. sich (mich, bich, etc.) gefreut (zu) haben, to have rejoiced.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. sich freuend, rejoicing (rare).

Past. fid gefreut, rejoiced (used only in compound tenses, never as adjective).

- (a) Give complete synopses of all persons and both numbers, including the formal address. Conjugate each tense in full, remembering to change the reflexive pronoun in each form to agree with the personal one (subject).
- 242. Use of Reflexives. Reflexives are commoner in German than in English.
 - (a) Any transitive verb may be used reflexively.

Ich schneide das Fleisch. I cut the meat. Ich schneide mich. I cut myself.

(b) Intransitives may also be used reflexively. This is an impersonal idiom, used only with es.

hier tangt es fich fehr fcon. The dancing here is very fine.

- Es geht sich nicht sehr gut im Balbe. The walking is not good in the wood.
- Es schwimmt sich nicht leicht in diesem kalten Wasser. Swimming isn't easy in this cold water.
 - (c) Reflexives are often used as substitutes for the passive.

The door is opened (opens). Die Tür öffnet sich.

The book has been lost. Das Buch hat sich versoren.

This paper is easily torn. Dieses Papier zerreißt sich leicht.

243.

Vocabulary.

der Fi'scher, die Fischer, fisherman, fisher.

der Ba'gen, die Bagen, wagon, carriage.

die Schen'ne, Die Schennen, barn.

bas Pferd, die Pferde, horse.
fich besin'den, befand' sich, sich besin'den (haben), ich besin'de mich, to be, do, feel (in health).
fich erin'nern, erin'nerte sich, sich

erin'nert (haben), ich erin'nere mich, to remember, with gen. sich frenen, freute sich, sich gefreut (haben), ich freue mich, to be glad, rejoice. vergeffen, vergaß, vergeffen (haben), du vergißt, er vergißt, to forget. sie'hen. sog. gesogen (haben). to

zie'hen, zog, gezogen (haben), to draw, pull.

244.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Freuen Sie sich, daß Sie sich dieser Sätze erinnern können? 2. Der Fischer hat seinen Wagen vergessen, der von zwei Pferden gezogen wurde. 3. Ich erinnere mich Ihres Baters sehr gut; besindet er sich gut? 4. Sie wird sich freuen, wenn sie die großen Pferde und den schönen Wagen sieht. 5. Ich hatte vergessen, daß das Pferd den Wagen in die Scheune gezogen hatte. 6. Ich freue mich, daß Sie sich so gut besinden.
 - (b) "Wie befinden Sie sich heute morgen?"
 - "Ich freue mich, daß ich mich fehr gut befinde."
- "Haben Sie den Fischer gesehen, dessen Pferde den breiten Wagen in die Scheune gegogen haben?"

"Nein, ich erinnere mich feiner nicht."

- "Wie haben Sie ihn vergessen können? Er war eben hier."
- (c) 1. How do you do to-day, and how is your father?

 2. I am glad that you have not forgotten me. I remember you very well.

 3. Are those the fisherman's horses, that are pulling that big wagon into the barn?

 4. Were you glad that you had remembered all the words in the sentence?

 5. I had forgotten that you had been sick, but I am glad that you are well now.

 6. I do not remember your horse, but I forget very easily.
 - (d) "Good morning! How do you do this morning?"
- "Very well, thank you. I cannot remember when I have been so well."

- "I am glad to hear it. Won't you come and make me a visit? I will show you my new horses."
- "I had forgotten that you had a barn. I am glad that you have one."
 - "Yes, I have two carriages and two beautiful horses."
- "Oh, yes, now I remember the barn. Thank you, I shall be glad to see all that."

LESSON LIV.

Impersonal Verbs.

Schon fängt es an zu dämmern. Der Mond als Hirt erwacht Und fingt den Wolkenlämmern Ein Lied zur guten Nacht. — Geibel,

- 245. Impersonal Verbs. Impersonal verbs are of four kinds or classes: pure impersonals, reflexive impersonals, impersonals with the accusative, and impersonals with the dative.
- (a) Impersonals are found only in the third person singular, and are conjugated only with the pronoun es. They are usually weak and take haben as auxiliary, except geschehen, gesingen, and einfassen.
- 246. Pure Impersonals usually denote states of the weather: es regnet, it rains; es schneit, it snows.

Conjugation of es regnet, it rains.

Pres. es reguet, it rains.

Past. es regnete, it rained.

Fut. es wird regnen, it will rain.

Perf. es hat geregnet, it has rained.

P. Perf. es hatte geregnet, it had rained.

F. Perf. es wird geregnet haben, it will have rained.

Infinitive. — Pres. (3u) requen, to rain. Perf. geregnet (3u) haben, to have rained.

247. Reflexive Impersonals include such as es fragt sich, it is a question; es schickt sich, it is proper; es versteht sich, it is a matter of course.

Conjugation of es schickt sich, it is proper.

Pres. es schickt sich, it is proper.

Past. es schickte sich, it was proper.

Fut. es wird fich schiden, it will be proper.

es hat sich geschickt, it has been proper. Perf.

P. Perf. es hatte sich geschickt, it had been proper.

F. Perf. es wird fich geschickt haben, it will have been proper.

Infinitive.—Pres. fich (zu) schicken, to be proper. Perf. fich geschickt (zu) haben, to have been proper.

248. Impersonals with the Accusative include such as es freut mich, I am glad; es wundert mich, I wonder.

Conjugation of es freut mich, I am glad.

PRESENT.

es freut mich, I am glad.

Past.

es freut uns, we are glad.

es freut dich, thou art glad.

es frent end, you are glad.

es frent ihn (sie, es), he (she, it) is glad. es frent sie, they are glad.

SYNOPSIS.

Pres. es freut mich, I am glad.

es freute bich, thou wast glad.

Fut. es wird ihn freuen, he will be glad.

Perf. es hat nus gefrent, we have been (were) glad.

- P. Perf. es hatte euch gefreut, you had been glad.
- F. Perf. es wird fie gefreut haben, they will have been glad.

Infinitive. — Pres. mich, dich, etc., (zu) frenen. Perf. mich, dich, etc., gefrent (zu) haben.

249. Impersonals with the Dative include such as es tut mir leid, I am sorry; es fallt mir ein, it occurs to me; es gelingt mir, I succeed; es geschieht mir, it happens to me.

Conjugation of es tut mir leid, I am sorry.

PRESENT.

es tut mir leid, I am sorry.
es tut dir leid, thou art sorry.
es tut ihm (ihr, ihm) leid, he (she, it) is sorry.
es tut ihmen leid, they are sorry.
es tut ihmen leid, they are sorry.

SYNOPSIS.

Pres. es tut mir leib, I am sorry.

Past. es tat dir leid, thou wast sorry.

Fut. es wird ihm leid tun, he will be sorry.

Perf. es hat uns leid getan, we have been sorry.

P. Perf. es hatte ench leid getan, you had been sorry.

F. Perf. es wird ihnen leid getan haben, they will have been sorry.

Inpinitive. — Pres. mir, bir, etc., leib (3u) tun. Perf. mir, bir, etc., leib getan (3u) haben.

- 250. Es gibt; es ist. There is (there are) is expressed in two ways in German: es gibt and es ist.
- (a) To express general existence without naming a limited, definite place, use es gibt. It is always impersonal, singular, takes the accusative, and es is never omitted.

Es gibt vicle fiolze Leute. There are many proud people. Bas gibt es Reues? What is there new? (What's the news?) (b) To express particular existence in a limited, definite place use es ift or es find (§ 163). It is personal, the verb agreeing in person and number with the real subject (not es), which is always in the nominative case. Es is omitted in an inverted or subordinate clause.

Es ift tein Blat mehr im Theater. There is no more room in the theatre.

Es find zwei Glüser auf dem Tische. There are two glasses on the table.

Gestern war tein Blat im Theater. Yesterday there was no room in the theatre.

In see that there are two glasses on the table.

251.

Vocabulary.

- es reg'net, es reguete, es hat gereguet, it's raining.
- es schneit, es schneite, es hat geschneit, it's snowing.
- es zieht, es zog, es hat gezogen, there's a draft.
- es fragt sich, es fragte sich, es hat sich gefragt, it is a question, about, um with accusative.
- es versteht' sich, es verstand' sich, es hat sich verstan'den, it is a matter of course.
- es freut mich, es freute mich, es hat mich gefreut, I am glad.

- es tut mir leid, es tat mir leid, es hat mir leid getau, I am sorry.
- es gelingt' mir, es gelang' mir, es ift mir gelnn'gen, I succeed, in, with the infinitive.
- es geschieht', es geschah', es ift gesche'hen, to happen, to, with dative.
- es fällt mir ein'. es fiel mir ein', es ist mir eingefallen, it occurs to me; es fällt mir nicht ein, I shouldn't think of (such a thing). Was fällt Ihnen ein? What are you thinking of ?

252.

Exercise.

(a) 1. Es tut mir leid, daß es uns nicht gelungen ist, den kürzesten Weg zu sinden. 2. Was gibt's Neues? Es freut mich, daß es so geschehen ist. 3. Es versteht sich, daß es uns freut, hier zu sitzen, wenn es regnet und schneit. 4. Es gibt

keinen besseren Freund als Johann. 5. Es tut mir leid, daß es hier zieht, aber es fällt mir nicht ein, ins andere Zimmer zu gehen. 6. Es fragt sich, wann es uns gelingen wird, diese Sätz richtig zu übersetzen.

- (b) "Was fällt Ihnen ein? Wir können nicht hingehen, wenn es regnet und schneit."
- "Das versteht sich, aber es fragt sich, ob wir hier bleiben wollen, wo es zieht."
- "Es tut mir leid, daß es uns nicht gelungen ift, früher zu gehen."
- "Ja, aber es freut mich, daß es bald aufhören wird zu regnen."
 - "Wenn das geschieht, so können wir hingehen."
- (c) 1. What are you thinking of? There's a draft here.

 2. Is it raining or snowing?

 3. I am sorry that you didn't succeed in translating these long sentences.

 4. I was glad that it occurred to me to look the words up in the dictionary.

 5. It happened yesterday that there was a draft in school.
- 6. Are you sorry or glad that it is snowing and raining?
- (d) "What were you thinking of? It is a matter of course that you will translate this exercise."
- "There's a draft here and I feel (\$ 243) sick. Mayn't I go home?"
- "No, it is snowing and raining. I am sorry that it happens so, but you will have to stay here."
- "It occurs to me now that I have something to eat in my coat. Perhaps I shall succeed in finding it."
- "I am glad that you have something, for there is nothing warm here."

LESSON LV.

Review.

Frendvoll und leidvoll, gedankenvoll sein; Langen und bangen in schwebender Pein; Himmelhoch jauchzend, zum Code betrübt, Glücklich allein ist die Seele, die liebt. — Goethe.

253. Review Questions.

- (a) 1. Give the rule for forming the passive in German.
 2. How many meanings may werben have in English?
 3. Illustrate each.
 4. How is the agent expressed in German?
 5. What is the best way to tell when to use merben and when fein, with the past participle?
 6. How do you express the passive of German verbs that take the dative?
 7. Give two examples.
 8. Which language uses the passive more frequently?
 9. Give the common German substitutes for the passive.
 10. When may they be used?
- (b) 1. Give the reflexive pronouns for each person.
 2. Which language uses the reflexive more often?
 3. Give a reflexive that takes the genitive.
 4. May intransitives be used reflexively in German?
 5. If so, what is their English equivalent?
 6. Give an illustration of the German reflexive used for the English passive.
- (c) 1. Name the four kinds of impersonal verbs. 2. State two peculiarities of impersonals. 3. Which impersonals correspond exactly to the English usage? 4. Give and illustrate the distinction between the use of es gibt and that of es ift.

254.

Review Exercise.

- (a) 1. Von wem wurde das Kenster zerbrochen? 2. 2018 es warm im Zimmer wurde, machten wir das Fenster auf; dann jog 3. Das Tuch ist zerrissen; es ist von dem Knaben zer-4. Es wurde mir von einem Manne geholfen, riffen worden. dem von meinem Bater gedankt murbe. 5. Wir freuen uns, daß es sich auf diesem Wege so gut geht. 6. Es freut uns, bag wir uns bes alten Mannes erinnert haben. 7. Es gibt Schüler, benen es leib tut, wenn es schneit, so bag fie die Schule nicht besuchen fonnen. 8. Aber das geschieht nicht in unserer Schule, wo es sich nicht um bas Wetter fragt. 9. Nachdem es aufgehört hat zu regnen, wird es vielleicht schneien. 10. Es tut mir leid, daß es mir nicht gelungen ift, Ihrem Bater zu gefallen.
- (b) 1. It became cold and there was a draft, when the window was broken. 2. I see that the cloth is torn, but by whom was it torn?

 3. I was thanked by an old man, who had been helped by my friend. (Write two ways.) was glad that it wasn't raining. 5. The little girl did not remember that her mother was well. 6. I am sorry, but I can't remember the next word. 7. There are pupils in this 8. I am sorry, but there are too city who like to study. many mistakes in that last sentence. 9. It is a matter of 10. I am sorry that there course that he will not succeed. is a draft; I had forgotten that it was snowing.
- (c) A Story.—Yesterday we went into the wood (ber Walb). It got cold and began to rain, but we succeeded in finding a little house in which we played. The windows had been smashed by someone, and there was a draft, but we succeeded in getting warm. We played games and sang songs and were sorry when we had to go home.

Beidenröslein.

Sah ein Anab' ein Röslein stehn, Röslein auf der Heiden, War so jung und morgenschön, Lief er schnell, es nah zu sehn, Sah's mit vielen Freuden. Röslein, Röslein, Röslein rot, Röslein auf der Heiden.

Knabe sprach: "Ich breche bich, Röslein auf ber Heiben!" Röslein sprach: "Ich steche bich, Daß du ewig benkst an mich, Und ich will's nicht leiden." Röslein, Röslein, Röslein rot, Röslein auf ber Heiben.

Und der wilde Anabe brach 's Röslein auf der Heiden; Röslein wehrte sich und stach, Half ihm doch kein Weh und Ach, Mußt' es eben leiden. Röslein, Röslein, Röslein rot, Röslein auf der Heiden.

— Wolfgang von Goethe.

LESSON LVI.

The Subjunctive. The Auxiliaries.

Eines schieft sich nicht für alle, Sehe jeder, wie er's treibe, Sehe jeder, wo er bleibe, Und wer steht, daß er nicht falle. — Goethe.

255. The Subjunctive Mode is formed regularly from the corresponding tense of the indicative. The subjunctive endings are:—

Singular	Plu	ıral	
1st person	=e	=(en
2d person	=eft	s	et
3d person	= e	, =	en

- (a) The present subjunctive is formed by adding these endings to the present stem, except in the case of sein, which does not add *e in the first and third persons singular.
- (b) The past subjunctive of weak verbs is the same as the indicative; strong verbs add the regular endings above, and the root vowel takes umlaut when possible.
- (c) The future, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect subjunctive are formed regularly from the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Instead of the indicative, the subjunctive of the auxiliaries haben (sein) and merben is used.
- (d) In German, as in English, there is a tendency to use the indicative, especially in conversation, even when the rule calls for the subjunctive. In learning the language, however, it is best to adhere to the usage which is generally accepted as correct.

256.

(baß) fie haben feien werden

Subjunctive of the Auxiliaries.

No translation is given, as the meaning varies with the use. As the subjunctive is most used in dependent sentences, it is best learned in the dependent order.

PRESENT.			. PAST.				
(daß) ich habe	fei	werde	(daß) ich hätte	wäre	würde		
(daß) du habest	feieft	werdest	(baß) du hättest	wäreft	würdeft		
(daß) er habe	fei	werde	(baß) er hätte	wäre	würde		
(daß) wir haben	feien	werden	(baß) wir hätten	wären	würden		
(daß) ihr habet	feiet	werb o	(baß) ihr hättet	wäret	würdet		

FUTURE.

(baß) fie hatten waren wurden

(daß) ich haben werde	fein werbe	werden werde
(daß) du haben werdest	fein werdest	werden werdeft
(daß) er haben werde, etc.	fein werde, etc.	werden werde, etc.

PERFECT.

(daß) ich gehabt habe	gewesen sei	geworden fei
(daß) du gehabt habest	gewesen feieft.	geworden feieft
(daß) er gehabt habe, etc.	gewesen sei, etc.	geworden fei, etc.

PAST PERFECT.

(daß) ich gehabt hätte	gewesen wäre	geworden wäre
(daß) du gehabt hättest	gewesen wärest	geworden wärest
(daß) er gehabt hätte, etc.	gewesen wäre, etc.	geworden wäre, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

(daß) ich gehabi	haben werde	gewesen sein werde	geworden fein werde
(daß) dn gehabi	haben werdeft	gewesen fein werbeft	geworden fein werdeft
(daß) er gehabt	haben werde,	gewesen fein werde,	geworden fein werbe,
	etc.	etc.	etc.

⁽a) Conjugate all the tenses in full, and give complete synopses in each person.

- 257. Uses of the Subjunctive Mode.—The German subjunctive is used: (1) in indirect discourse (dependent subjunctive); (2) to express possibility (potential subjunctive); (3) to express a wish or command (optative or hortatory subjunctive); and (4) in some conditional sentences (conditional subjunctive). The dependent subjunctive will be treated in this lesson; (2) and (3) in Lesson LVII; and (4) in Lesson LIX. Except in indirect discourse, the German subjunctive corresponds very closely to the English.
- 258. The Dependent Subjunctive sused in indirect discourse and indirect questions after verbs of saying, thinking, feeling, asking, etc.

Er glaubte, daß ich trant sei. He thought that I was sick. Er sagte, ber Knabe sei im Hause. He said the boy was in the house.

(a) In indirect discourse English changes the present tense to past, if the verb of the main clause is past. German may make this change, but usually it keeps the tense of direct discourse.

He said, "I am ill." Er fagte: "Ich bin trant."

He said that he was ill. Er fagte, daß er trant fei.

He said, "I have a book." Er fagte: "Ich habe ein Buch."

He said that he had a book. Er fagte, daß er ein Buch habe.

(b) When the form of the present subjunctive is the same as the indicative, German often changes the tense of the indirect discourse, in order to use a form distinctively subjunctive.

He says that I have money. Er fagt, daß ich Gelb hätte.
They say they have no time. Sie fagen, sie hätten keine Zeit.

(c) The indicative should be used if the speaker wishes to emphasize his belief in the truth of what he reports

Er sagte, daß er es nicht getau hat. He said that he didn't do it. Ich glaube, daß du recht hast. I think (am sure) that you are right.

259.

Vocabulary.

ber Bald, die Bälber, wood.
die Geschichte, die Geschichten, story.
das Fen'er, die Feuer, stre.
sich amüsie'ren, amüsier'te sich, sich amüsiert' (haben), to have a good time; used with and without gut.
erzäh'len, erzähl'te, erzählt' (haben), to tell, relate.

hof'fen, hoff'te, gehofft' (haben), to hope.

Ian'fen, lief, gelaufen (fein), to run.
wün'fden, wünfch'te, gewünfcht'
(haben), to wish, with a complementary infinitive and zn.
bran'fen, outside, out (of doors), with words denoting rest.

oft, often.

260.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Wir hoffen, daß es draußen nicht zu kalt sein werde; wir wünschen durch den Wald zu laufen. 2. Unsere Freunde sagen, sie hätten sich oft amüsiert, als wir um das Feuer saßen und Geschichten erzählten. 3. Er sagt, er habe nicht so viel Geld, wie er wünscht, aber er hofft, noch etwas zu bekommen. 4. Der Knabe sagte, daß er oft draußen im Walde gewesen sei. 5. Er hoffte, daß seine Mutter nicht krank gewesen wäre. 6. Ich hatte geglaubt, daß er Geld genug gehabt hätte, um das Haus zu kaufen.
- (b) "Er amüsiert sich hier nicht sehr gut. Er sagt, daß bas Keuer zu heiß sei."
- "Ich hoffe, daß es besser werden werde. Man sagt, daß es braußen sehr kalt sei."
 - "Ja, und er hat mir erzählt, daß er keinen warmen Rock habe."
 - "Das tut mir leid, denn er wünscht, durch den Wald zu laufen."
 - "Ja, er hat felbst gesagt, es sei ihm draußen zu kalt."
- (c) 1. We had a good time when we sat around the fire and told stories. 2. When they were running through the wood, they said it was getting warm. 3. The boys often wished to have a good time out in the woods. 4. He thought that he

had the right book. 5. I hope that you had money enough, and that you were not sick. 6. The children told that they were in the woods, but that they had no fire.

(d) A Story. — I wish to tell you a little story. pened out in the wood. Two boys went into the wood to have a good time. But the little one said that he was too tired. Then the other said that the little one was not tired, but that he was not warm enough. He said it was getting cold, and he made a fire in the wood. When the little one said that it was warm, the two boys ran home. But they had not had a good time.

LESSON LVII.

The Subjunctive. Weak and Strong Verbs.

Unser Dater in dem himmel. Dein Name werde geheiliget. Dein Reich tomme. Dein Wille geschehe auf Erden, wie im Bimmel. Unser täglich Brot gib uns heute. Und vergib uns unsere Schulden, wie wir unfern Schuldigern vergeben. Und führe uns nicht in Dersuchung, sondern erlöse uns von dem Übel. Denn Dein ift das Reich und die Kraft und die Herrlichkeit in Emigkeit. Umen. - Svangelium S. Matthäi, vi. 9-13.

261. Subjunctive of loben, a Weak Verb.

PRESENT.		Past.				
(daß) ich lobe (daß) du lobest (daß) er lobe	(baß) wir loben (baß) ihr lobet (baß) fie loben	(baß) ich lobte (baß) du lobtest (baß) er lobte	(baß) wir lobten (baß) ihr lobtet (baß) fie lobten			

FUTURE.

- (daß) ich loben werde (daß) du loben werdeft
- (daß) er loben werbe, etc.

PERFECT.

- (baß) ich gelobt habe (daß) du gelobt habeft
- (baß) er gelobt habe, etc.

Past .	Perfect.	Future	PERFECT.
(daß) ich gelobi	t hätte	(daß) ich gelobt h	aben werde
(daß) du gelobi	hättest	(daß) du gelobt h	aben werdest
(daß) er gelobt	hätte, etc.	(daß) er gelobt he	iben werbe, etc.
262.	Subjunctive of Sel	hen, a Strong Verl	1 .
	SENT.	,	
		Pa	•
	(daß) wir sehen		
	(daß) ihr fehet		(daß) ihr fähet
(daß) er sehe	(daß) fie fehen	(daß) er fähe	(daß) fie fähen
Fur	URE.	PER	FECT.
(daß) ich fehen	werde	(daß) ich gefehen	habe
(daß) du fehen	werdeft	(daß) du gefehen	habeft
(daß) er sehen	werde, etc.	(daß) er gesehen	habe, etc.
PAST	PERFECT.	FUTURE I	PERFECT.
(daß) ich gefehe	en hätte	(daß) ich gefehen	haben werde
(daß) du gefehe	en hätteft	(daß) bu gefehen	haben werdeft
(daß) er gefehe	n hätte, etc.	(daß) er gesehen	haben werde, etc.
263. Subj	unctive of gehen, a	a Strong Intransit	ive Verb.
Pre	SENT.	. Ра	ST.
(daß) ich gehe		(daß) ich ginge	
(daß) du geheft	:	(daß) du gingest	
(daß) er gehe,	etc.	(daß) er ginge, e	etc.
Fut	URE.	Perf	ECT.
(daß) ich gehen	werbe	(daß) ich gegang	en sei
(daß) du gehen	werdeft	(daß) bu gegang	en feiest
(daß) er gehen	werbe, etc.	(daß) er gegange	u fei, etc.
PAST	Perfect.	FUTURE :	Perfect.
(daß) ich gegan	igen wäre	(daß) ich gegang	eu fein werbe
(daß) du gegau	igen wärest	(daß) du gegaug	en sein werdest
(daß) er gegau	gen wäre, etc.	(daß) er gegange	n sein werde, etc.

264. The Conditional is formed by prefixing the forms of mirbe to the present and perfect infinitives. Its use is exactly like that of the English with should and would.

PRESENT.

I should praise. ich würde loben ' du würdeft loben er würde loben, etc. PERFECT.

I should have praised. ich würde gelobt baben dn würdeft gelobt haben er würde gelobt haben, etc.

265. The Potential Subjunctive, as in English, expresses a possibility or a contingency. It is like the conclusion of a condition, and is usually translated by should or would. use of tenses is like the English.

> Er hätte anders getan. He would have done otherwise. Es ware faum möglich. It would scarcely be possible. Das ginge nicht is gut. That would not go so well.

- (a) The conditional and the potential subjunctive are interchangeable. The conditional might be used in all the above cases. Er mürbe anders getan haben. Es würbe faum möglich fein. Das murbe nicht fo gut geben.
- 266. The Optative Subjunctive is used to denote a wish. As in English, the verb precedes the subject, unless the wish is introduced by bak. The use of tenses is also like the English. Mur or both is often used to strengthen the wish.

Bare ich nur zu Hause! Were I only at home! Ach, daß ich doch mehr Geld hätte! Oh, that I had more money! Gingen wir nur jeden Tag ins Theater! Would that we went to the theatre every day!

(a) The Hortative Subjunctive is the present tense of the subjunctive used in the first and third persons for the imperative.

> Loben wir. Let'us praise. Dein Bille geschehe. Thy will be done.

Seien fie fleißig. Let them be industrious.

267.

Vocabulary.

der Pfeffer, pepper.
der Zu'der, sugar.
die Portion', die Portionen (t like

1), portion, helping (of food),
followed by a noun in apposition
(§ 113).
die Trep'de, die Treppen, stairway;

die Treppe hinauf, upstairs (mo-

tion); die Treppe hinab or hinunter, downstairs (motion). das Salz, salt. dur'ftig, thirsty. hun'grig, hungry. v'ben, upstairs (rest), aloft. un'ten, downstairs (rest), below. ach! oh & ah !

268.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Ich bin so hungrig und durstig; ach, daß ich noch eine Portion Fleisch hätte! 2. Diese Suppe wäre besser ohne so viel Pfesser und Salz. 3. Ich weiß, daß er unten ist; ich habe ihn die Treppe hinunter gehen sehen. 4. Ich äße meine Suppe unten, aber ich gehe nicht gern die Treppe hinab. 5. Würden Sie Pfesser und Salz mit einer Portion Suppe essen? 6. Ich würde die Treppe hinauf gehen, um oben noch etwas Zucker zu bekommen.
- (b) "Wäre ich nur nicht so hungrig und durstig! Ich würde Ihnen meine Portion Suppe geben."

"Aber ich würde sie nicht essen; ich habe eben unten eine große Portion Fleisch mit viel Pfeffer und Salz gegessen."

"So? Unten? Ich habe Sie nicht die Treppe hinunter gehen sehen, ober ich wäre mit Ihnen gegangen."

"Das hätte mich sehr gefreut. Aber hier oben neben dem Feuer ist es schön und warm."

(c) (Write should and would in two ways.) 1. Oh, that I had a little soup! 2. I am so hungry and thirsty; I would eat a portion without pepper and salt. 3. Why did you go upstairs? Don't you like to eat downstairs? 4. Oh, that

you had spoken to them when they were upstairs! 5. It would have been colder downstairs in the garden than upstairs in my room. 6. We should have succeeded, but it happened otherwise.

(d) A Letter. — Dear Charles: I thought that you were happy (gliidflid) in your new school. It would have been hard to stay in those other classes. You would have had too many German exercises to write. The lessons would have been longer and the sentences harder. Oh that I were with you and had lessons with (bei) your teacher!

Your friend, John.

LESSON LVIII.

Subjunctive of Modals. Conditions of Fact.

Wenn es dir übel geht, Nimm es für gut nur immer! Wenn du es übel nimmst, So geht es dir noch schlimmer. — Rückert.

269. Subjunctive of Modals. — The modal auxiliaries form the subjunctive regularly.

Present.	Past.	Future.
(daß) ich dürfe	dürfte	dürfen werde
(daß) ich tonne	fönnte	fönnen werde
(daß) ich möge	möchte	mögen werde
(daß) ich müsse	müßte	müffen werde
(baß) ich folle	follte	follen werde
(daß) ich wolle	wollte	wollen werde

Perfect.	Past Perfect.	Future Perfect.
(daß) ich gedurft habe	gedurft hätte	gedurft haben werde
(daß) ich gekonnt habe	gekouut hätte	gekount haben werde
(daß) ich gewocht habe	gemocht hätte	gemocht haben werde
(daß) ich gemußt habe	gemußt hätte	gemußt haben werde
(daß) ich gefollt habe	gefollt hätte	gefollt haben werde
(daß) ich gewollt habe	gewollt hätte	gewollt haben werde

Note. Sollen and wollen do not modify the vowel in the past subjunctive; it is like the indicative. The future perfect is rare.

(a) The perfect and past perfect are conjugated as follows with a dependent infinitive. Note the position of haben.

Perfect.	Past Perfect.
(baß) ich habe gehen dürfen	(daß) ich hätte gehen dürfen
(daß) du habest gehen können	(daß) du hättest gehen können
(daß) er habe gehen mögen	(daß) er hätte gehen mögen
(daß) wir haben gehen müffen	(daß) wir hätten gehen müssen
(daß) ihr habet gehen follen	(daß) ihr hättet gehen follen
(baß) fie haben gehen wollen	(daß) fie hätten gehen wollen

270. Conditions of Fact. — German conditions correspond very closely to English. As in English, if the premise of a conditional sentence assumes something as an actual fact, both clauses are in the indicative.

Wenn er fommt, wirst du dich frenen. If he comes, you will be glad. Wenn es regnet, werden wir zu Hause bleiben. If it rains, we shall stay at home.

271. Use and Omission of Wenn. — The condition is usually introduced by wenn, if. As in English either clause may precede. Also, as in English, the verb stands first when wenn is omitted. So (compare English then) often sums up the condition and introduces the conclusion.

Wenn Sie mein Freund find, (so) werden Sie das tun. If you are my friend, (then) you will do that.

Sie werden das tun, wenn Sie mein Frennd find. You will do that, if you are my friend.

(a) Contrary to English usage, German may omit wenn in a condition of fact.

Sind Sie mein Freund, so werden Sie das tun. If you are my friend, (then) you will do that.

272.

Vocabulary.

der Sad, die Säde, sack, bag. der Zug, die Züge, train. die Hil'fe, help.

bie Ta'sche, die Taschen, pocket, used generally with the article instead of a possessive adjective.

Das Gold, gold.

Das Gil'ber, silver.

fte'den, ftedte, geftedt (haben), to stick, put.

ż

273.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Wenn Sie das Golb und das Silber in die Tasche steden, so brauche ich Ihnen nicht zu helsen.

 2. Ist der Sack zu groß zu halten, so muß ich um Hilse bitten.

 3. Wenn Sie mir nicht helsen, den Sack mit dem Gold in dem Zuge zu suchen, so stede ich das Silber in die Tasche.

 4. Haben Sie mein Gold in den Sack mein Gold in den Sack gesteckt, so kann ich nichts kun.

 5. Wenn wir hier bleiben, so werden wir den Zug sehen müssen.

 6. Wenn wir das Silber suchen, so werden wir es sinden können, wenn nies mand es in die Tasche gesteckt hat.
- (b) "Wenn Sie mir nicht helfen, so kann ich diese langen Sätze nicht schreiben."

"Wenn Sie die Sätze ohne Hilfe schreiben, so dürfen Sie nach Hause gehen."

"Aber wenn ich die Wörter nicht verstehe, muß ich die ganze Aufgabe überseten?"

- "Nein, sie dürfen Hilfe haben, wenn Sie nicht verstehen."
- "Heute nachmittag stecke ich mein Buch in die Tasche, um zu Hause zu lernen."
- (c) (When the condition precedes, write it with and without menn, and use so in the conclusion.) 1. If you help me, I shall be able to put all this gold and silver in that bag. 2. If he asks for help, my brother will help him. 3. If you get up early, you will hear the trains. 4. I will not help him, if he wants to put that gold in his pocket and that silver in a sack. 5. If you want to translate that long story, perhaps the teacher will help you. 6. If you put that silver in your (bie) pocket, it won't contain anything else.
- (d) "If you give us such a long exercise, we shall not be able to write it."
- "If you do not write all the sentences, you will have to stay in school the whole afternoon."
- "But if we do not know the words, must we write all the sentences?"
 - "If you do not know the words, you must look them up."
 - "If the exercise is very hard, will you help us?"
- "If you put your grammar in your pocket and take it home, you will be able to translate the sentences without help."

Über den Bergen.

über den Bergen, weit zu wandern, Sagen die Leute, wohnt das Glück, Ach, und ich ging im Schwarme der andern, Kam mit verweinten Augen zurück. Über den Bergen, weit, weit drüben, Sagen die Leute, wohnt das Glück.—Carl Busse.

LESSON LIX.

Conditions Contrary to Fact.

Wenn mancher Mann wüßte, Wer mancher Mann wär', Cät' mancher Mann manchem Mann Manchmal mehr Chr'. — Sprichwort.

- 274. Conditions Contrary to Fact. The subjunctive is used in the condition and conclusion of contrary-to-fact conditions. As in English, the conclusion may be in the conditional. The use of tenses corresponds to the English.
- Hätte ich Zeit, or wenn ich Zeit hätte, täte ich es gern, or würde ich es gern tun. If I had time, I should gladly do it (present).
- In time, or ich würde kommen, wenn ich könnte. I should come, if I could (present).
- Ich hätte es getan, or würde es getan haben, wenn ich Zeit gehabt hätte. I should have done it, if I had had time (past).
- Er hätte es gern getan, or würde es gern getan haben, wenn er mein Freund gewesen wäre. He would have been glad to do it, if he had been my friend (past).
- (a) The contrary-to-fact subjunctive is also used after als (ob) and als (wenn). When ob or wenn is omitted, the clause is inverted and the personal part of the verb stands first.
- Er spricht, als ob er viel Geld hätte, or als hätte er viel Geld. He speaks as if he had much money.
- Er fieht aus, als ob er trant ware, or als ware er trant. He looks as if he were sick.
- 275. Difference between German and English Conditions. There are two chief differences between English and German conditional sentences.

- (a) English never omits if or though in the expressions as if, as though, while German may omit menn or ob and invert.
- (b) English has only the form with would and should, both for the German regular subjunctive and for the conditional.

That would not go so well. Das ginge nicht fo gut, or das würde nicht fo gut gehen.

It would scarcely be possible. Es ware faum möglich, or es würde faum möglich fein.

276. Use of Modals.—The German modals occur frequently in conclusions contrary to fact, with or without the condition expressed. The English expressions ought to have (gone), could have (gone), and so on, are then translated in German by the past perfect subjunctive of the modals, not by the conditional. In the dependent order the personal auxiliary (hätte) precedes the two infinitives (§ 181).

I should have been permitted to go.
Du hättest gehen können. You would have been able to go.
Er hätte gehen mögen. He would have liked to go.
Wir hätten gehen müssen. We should have been obliged to go.
Ihr hättet gehen sollen. You ought to have gone.
Eie hätten gehen wollen. They would have wanted to go.

(a) The expression, He ought to have done it, or should have in the meaning of ought to have, is Er hätte es tun sollen, because it was not done, and so is contrary to fact. On the other hand, He must have done it, is Er muß es getan haben, because it was done, and so is a fact.

Note. English could may be indicative or subjunctive. He could (was able to) do it yesterday, but he can't to-day, is a present fact, and so is indicative: Er founte es tun. He could (would be able to) do it, if he had time, is contrary to fact in the present, and so is subjunctive: Er founte es tun.

There is the same difference in referring to past time. He could (was able to) have done it, for he had time, is a past fact, and so is indicative: Er founte es getan haben. He could (would be able to) have done it, if he had had time, is contrary to fact in past time, and so is past perfect subjunctive: Er hätte es tun fönnen.

In the above cases the difficulty is not with the German, but with the defective English modal, which has but a single form for two meanings which in German are expressed by two different forms. Pupils should learn to analyze the exact English meaning.

(b) Should like and would like are always forms of monte (past subjunctive).

Would you like to go? Möchten Sie gehen? Yes, I should. Sa, ich möchte.

277.

Vocabulary.

der Fa'den, die Fäden, thread, string.

der Anspf, die Anöpfe, dutton.
die Hand, die Händel, hand.
die Rabel, die Radeln, needle.
ans'fehen, sah ans, ansgesehen
(haben), er sieht ans, to look, appear.

nä'hen, nähte, genäht (haben), to sew.
tra'gen, trug, getragen (haben), er trägt, to carry; to wear (in speaking of clothes).
straig, adj., strong; adv., hard.
gera'de, adj., straight; adv., just, exactly.

278.

Exercise.

(a) 1. Er sieht aus, als wäre er nicht starf genug, um all biese Bücher in der Hand zu tragen. 2. Wir hätten gerade zur rechten Zeit kommen können, wenn wir nicht hätten warten mitsen. 3. Sie muß den Knopf genäht haben, denn ich hatte keinen Faden und keine Nadel. 4. Ich möchte heute nachmittag in die Stadt gehen, aber ich darf nicht. 5. Sie sah aus, als wäre sie gerade stark genug, um ihre kleine Schwester nach

Haufe zu tragen. 6. Möchten Sie diesen Rock tragen, nachdem die Knöpfe mit starkem Faden genäht worden sind?

- (b) "Sie hätten den Knopf mit stärkerem Faden und einer besseren Radel nähen sollen."
- "Ja, das hätte ich tun können, wenn ich den Anzug hätte tragen wollen."
- "Aber möchten Sie ihn nicht tragen? Sie würden darin sehr gut aussehen."
- "Sie hätten mich sehen sollen, als ich das letzte Mal ihn trug. Er sah nicht sehr schön aus."
- "So? Wenn er nicht schön aussieht, so möchte ich ihn nicht tragen."
- (c) 1. Would you like a needle and some strong thread to sew those buttons? 2. He would have looked better, if he had worn better clothes. 3. You ought not to have carried those hot plates in your hand; they might have hurt you. 4. The little boy must have been just strong enough to carry those bags to the train. 5. I should like to sew those buttons with your needle and [your] thread, if I hadn't hurt my hand. 6. She looked as if she couldn't carry all those things.
- (d) "You look as if you were tired. Would you like to stop working and play?"
- "I should like to play, but I must sew these buttons with this needle and some strong thread."
- "You ought to have done that this morning; you must have had time enough."
- "I could have done it, if my brother had not come. I know that I ought to have done it."
 - "I think that you could have done it if you had wanted."
 - "Yes, that is true, but now I should like to stop."

LESSON LX.

Review.

Liegt dir Gestern klar und offen, Wirkst du heute kräftig frei, Kannst auch auf ein Morgen hoffen, Das nicht minder glücklich sei. — Goethe.

279.

Review Questions.

- (a) 1. Give the rules for forming the different tenses of the subjunctive.
 2. Name the four chief uses of the subjunctive.
 3. Which use differs most widely from the English?
 4. Give in detail the rules for this use, and illustrate each by two examples.
 5. Name and illustrate the subjunctives whose use is just like the English.
- (b) 1. How is the conditional formed? 2. Give the rules for conditions. 3. Are conditional sentences always in the subjunctive or conditional? Illustrate. 4. How do German conditional sentences differ from English? 5. Give the rule for the use of the past perfect subjunctive of the modals. Illustrate fully.

280. Review Exercise.

(a) 1. Die Schüler sagten, daß die Geschichte zu lang sei; sie hoffen, daß wir eine kürzere erzählen.

2. Glauben Sie, daß es zu kalt sein werde, um uns draußen im Walde zu amüssieren?

3. Ach, daß ich noch eine Portion Suppe hätte!

Dann würde ich nicht so hungrig sein.

4. Wären wir nur zu Hause!

5. Wenn es oben zu kalt ist, warum gehen Sie nicht

bie Treppe hinunter und bleiben Sie unten? 6. Hat er das Silber in die Tasche gesteckt, so werden wir ihm nicht helsen.
7. Wären Sie früher gekommen, so hätte ich nicht anderthalb Stunden auf Sie warten müssen.
8. Der Schüler hätte seine Aufgabe gestern schreiben sollen; er hätte es tun können.
9. Ich möchte jetzt in die Stadt gehen; möchten Sie nicht mit mir kommen?
10. Er muß es getan haben, aber ich möchte wissen, wie er es tat.

- (b) 1. Oh that there were more pepper and salt in this soup! 2. These boys would write their sentences, if they only had time. 3. If you go downstairs, I shall remain upstairs. 4. If that girl has put all those things in her pocket, we shan't give her anything. 5. If you had wanted to do this, you ought to have told me so (e8). 6. He must have tried for an hour to spell that word, but he couldn't have spelled it right. 7. I should like to read those German stories; would you like to help me translate them? must have worked for half an hour; we couldn't have done it 9. You ought to have come home earlier; in less time. your mother would have liked to see you. 10. If the pupils could have translated those long sentences, they wouldn't have had to stay in school the whole afternoon.
- (c) A Letter. Dear Mother: You ought to have seen us yesterday. I should like to tell you what we did. We wanted to read a German story, but no one could translate it. I could have helped, if I hadn't wanted to go home. We must have worked a whole hour before we finally succeeded in reading it.

Your [you] loving son,

Charles.

Wenn.

Ja, hatte mir von Anbeginn So manches nicht gefehlt, Und hätt' ich nur mit anderm Sinn Den andern Beg erwählt, Und hätt' ich auf dem rechten Pfad Die rechte Silf' empfahn, Und so statt dessen, was ich tat, Das Gegenteil getan, Und hätt' ich vieles nicht gemußt Auf höheres Geheiß, Und nur die Sälft' vorher gewußt Von dem, was heut' ich weiß, Und hätt' ich ernftlich nur gewollt, Ja, wollt' ich nur noch jett, Und wäre mir das Glück so hold Wie manchem, ber's nicht schätt, Und hätt' ich zehnmal soviel Geld, Und könnt', was ich nicht kann, Und fam' noch einmal auf die Welt -Ja, bann!

— Lubwig Fulba.

LESSON LXI.

Genitive and Dative Cases.

Gleich	ſei	f einer	dem	anderen,	доф	gleich	ſei	jeder	dem	Höchsten.	
				-						— Goethe	:.

- 281. The Genitive Case. Besides its use as possessive (Lesson VII.) and with certain reflexive verbs (§ 243), the genitive is also used (a) to denote indefinite time and (b) with certain prepositions.
- (a) In contrast with the accusative of definite time (Lesson XXII.), the genitive is used (1) with the indefinite article to express indefinite time; (2) with the definite article to denote regularly recurring time.
 - (1) Gines Tages, one day. Gines Abends, one evening.
 - (2) Des Abends, in the evening (regularly), every evening. Des Morgens, every morning, mornings.
- (b) The genitive is used with mährend, during, and many other prepositions, most of which may be translated into English by a phrase with of (instead of, in spite of, in the midst of, etc.). The most familiar are: anftatt, außerhalb, innerhalb, diesseits, jenseits, inmitten, trog, mährend, and wegen.

Bährend des Monats, during the month. Inmitten seiner Freunde, in the midst of his friends. Trop des Wetters, in spite of the weather.

282. The Dative Case. — Besides its use as indirect object (Lesson VIII.) and with prepositions (Lessons XVI. and XVIII.) the dative is also used (a) with a few adjectives and (b) with certain verbs.

(a) The dative is used with many adjectives, most of which are followed by to in English. Unlike English usage, the dative usually precedes the adjective in German.

Er ift mir lieb. He is dear to me.

Das war uns fremd. That was strange to us.

Das Buch ift dem anderen ähnlich. The book is like (to) the other.

Das Wetter ift mir angenehm. The weather is agreeable to me.

(b) The following verbs which take the dative have already been given: banken, einfallen, gefallen, gehören, gelingen, gesichehen, glauben, helfen. Besides these the commonest are begegnen, bienen, brohen, folgen, gehorchen, passen, schmeicheln.

Wir sind ihm begegnet. We met him. Das past mir nicht. That doesn't suit me.

283.

Vocabulary.

begeg'nen, begegnete, begegnet (fein), with the dative, to meet (by chance).

fol'gen, folgte, gefolgt (fein), with the dative, to follow.

paf'sen, paste, gepast (haben), with the dative, to fit; to suit.

ähn'sid, preceded by the dative, similar (to), like, resembling.

an'genehm, preceded by the dative, agreeable (to), pleasant (to).

fremb, preceded by the dative, strange (to), a stranger.

anftatt', prep. with genitive, instead of.

au'scrhalb, prep. with genitive, outside of.

bies'feits, prep. with genitive, this side of.

trot, prep. with genitive, in spite of.

wäh'rend, prep. with genitive, during.

we'gen, prep. with genitive, sometimes following its object, on account of, because of.

284.

Exercise.

(a) 1. Trot des Wetters wartete er außerhalb der Stadt bies= seits des breiten Feldes. 2. Eines angenehmen Abends sind wir dem langen Wege diesseits des Waldes gefolgt. 3. Es war uns angenehm, uns während der Stunde zu amüsieren, aber es paßte dem Lehrer nicht. 4. Wegen des Hundes paßte es dem Manne, während des Nachmittags außerhalb des Gartens zu bleiben. 5. Trot der Sonne gingen wir eines Tages nach einem breiten Felde außerhalb der Stadt. 6. Anstatt eines Buches, das mir fremd ist, sollten Sie mir ein anderes geben.

- (b) "Eines Tages bin ich einem Manne begegnet, der Ihrem Bruder fehr ähnlich aussah."
 - "Haben Sie mit ihm gefprochen?"
- "Nein, Ihr Bruder ist mir fremd. Trot seines Aussehens paßte es mir nicht, ihm zu folgen und mit ihm zu sprechen."
 - "Es würe meinem Bruder fehr angenehm gewesen."
- "Aber wir waren außerhalb ber Stadt diesseits des großen Feldes, und ich glaubte, es könnte jemand anders sein."
- (c) 1. This side of the big field outside the city, we met two strange men, and we followed them during the whole afternoon. 2. It was very agreeable to the girl that the hat fitted her so well. 3. Because of my sick mother I went home early in spite of the weather. 4. She is like her father instead of her mother. 5. If her clothes fitted her better, she would look like her sister, because of her beautiful hair. 6. In spite of your work you ought to have come.
 - (d) "Shall we follow the way this side of the wood?"
 - "That suits me; it will be very agreeable to me."
 - "Outside the city perhaps we shall meet some friends."
- "During the afternoon we must meet some friends and some who are strange(rs) to us."
- "In spite of all those exercises that I ought to have written yesterday, I should like to go, because of the beautiful weather."

LESSON LXII.

Verbals.

Da ich die Herde trieb auf unsern Höhen Da war ich glücklich wie im Paradies. — Schiller.

285. Verbals in -ing. — When an English verbal in -ing is in a participial phrase of time or cause, it is rendered in German, not by a participle, but by a clause. This clause is generally introduced by als, when, ba, as, indem, at the moment when, as, or mährend, while. Thus these participial phrases must be mentally changed to clauses before translating.

Seeing him, she waited. Da sie ihn sah, wartete sie.

While playing, I got tired. Bährend ich spielte, wurde ich müde.

Coming home, he found a letter. Als er nach Hause kam, sand er einen Brief.

286. Modified Verbals. — When the English verbal is modified by a possessive, German uses a clause with $ba\beta$, instead of the infinitive with au. Compare § 204, d.

He came without seeing me. Er kam, ohne mich zu sehen.

He came without my seeing him. Er kam, ohne daß ich ihn sah.
Instead of going, he came home. Austatt zu gehen, kam er nach Hause.

Instead of my taking the book, you must. Austatt daß ich das Buch nehme, mußt du es.

287.

Vocabulary.

der Fluß, die Flüsse, river.
der Ne'gen, rain.
die Bost, die Bosten, postossee,
post; auf die Bost, to the postossee.

bas U'fer, die Ufer, shore, bank. bas Thea'ter, die Theater, theatre; ins Theater, to the theatre. das Ronzert', die Konzerte, concert; ins Konzert, to the concert an'fommen, fam an, an'gefommen (fein), to arrive, usually followed by in or an with the dative. bas Billett', bie Billet'te (pronounced bilyet'), ticket. gleich, adv., at once, immediately.

288.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Während sie im Regen nach Hause liesen, kamen sie am Ufer des Flusses an.

 2. Da er spät im Theater ankam, hat er keine Billette bekommen können.

 3. Anstatt daß ich auf die Post gehe, werden Sie gleich hingehen müssen.

 4. Während wir am Ufer des Flusses spielten, sahen wir den Zug, der eben angekommen war.

 5. Da sie ihr Billett hatte, ging sie gleich ins Konzert, ohne mich zu sehen.

 6. Da er das Kind im Flusse sah, ging er gleich, um Hilse zu hosen.
- (b) "Ohne daß ich etwas bavon wußte, hat mein Bruder zwei Billette zum Konzert gefauft."

"Und anstatt mit Ihnen ins Konzert zu gehen, ift er ohne Sie gegangen?"

"Nein, er hat mir ein Billett gegeben, aber indem ich ins Konszert ankam, erinnerte ich mich, daß ich es vergessen hatte."

"Was haben Sie getan?"

- "Ich habe nach Hause geben muffen. Meine Schwester ist mit meinem Billett im Konzert angekommen, ohne daß ich sie sah."
- (c) 1. Having bought our tickets to the theatre, we shall go at once. 2. While going to the postoffice, I saw many women coming from the concert. 3. Arriving at the shore of the river, he saw the boys at once, without their seeing him.

 4. Instead of our going to the theatre with those tickets, you ought to go yourself. 5. While playing in the rain at the shore of the river, my little sister hurt her foot. 6. Arriving in the theatre late, we bought our tickets at once without anybody's seeing us.

- (d) "I am glad that you have arrived. Shall we go to the theatre at once without waiting for (auf) the others?"
- "Perhaps, instead of our waiting here, they think that we will wait outside."
- "I have the tickets here. They could not have arrived without our seeing them."
- "No. Coming through the door there they would have had to see us."
 - "There they are. I am glad that they have finally arrived."

LESSON LXIII.

Word Order. Review,

Der herr ist mein hirte; mir wird nichts mangeln. Er weidet mich auf einer grünen Aue und führet mich zum frischen Wasser; er erquicket meine Seele; er führet mich auf rechter Straße um seines Namens willen. Und ob ich schon wanderte im sinstern Tal, fürchte ich kein Unglück; denn Du bist bei mir; Dein Stecken und Stab trösten mich. Du bereitest vor mir einen Tisch gegen meine feinde. Du salbest mein haupt mit Öl und schenkest mir voll ein. Gutes und Barmherzigkeit werden mir solgen mein Leben lang, und ich werde bleiben im Hause des herrn immerdar. — Der 23. Psalm Davids.

- **289.** Word Order.—(a) Review Inverted Order, § 99; in questions, § 3; in the formal imperative, §§ 69 and 200; in the main clause, § 170, a; in conditions, § 271; after als, § 274, a; the omission of es in, § 250, b.
- (b) Review Dependent Order, § 170; with relatives, § 167; in indirect questions, § 173; with subordinating conjunctions, § 178; δαβ, § 182; the modals in, §§ 181 and 276.

- (c) Review Normal Order; position of nicht, § 23; of nicht, § 121; of a single adverb, § 125; of objects, § 94; of the object of an adjective, § 282, a; of possessive genitive, § 40; of indirect object, § 45; of past participle, § 60; of participle as adjective, § 206, a; of infinitives, §§ 50, 192, and 205; of yu with separable prefixes, § 189, d; of yu with modals, § 137, b; of "two infinitives," § 141; of separable prefixes, § 189; after coördinating conjunctions, § 177.
- 290. General Rule for Word Order.—In general, the more emphatic parts of a German sentence come nearest the end. Thus, if whom is emphasized when the question is asked: To whom did you give your book? then in the answer, to the teacher is the emphatic part, and German does not follow the rule in § 94, c, but says 3th habe mein Buth bem Lehrer gegeben.
- (a) In independent clauses the personal part of the verb (the auxiliary in compound tenses) is the second element in the sentence, except that particles (aber, jeboth, etc.) may precede it.

But I won't do it. Ich, aber, tue es nicht. Still I will do it to-morrow. Worgen, jedoch, tue ich es.

- (b) Adverbs and adverbial phrases stand: (1) time, (2) place, (3) manner.
- Wir haben ihn heute überall fleißig gesucht. We have hunted for him to-day diligently everywhere.
- Die Kinder spielen heute draußen im Sonnenschein. The children are playing to-day out of doors in the sunshine.
- (1) Adverbs of time usually precede objects, except pronouns.
- I bought him a coat yesterday. Er wird Thuen bald das Buch geben. He will soon give you the book.

- (2) In main clauses adverbs must never be placed between subject and verb.
 - Inever go to the city.
 - (3) A phrase follows a single word.

Wir gingen gestern in die Stadt. We went into the city yesterday.

291.

Vocabulary.

ber Schnee, snow.

die Kir'che, die Kirchen, church.

das Blatt, die Blätter, leaf.

recht haben, hatte, gehabt (haben),

to be right, used of persons.

un'recht haben, hatte, gehabt

(haben), to be wrong, used of

persons.

fich fürch'ten, fürchtete fich, fich ge-

fürchtet (haben), to be afraid, of, vor with dative.
3n'machen, machte zu', zu'gemacht (haben), to shut; close.
ent'weder . . . vder, either . . . or.
we'der . . . noch, neither . . . nor.
einerlei', of one and the same kind;
das ift mir einerlei', that's all
one to me, I don't care.

292.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Wenn Sie übersetzen, müssen Sie entweder recht oder unrecht haben. 2. Ich fürchte mich weder vor dem Schnee noch vor dem Regen. 3. Es hat gestern überall stark (hard) geregnet; die Blätter der Bäume neben der Kirche sind ganz naß. 4. Er hatte unrecht, aber es war ihm ganz einerlei; er wollte weder lesen noch übersetzen. 5. Ich habe recht und Sie haben unrecht; machen Sie Ihr Buch zu, und sagen Sie die Geschichte auf deutsch her! 6. Es ist mir ganz einerlei, daß meine Schuhe naß sind; ich sürchte mich weder vor dem Wasser noch vor dem Schnee.
- (b) "Bitte, machen Sie die Bücher zu! Wir wollen entweder lefen oder übersetzen."

"Die Blätzer meines Buches sind zerrissen; ich kann weber lefen noch übersetzen."

"Das ist mir einerlei. Sie hätten entweder die Aufgabe aus einer anderen Grammatif lernen oder eine neue kaufen sollen."

"Sie haben recht, aber ich fürchtete mich vor meinem Bater, wenn ich ihm sagte, daß mein Buch zerrissen sei."

"Das tut mir leib, aber Sie müffen die Sätze lernen."

- (c) 1. My shoes are wet, but I don't care; I'm not afraid of the snow. 2. You will either have to write this exercise with closed books or go home. 3. That little boy goes neither to (in bie) church nor to school. 4. You were right and I was wrong; these leaves are quite wet. 5. We are not afraid of them; they are neither so big nor so strong as we. 6. Those younger pupils are wrong every time they translate, but the teacher is always right.
- (d) "I don't like this weather. It either rains or snows the whole time."
- "No, you are wrong; yesterday it neither rained nor snowed."
 - "I don't care; it was very wet and we couldn't play ball."
 - "Are you afraid of the rain?"
- "No, but it is not very agreeable when either the ball or our shoes get wet."
 - "Yes, that's true. Perhaps it will be better to-morrow."

Das Glück.

Das Glück, bas immer vor mir schwand, Das ich verfolgte sonder Ruh', — Erreicht nun hab' ich's und erkannt : Das Glück — bist du.

LESSON LXIV.

Idiomatic Particles. Denn, Doch, Ja, Roch, Schon, Wohl.

(This Lesson may be omitted at the discretion of the teacher or postponed till later in the course.)

> Mir wird von alle dem so dumm, Als ging' mir ein Mühlrad im Kopf herum. — Goethe.

- 293. Idiomatic Particles. The use of the German expletives benn, both, ja, noth, jthon, and wohl is important. It constitutes one of the chief differences between idiomatic German and German that is merely grammatically correct. Of course no pupil is expected to speak idiomatic German after but one year's study, but many may wish to try.
- (a) The chief difficulty arises from the impossibility of translating these particles directly into English. Good illustration of this is found in the already and yet of Germans who have but partly mastered English. They know already and yet are English for ithou and both, so they translate them with disastrous results.
- (b) The use of these expletives can be learned only by hearing, studying, and memorizing good, idiomatic German. As it is largely a question of feeling, no set of rules will suffice, but the following hints may help.
- 294. Denn may be used in almost every spoken German question. It adds an almost imperceptible note of surprise or curiosity. It is not translated in English.

Was ift denn das? What is that?
Was ift denn los? What's the matter?

295. 3a.—Besides its regular meaning of yes in answering affirmative questions, ja is used to strengthen an imperative. Here it is emphasized and may be translated by all means.

In' cs ja. Do it by all means!

(a) It adds a tone of assurance or surprise to any sentence. Here it is not emphasized and may usually be translated by why at the beginning.

Das ift ja schon. Why, that is fine. Er sagte ja nichts. Why, he didn't say anything.

- 296. Doch has three uses besides that of adversative conjunction, yet. They are like the corresponding uses of ja, but there is always a suggestion of but or yet about them.
 - (a) It means yes in answering negative sentences.

Have you no money? Doch. Yes (but I have). Du wirst heute wohl nicht kommen. You won't come to-day, will you? Doch. Yes (oh, but I shall).

(b) It means but in strengthening a negative and pray or do (emphatic) in strengthening an imperative. It may also be translated in the first case (with the negative) by repeating the subject and auxiliary as a question.

Er fagte doch nichts. But he didn't say anything.

Du kommst doch nicht heute? You aren't coming to-day, are you?
Rommen Sie doch. Pray come, or do come.

Sete dich doch. Pray be seated, or do sit down.

(c) It adds a note of surprise to an affirmative sentence. Here it is stronger than ja, and may be translated by why or some stronger exclamation.

Das ift doch schön. My, but that is fine!

Du hast doch einen langen Rock. Why, what a long coat you have! or well, you have a long coat!

297. Note is used (besides its regular meaning of still, more, yet) whenever the idea of yet or more enters into an English sentence. It is not expressed in English.

Wer fouft noch? Who else?

Solde Blumen habe ich noch nie gefehen. I never saw such flowers.

298. Somm is used whenever the idea of already or of all right enters into an English sentence.

Ich bin schon da gewesen. Ive been there.

Da fommt er schon. There he comes (now).

I'll be able to do it, all right.

299. With is used whenever the *idea* of probability enters an English sentence. It may be translated *perhaps*, *probably*, *I think*, or by any phrase showing lack of certainty.

Gr ift wohl trant. He is sick, I think.

Du wirst hente wohl nicht kommen. You (probably) won't come to-day, will you?

(a) Wohl is generally not English well, except sometimes in speaking of health.

Das haft du gut getan. You did that well.

Das haft du wohl getan. You did that, didn't you? You probably did that.

- (b) Well in English is gut for the regular abverb; nun for the exclamation.
 - Run, das haft du gut getau! Well, you did that well!

300.

moment.

Vocabulary.

der Kö'nig, die Könige, king. der Soldat', des Solda'ten, die Solda'ten, soldier. der Au'genblick, die Au'genblicke,

das Dorf, die Dörfer, village.
erlau'ben, erlaub'te, erlaubt' (haben), to allow, with dative.
erwar'ten, erwar'tete, erwar'tet
(haben), to expect, await.

entschul'digen, entschul'digte, entschul'digt (haben), to excuse. spazie'ren gehen, ging spazie'ren, spazie'ren gegangen (sein), to go walking, or for a walk.

faum, hardly, scarcely.
hen'te (mor'gen, etc.) ü'ber acht
Ta'ge, a week from to-day, etc.
vor, with dative, ago; vor zwei
Jahren, two years ago.

301.

Exercise.

- (a) 1. Entschulbigen Sie mich boch! Ich habe ja nichts getan.

 2. Der König wird ben Solbaten wohl kaum erlauben, daß sie heute über acht Tage spazieren gehen.

 3. Bor zwei Wochen war ich schon in diesem kleinen Dorse.

 4. Tun Sie es ja! Es ift wohl erlaubt; Sie brauchen sich boch nicht zu entschulbigen.

 5. Morgen über acht Tage werbe ich die Sätze schon übersetzen können.

 6. Sie erlauben doch nicht, daß der Soldat mit Ihnen spazieren geht!

 Doch!
- (b) "Entschuldigen Sie mich doch! Ich hatte kaum erwartet, Sie hier zu sehen."

"Bor zwei Stunden wollte ich durch das Dorf spazieren gehen, aber ich konnte nicht."

"Erlauben Sie doch, daß ich mit Ihnen gehe!"

"Rommen Sie ja! Es wird jeden Augenblick schöner."

"Wir müssen boch nicht zu weit gehen."

(c) (Use as many particles as you can.) 1. Do excuse me! Why, you would [probably] hardly expect me to [that I] go walking in the village with a soldier! 2. Why, the king won't allow that, will he? 3. He never [yet] has allowed it, but we expect [already] every moment that he will (tut). 4. Why, that is beautiful! You wouldn't have expected it, would you? 5. Pray give me some more water in this cup of tea; it is [still] much too strong. 6. A week from to-day you will [probably already] have time enough to go for a walk.

- (d) "Why, I hadn't expected [it] to find you here! Do allow me to go walking with you."
- "No, I can't (nicht boch)! Why, I have hardly a moment. My brother has probably arrived already."
- "Pray excuse me! I did not know that you were expecting your brother."
- "I know [it]. Another time I shall probably have more time."
 - "Good! A week from to-day I shall try it again."

LESSON LXV.

Review.

Ende gut, alles gut. — Sprichwort.

302.

Review Questions.

- (a) 1. What kind of prepositions govern the genitive?
 2. Name the commonest ones.
 3. Give three other important uses of the genitive, and illustrate each.
 4. Distinguish between the German ways of telling definite, indefinite, and recurring time. Illustrate each.
- (b) 1. Give the rules for the four chief uses of the dative case. 2. Name ten verbs that govern the dative. 3. What kind of adjectives take the dative in German? 4. What should be done to English verbals before they are translated into German? 5. Distinguish between modified verbals and similar unmodified uses. 6. Illustrate both uses by original sentences.

- (c) Give the rule for the use of dependent order. What exception occurs? 2. Give the three main rules for inverted order. Illustrate each. 3. In what order do adverbs stand? 4. Do adverbs sometimes come between subject and predicate, as in English? If so, when?
- (d) 1. Give the position of the separable prefix in all tenses for the normal order, and in the present and imperfect for the dependent order. 2. Where do the infinitive and participle stand? 3. Give and illustrate all the rules for position of objects. 4. What general rule covers almost all cases of normal word order? 5. Prove it from the illustrations you have given.

303. Review Exercise.

- (a) 1. Anstatt eines Mannes, der mir fremd ist, hätten Sie mir einen zeigen sollen, der meinem Bruder ähnlich ist. 2. Nachbem sie den Männern begegnet sind, sind die Kinder ihnen während des ganzen Nachmittags gefolgt. 3. Als er ankam, ging er in das Haus, ohne daß jemand etwas hörte. 4. Anstatt daß sie die Billette zum Theater kauft, wird ihr Bruder es tun. 5. Es hat gestern überall stark geregnet, aber es ist mir ganz einerlei. 6. Wo gehen Sie denn hin? 7. Es ist doch noch nicht Zeit, ins Konzert zu gehen. 8. Ich war schon da. So viele Damen habe ich noch nie gesehen. 9. Entschuldigen Sie mich doch! Sie werden mir wohl erlauben, mit Karl spazieren zu gehen. 10. Karl kommt schon, aber die anderen kommen wohl später, weil es noch nicht Zeit ist.
- (b) 1. Because of its difficulty, that other book does not suit this class. 2. In spite of the rain we have followed those women during the last two hours. 3. Coming home late,

he tried to open a window without anybody's hearing him.

4. Seeing him arrive, we all stopped singing at once.

5. Instead of my buying the tickets, you ought to have done it yourself.

6. She could neither write nor translate the sentences; she was wrong every time.

7. Why, I am not afraid of long sentences; they are all the same to me.

8. Haven't you translated [yet]? Well, you will probably have to read later.

9. You don't want to go yet, do you? Oh yes, I do.

10. I have never [yet] seen a king, but my brother has probably [already] seen several.

304. LIST OF STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

The principal parts are in full-faced type. The second and third persons singular of the present indicative are given when the vowel differs from that of the infinitive; also when the connecting vowel e is required in verbs whose stem ends in b, t, β , β , β . The second person singular of the imperative is given when it has the short form without e, or vowelchange i; also when the e is optional. A dash indicates regular forms. Compound verbs are given only when the simple verb has passed from use, e, g, befehren, gebären. Cognates are in small capitals.

Infinitive	Pres. Ind. 2nd and 3d per. sing.	nperative d per. sing.	Past ind.	subj.	Past Part.
Baden, 1 BAKE	bädft, bädt,		but	bûte	gebaden
Befehlen, command	bestehlst, bestehlt	befteț[befahl	befähle beföhle	befohlen
Befleißen, apply (refl.)	befleißeft, befleißt.	befleiß(e)	befliß	befliffe	befliffen
Beginnen, BEGIN	-		begann	begänne begönne	begonnen
Beifen, BITE	beißest, beißt	beiß(e)	biğ	biffe	gebiffen
Bellen,2 bark	biust, biut	bia	boll	bölle	gebollen
Bergen, hide,	birgft, birgt	birg	barg	bärge bürge	geborgen
Berften,1 BURST,	birstest, birst	birst	barft borft	bärfte börfte	geborften
Bewegen,3 induce			bewog	bewöge	bewogen
Biegen, bend			bog	böge	gebogen
Bieten, offer			bot	böte	geboten
Binden, BIND	binbeft, binbet		banb	bänbe	gebunben
Bitten, beg	bitteft, bittet		bat	bäte	gebeten
Blafen, blow	blafeft, blaft		blies	bliefe	geblafen
Bleiben, remain			blieb	bliebe	geblieben
Bleichen,4 BLEACH		—	blich	blice	geblichen
Braten,5 roast	brätft, brät		briet	briet e	gebraten
Brechen, BREAK	brichft, bricht	brich	brach	bräche	gebrochen
Brennen, BURN			brannte	brennte	gebrannt
Bringen, BRING			brachte	brächte	gebracht

¹ Often weak, except in the past part.

² Generally weak.

^{*} Weak, except in figurative sense.

⁴ Weak when transitive and sometimes when intransitive.

⁵ Sometimes weak, except in the past par.

Infinitive	Pres. Ind. 2nd and 3d per. sing.	Imperative 2nd per. sing	Pa. ind.	st subj.	Past Part.
Denten, THINK			bachte	bächte	gebacht
Dingen, 1 hire, bargain			(bung bang	bünge)	gebungen
Dreiden, THEESH	brifcheft, brifcht	brijd	braja brojaj	bräjde bröjde	gebroschen
Dringen, urge			brang	bränge	gebrungen
Dünken, THINK		<u> </u>	(banchte	bäuchte	gebäucht)
Dürfen, be allowed	barf, barfft, barf, bürfen	(wanting)	durfte	bürfte	geburft
Empfehlen, recommen	d empfiehlft, ems pfiehlt	empfiehl	empfahl	empfähle empföhle	empfohlen
Effen, BAT	iffest, ift	iß	aß	äße	gegeffen
Fahen, archaic for fan	gen				
Fahren, go, fare	fährft, fä hrt	fahr(e)	fuhr	führe	gefahren
Fallen, FALL	fäuft, fäut		fiel	fiele	gefallen
Falten,2 FOLD	faltest, faltet				gefalten
Fangen, catch	fängft, fängt		fing (fieng	finge fienge)	gefangen
Fecten, Fight	ficteft,8 ficts	fict 3	focht	föchte	gefochten
Finden, FIND	findest, findet		fanb	fänbe	gefunben
Flechten, twins	flichft,8 flicht 8	flicht *	flocht	flöchte	geflochten
Fliegen, FLY			flog	flöge	geflogen
Fliehen, FLEE			floh	flöhe	gefloben
Fliegen, flow			floß	flöffe	geftoffen
Fragen, ask	frägft, frägt		frug	früge	gefragt 4
Fressen, EAT (of animals)	friffest, frißt	friß	fraß	fräße	gefreffen
Frieren, FREEZE			fror	fröre	gefroren
Gå(h)ren, ferment			gohr ⁵	göbre	gegohren "
Gebären, BEAR			gebar	gebäre	geboren
Geben, give	giebft, giebt gibft, gibt		gab	gäbe	gegeben
Gebeihen, thrive		_	gebieb	gebiehe	gebiehen
Gehen, Go			ging	ginge	gegangen
Gelingen, succeed	_		gelang	gelänge	gelungen
Gelten, be worth	giltft, gilt		galt	gälte gölte	gegolten
Genesen, recover	genefeft, geneft		genas	genäse	genefen

¹ Often weak.

² Entirely weak, except in the past part.
3 The weak forms also occur.
5 Also weak, except in the past part.
5 Also weak, except in the past part.

⁴ Always weak, and the other forms are

⁵ Also weak, especially in figurative sense.

Infinitive		mperative d per. sing.	Pas ind.	t subj.	Past Part.
Genießen, enjoy	por. smg.		genoß	genöffe	genoffen
Geichen, happen	gefdiebft, gefdiebt	(wanting)	•	geschäbe	geichehen
Gewinnen, WIN			Bemunn	gewänne gewönne	Bemannen
Gießen, pour			goğ	göffe	gegoffen
Sicimen, resemble			alidi	gliche	geglichen
Gleißen, GLITTER	gleißeft, gleißt		(gliß	gliffe	gegliffen)
Gleiten, GLIDE	gleiteft, gleitet		glitt	glitte	geglitten
Glimmen, GLEAM			glomm	alömme	geglommen
Graben, dig	gräbft, gräbt		grub	grübe	gegraben
Greifen, GRIPE, grasp			ariff	griffe ·	gegriffen
Saben, HAVE	haft, hat		hatte	bätte	gehabt
halten, HOLD	haltft, halt	halt(e)	hielt	bielte	gehalten
Hangen, Hang	bangft, bangt 8		hing	hinge	gehangen
Sauen, HEW			hieb	hiebe	gehauen
Heben, raise			hob hub	böbe bübe	gehoben
Beigen, call	beißeft, beißt		hieß	hieße	geheißen
Selfen, HELP	hilfft, hilft	hilf	half	hälfe hülfe	geholfen
Reifen,4 chide			tiff	tiffe	getiffen
Rennen, Know			fannte	tennte	gefannt
Riefen, see Rüren					-
Alieben, CLEAVE, split		_	Mob	tlöbe	gefloben
Rlimmen,2 CLIMB		_	flomm	flömme	geflommen
Rlingen, sound			Mang	fläng	getlungen
Aneifen,5 pinch			Iniff	Iniffe	getniffen
Aneipen, pinch			(Inipp	fnippe	gefnippen)
Rommen, COME		tomm(e)	fam	täme	getommen
Rönnen, CAN	tann, tannst, tann tonnen	, (wanting)	founte	fönnte	gefount
Areifchen,4 scream	treischeft, treischt		tris á	trijce	getrifchen
Ariechen, creep			trod	fröche	getrochen
Rüren, choose		—	for	före	geforen
Laben, LOAD, invite	lädft, lädt		Ind	lübe	gelaben

¹ Usually weak when transitive.

^{*} Weak forms sometimes occur.

³ hangft, hangt also occur. Do not confuse with the weak hängen.

⁴ Usually weak.

⁵ Sometimes weak.

⁶ Also weak. Two verbs are confounded in this one, viz., laben, LOAD, once always strong, and laben, invite, once always weak.

Infinitive		Imperative nd per. sing.	Past ind.	subj.	Past Part.
Laffen, LET	läffeft, läßt,	ľaĝ(e)	ließ	ließe	gelaffen
Laufen, run	[äufft, [äuft		lief	liefe	gelaufep
Leiben, suffer	leibeft, leibet		litt	litte	gelitten
Leihen, LEND	<u> </u>		lieh	liehe	geliehen
Lefen, read	liefeft, lieft	lies	las	läfe	gelefen
Liegen, LIE		_	lag	läge	gelegen
Löfchen,1 go out	lischeft, lischt	[ifo	lofdj	lbfфе	geloschen
Lügen, tell a LIE		_	log	löge	gelogen
Mahlen,2 grind		_		—	gemahlen
Meiben, shun	meibeft, meibet		mieb	miebe	gemieben
Melten,8 MILK	miltft, miltt	milt	molf	mölte	gemolten
Meffen, measure	miffeft, mißt	miß	maß	mäße	gemeffen
Miglingen, fail			mißlang	mißlänge	mißlungen
Mögen, MAY	mag, magft, mag mögen	, (wanting)	mochte	möchte	gemocht
Müffen, Must	muß, mußt, muß, muffen	, (wanting)	mußte	müßte	gemußt
Rehmen, take	nimmst, nimmt	nimm	nahm	nähme	genommen
Rennen, NAME			nannte	nennte	genannt
Pfeifen, whistle	_	 .	₩î ff	pfiffe	gepfiffen
Pflegen,4 cherish	. —	_	pflog	pflöge	gepflogen
Preisen,5 PRAISE	preifest, preift		pries	priese	gepriesen
Quellen,6 gush	quiast, quiat	quiA	qnoU	quölle	gequollen
Rächen, avenge			(rod)	röche)	gerochen
Raten, advise	rätft, rät	_	riet	riete	geraten
Reiben, rub			rieb	riebe	gerieben
Reißen, tear	reißest, reißt	reiß(e)	riß	riffe	geriffen
Reiten RIDE	reiteft, reitet	—	ritt	ritte	geritten
Rennen, RUN		•	rannte	rennte	gerannt
Riechen, smell			rodj	röche	gerochen
Mingen, WRING, wrestle			rang	ränge	gerungen
Rinnen, RUN			rann	ränne rönne	geronnen
Rufen, call			rief	riefe	gerufen
Salzen, 7 SALT	falzest, falzt				gefalzen
Sanfen, drink	fäufst, fäuft	fauf(e)	foff	föffe	gefoffen

¹ When transitive, quench, weak.2 Usually weak, except in the past part.

⁸ Usually weak.

⁴ Also entirely weak.

⁵ Sometimes weak.

⁶ When transitive, soak, weak.

⁷ Only the past part, is strong.

Infinitive		perative per. sing.	Past ind.	subj.	Past Part.
Caugen, suck		—	fog	föge	gefogen
Schaffen,1 create			fcuf	fфüfe	gejchaffen
Schallen,2 sound			icholl	fcölle	geschollen
Scheiben, part	fceibest, scheibet		fcieb ·	fciebe	geschieben
Scheinen, appear			fchien .	fciene	geschienen
Schelten, scold	foiltft, foilt	foilt .	ſфalt	føälte jøölte	gejcholten
Scheren,3 SHEAR	fcierft, fciert	foier .	(d)or	jøöre	gejøoren
Schieben, shove		—	(d)ob	ſфöbe	geschoben
Schießen, shoot			(d)of	φöffe	geschoffen
Schinden, flay	fcinbest, schindet		fcunb2	fhünde	geschunden
Schlafen, SLEEP	folafft, folaft	folaf(e)	fcflief	ſфliefe	geschlafen
Schlagen, strike	folägft, folägt		jolug	folüge	gejálagen
Schleichen, sneak			fáliá	ſфliфe	geschlichen
Schleifen,4 whet			foliff	foliffe	geschliffen
Schleiften, BLIT	foleißeft, foleißt	-	folig	fostiffe	geschliffen
Schliefen, slip		—	fáloff	fфlöffe	geschloffen
Schließen, shut		-	fájloğ	fo löffe	geschloffen
Schlingen, SLING			fchlang	foldinge .	geschlungen
Someigen, suite	fomeißest, fomeißt	schmeiß(e)	fcmiß	fomisse	geschmiffen
Somelzen,5 melt	fomilgeft, fomilgt	jómilz	fámolz	fcmölze	geschmolzen
Chnanben,6 snort	-		schnob	fcnöbe	geschnoben
Soneiben, cut	foneibeft, foneibet		Schnitt	fonitte	geschnitten
Schranben, screw			schrob	fdröbe	geschroben
Schreden, be afraid	járiáft, járiát	føri d	fcrat	forate	geichroden
Schreiben, write			fcrieb	fdriebe	gefdrieben
Schreien, cry	_	fcrei(e)	járie	foriee	geidrieen
Schreiten, stride	foreitest, foreitet		schritt	scritte	geschritten
Edroten,8 rough-grind	schrotest, schrotet				geschroten
Schwären, suppurate	jowierft, jowiert	fcwier	shwor	fc wöre	geschworen
Schweigen, be silent			schwieg	fcwiege	geschwiegen
Schwellen,5 SWELL	sowiust, sowiut	fówi l	souch	fc wälle	geschwollen
Schwimmen, swim			fcwamm	foivämme foivömme	gefcwommer

¹ In other senses weak.

² Also entirely weak.

⁸ Sometimes weak.

⁴ Weak in other senses, raze, drag.

⁵ Weak when transitive,

Also weak; schnieben occurs instead of schnauben.

⁷ Also weak.

Only the past part, is strong.

					•
Infinitive		mperative d per. sing.	Pa ind.	st subj.	Past Part,
Schwinben, vanish	fowinbest, fowinb	et	schwand	fowanbe fowunbe	gefcwunden
Chwingen, swing		-	jáwang	fcwänge fcwünge	gefchwunger
Schwören, swear			jownt jownt	dwöre dwüre	geschworen
Sehen, sex	flehft, fleht	fleb(e)	fah	fähe	gejehen
Sein, be	bin, bift, ift, 2c.	fei	war	wäre	gewefen
Senden, SEND	fenbeft, fenbet		faubte jenbete	fenbete	gefanbt gefenbet
Gieben, 1 SEETHE	fledest, sledet		føtt	fötte	gefotten
Singen, SING			fang	fänge	gefungen
Sinten, BINK			fant	fänte	gefunten
Sinnen, think	-		fann	fänne fönne	gesonnen
Sițen, sit	fişeft, fişt	—	faß	fäße	gefeffen
Collen, should	foll, follft, foll, foller	t (wanting)	follte	follte	gefollt
Spalten,2 split	spaltest, spaltet		<u> </u>		gefpalten
Speien, spew			ípie	fpice	gefpieen
Spinnen, spin			[pann	fpänne fpönne	gefponnen
Spleiften, SPLIT	fpleißest, spleißt		ípliğ	[pliffe	gespliffen
Sprechen, speak	fprickt, sprickt	fpric	(prac)	fpräce	gesprocen
Sprießen, sprout			fprof	fpröffe	gesproffen
Springen, spring			fprang	fpränge	gefprungen
Stechen, prick	fticft, ftict	ftiф	ftath	ſtäфe	gestochen
Steden, stick			ftat	ftäte	(geftoden)
Stehen, STAND		fteh(e)	ftanb ftunb	stänbe stünbe	gestanden
Stehlen, STEAL	piehlst, stiehlt	ftiehl	ftahl	ftähle ftöhle	gestohlen
Steigen, ascend		-	ftieg	ftiege	geftiegen
Sterben, die	ftirbst, stirbt	ftirb	ftarb	ftärbe ftürbe	gestorben
Stieben, disperse			ftob	ftöbe	gestoben
Stinten, STINK			ftant	ftänke	gestunten
Stoßen, push	ftößeft, ftößt	ftof(e)	ftieß	ftieße	geftoßen
Streichen, STROKE			ftri đ	firice	gestrichen

¹ Also weak.

² Only the past part. is strong.

³ Always weak when transitive; sometimes when intransitive.

Infinitive		mperative l per. sing.	Pas ind.	st subj.	Past Part.
Streiten, strive	ftreiteft, ftreitet .		ftritt	ftritte	geftritten
Tragen, carry	trägft, trägt		trug	trüge	getragen
Treffen, hit	triffft, trifft	triff	traf	träfe	getroffen
Treiben, DRIVE			trieb	triebe	getrieben
Treten, TREAD	trittft, tritt	tritt	trat	träte	getreten
Triefen,1 DRIP			troff	tröffe	getroffen
Trinten, DRINK			trauf	tränfe tränfe	getrunten
Triigen, deceive			trog	tröge	getrogen
Tim, do '		tu(e)	tat	täte	getan
Berberben,2 spoil	verbirbst, verbirbt	verbirb	verbarb	verbärbe verbürbe	verborben
Berbrichen, vox			verbroß	verbröffe	verbroffen
Bergeffen, FORGET	vergissest, vergist	vergiß	vergaß	vergäffe	vergeffen
Berlieren, LOSE			verlor	verlöre	verloren
Bachsen , grow	wächsest, wächt		wuchs	wüchse	gewachfen
Bågen, WEIGH			mog	wöge	gewogen
Bajden , Wash	wäschest, wäscht		wusch	wüsche	gewaschen
Beben, B WEAVE		_	wob	wöbe	gewoben
Beichen,4 yield			wich	wiche	gewichen
Beifen, show	weisest, weist		wies	wiese	gewiesen
Benben, turn	wenbest, wenbet		wandte wendete	wenbete	gewandt gewendet
Berben, sue	wirbst, wirbt	wirb	warb	wärbe würbe	geworben
Berben, become	wirst, wirb	werbe	warbe	würbe	gewor ben
Berfen, throw	wirfft, wirft	wirf	warf	wärfe würfe	geworfen
Biegen, WEIGH			mog	wöge	gewogen
Winden, WIND	winbeft, winbet		wand	wänbe	gewunden
Wiffen, know	weiß, weißt weiß, wiffen	wiffe	wußte	wüßte	gewußt
Bollen, WILL	will, willft will, wollen	wolle	wollte	wollte	gewollt
Beihen, accuse	-		zieh	ziehe	geziehen
Bieben, draw			gog	abge	gezogen
Zwingen, force			4wang	zwänge	gezwungen

¹ Sometimes weak.

² Weak when transitive.

³ Also weak, especially in the sense of move, hover.

⁴ Weak in the sense of soften.

⁵ Bagen and wiegen are really identical.

Biegen, rock, is always weak.

SUMMARY OF INFLECTIONS

305. The Definite Article and "ber" Words. Typical Endings.

(a) Der, the: Definite Article.

Singular.				Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
Nom.	d er	d ie	b as	d ie
Gen.	b es	d er	þ eð	b er
Dat.	b em	b er	d em	d en
Acc.	b en	d ie	b as	d ie

(b) Dieser, this: Demonstrative Adjective or Pronoun.

		Singular.	•	Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
Nom.	dief er	dief e	bief es (bies)	dief e
Gen.	dief es	dief er	dies es	dief er
Dat.	dief em	dief er	bief em	dief en
Acc.	dief en	bief e	dief es (bies)	dief e

(c) Like biefer are declined jeber, every, jener, that, mancher, many (a), folder, such (a), and the interrogative welcher, which. These are called "ber" words, as they have endings similar to ber. These are the typical strong endings as distinguished from the typical weak endings.

(d) Typical Strong Endings: (e) Typical Weak Endings:

	Å	Singul	ar.	Plural.	S	lingul	ır.	Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.	Masc.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
Nom.	er	e	¢Ø	e	e	e	e	en
Gen.	¢\$	er	ۯ	er	en	en	en	en
Dat.	em	er	em	en	en	en	en	en
Acc.	en	e	es	e	en	ŧ	e	en

306. The Indefinite Article and "cin" words.

(a) Ein, a: Indefinite Article.

		Singular.		Plural wanting.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
Nom.	ein	eine	ein	
Gen.	eine\$	einer	eines	
Dat.	einem	einer	einem	
Acc.	einen	eine	ein	

(b) Mein, my: Possessive Adjective.

		${m Plural}.$		
•	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
Nom.	mein	meine	mein	meine
Gen.	meines	meiner	meines	meiner
Dat.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen
Acc.	meinen	meine	mein	meine

- (c) Like mein are declined the possessives bein, your, sein, his, its, ihr, her, their, unser, our, Ihr, your, euer, your, and the negative sein, no, not a.
 - (d) Euer and unfer may contract by dropping the e either of the stem or of the ending.

	Singular.			Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc.	ener eures or eners eurem or enerm euren or enern	eurer eurer eurer	ener enres or eners enrem or enerm ener	enre enrer euren or enern eure

Note that:

- 1. The nominative and accusative forms are always alike, except in the masculine singular.
- 2. The genitive singular masculine and neuter are alike, as are also the dative singular masculine and neuter.
 - 3. The dative plural always ends in n.

- 4. There are only two typical weak endings, e and en. The e is found throughout the nominative singular and in the accusative singular feminine and neuter; the en is found in all other cases.
- 5. The endings for the indefinite article and "cin" words closely resemble those for the "ber" words, except in the nominative singular masculine and neuter and the accusative singular neuter.

307.

Adjective Declension.

- (a) Adjectives have three declensions: strong, weak and mixed.
- (b) In the strong declension an adjective has the typical strong endings, except that in the genitive singular masculine and neuter, the weak ending is preferred. The strong declension occurs when the adjective is not preceded by an article or a "ber" or an "ein" word.

(c) Strong Declension of Adjectives.

	Singular.			Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.	
Nom.	gut er	gut e	gut es	gut e	
Gen.	gut eu(es)	gut er	gut en(e8)	gut er	
Dat.	gut em	gnt er	gut em	gut en	
Acc.	gut en	gut e	gut es	gut e	

(d) In the weak declension an adjective has the typical weak endings. The weak declension occurs when the adjective is preceded by the definite article or a "ber" word.

(e) Weak Declension of Adjectives.

• •	Singular.			Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
Nom.	der gut e	die gut e	das gut e	bie guten
Gen.	bes gut en	der gut en	bes gut en	ber gut en
Dat.	bem gut en	ber gut en	bem gut en	ben gut en
Acc.	ben gut en	die gut e	das gut e	die gut en

(f) In the mixed declension the adjective takes the typical weak endings in all cases except the nominative singular masculine and the nominative and accusative singular neuter, which are strong. The mixed declension occurs when the adjective is preceded by the indefinite article or an "cin" word.

(g) Mixed Declension of Adjectives. Singular. Plural. MASC. FEM. NEUT. M. F. N. om. mein guter meine gute mein gutes meine guten

Nom. Gen. meines aut en meiner aut en meines aut en meiner aut en Dat. meinem aut en meiner gut en meinem gut en meinen gut en Acc. meinen gut en meine aut e mein gut es meine anten

Note. — While these are the three adjective declensions, the *endings* of an adjective can be only strong or weak. They are weak when preceded by the definite article or a "ber" word (but see § 309, b), or by an *inflected form* of the indefinite article or an "ein" word (that is, a form having a case-ending). They are strong when not so preceded.

Note that:

- 1. In the genitive singular masculine and neuter, the ending es of the noun sufficiently indicates the case, and, in order to avoid too many es sounds, the adjective takes the weak ending en.
- 2. When the "cin" word has no ending, the adjective must have one in order to show the case. If the "cin" word is inflected (has an ending) the adjective does not need to show the case, and so is weak.
- 3. Though there are three adjective declensions, there are only two kinds of endings for adjectives.

308. Noun Declension.

There are five classes of nouns, declined as follows:

(a) Masculine Nouns.

SINGULAR.

1st class.	ed class.	3d class.	4th class.	5th class.
N. der Bruber	r ber Hund	der Mann	der Anabe	der Staat
G. des Brude	rs des Hundes	des Mannes	des Anaben	des Staates
D. dem Brude	er dem Hunde	dem Manne	dem Anaben	dem Staate
A. ben Brude	er den Hund	den Mann	den Anaben	den Staat
		PLURAL.		
N. die Brüder	: die Hunde	die Männer	die Anaben	die Staaten
G. ber Brüde	r ber Hunde	der Männer	der Anaben	der Staaten
D. den Brüde	rn den Hunden	den Männern	den Anaben	den Staaten
A. die Brüber	r die Hunde	die Männer	die Anaben	die Staaten

(b) Feminine Nouns.

SINGULAR.

	1st class.	2d class.		4th class.
N.	die Tochter	die Bank		die Fran
G.	der Tochter	der Bank		der Frau
D.	ber Tochter	der Bank		der Fran
A.	die Tochter	die Bank		die Frau
			PLURAL.	
N.	die Töchter	die Bänke		die Frauen
G.	der Töchter	der Bänke		der Frauen
D.	ben Töchtern	den Bänken		den Frauen
A.	die Töchter	die Bänke		die Frauen

(c) Neuter Nouns.

SINGULAR.

	1st class.	2d class.	3d class.	5th class.
N.	bas Mäbchen	das Bferd	das Buch	das Auge
G.	bes Mäddens	bes Bferbes	des Buches	des Auges
D.	dem Madden	bem Bferb	bem Buche	bem Auge
A.	das Mädchen	das Pferd	das Buch	bas Auge
			PLURAL.	
N.	bie Mädchen	die Bferde	die Bücher	die Augen
G.	der Mädchen	der Pferde	ber Bücher	ber Angen
D.	ben Mädchen	ben Bferben	den Büchern	ben Augen
Α.	die Mähmen	die Rferde	hie Riider	die Angen

NOTE. — The first three classes are called the Strong Declension of Nouns; the fourth, Weak; the fifth, Mixed.

But feminines like bit Frau are sometimes grouped with the fifth class because they seem to resemble it more closely, in that they form the plural the same way, while they are declined in the singular like other feminines, just as fifth class neuters are declined in the singular like other neuters, and fifth class masculines are declined in the singular like other masculines (except the weak ones).

(d) A few nouns differ slightly from Class 1, seeming to drop the last letter in the nominative.

	Der Name(n), name.		Das Herz, heart.	
	SING.	Pro.	Sing.	Pro.
Nom.	ber Name(n)	die Namen	bas Herz	die Herzen
Gen.	bes Namens	der Namen	bes Herzens	ber Herzen
Dat.	dem Namen	ben Namen	bem Herzen	ben Herzen
Acc.	den Namen	die Namen	das Herz	die Herzen

(e) Other nouns declined like ber Name are:

der Friede(n), peace	der Haufe(n), heap
der Funte(n), spark	ber Same(n), seed
ber Gedanke(n), thought	ber Schade(n), injury
ber Glaube(n), faith	ber Wille(n), will

Note that:

- 1. Nouns of the first and third classes and feminines of the second class usually add umlaut in the plural when possible.
- 2. Nouns of the fourth and fifth classes add (e)n to form the plural and never add umlaut.
- 3. Except bie Mutter and bie Tochter all feminines form the plural (1) by adding (e)n, or (2) by adding e and taking umlaut.
- 4. Only monosyllabic feminines belong to the second class. So all feminines of more than one syllable, except bic Mutter and bie Tochter, are of the fourth class and form the plural without umlaut by adding (e)n.
 - 5. The dative plural always ends in n.

- 309. Declension of nouns with adjectives and "ber" and "cin" words.
- (a) Strong adjective without article; declined with typical strong endings. (See § 307, b.)

SINGULAR.

Nom.	guter Mann	gute Fran	gutes Rind
Gen.	guten Mannes	guter Fran	guten Rindes
Dat.	gutem Manne	guter Frau	gutem Rinbe
Acc.	guten Mann	gute Frau	gutes Rind

PLUBAL.

Nom.	gute Männer, Frauen, Rinder
Gen.	guter Männer, Franen, Rinder
Dat.	guten Männern, Frauen, Rinders
Acc.	gute Männer, Franen, Linder

(b) When manher, welther, folther are used without the ending (manth, welth, folth), the adjective following has the strong ending. (See § 307, g, Note.)

SINGULAR.

Nom.	manch guter Mann
Gen.	manch guten(es) Mannes
Dat.	manch gutem Manne
Acc.	mand anten Mann

(c) Weak adjective — after definite article or "ber" word; declined with typical weak endings.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	ber gute Mann	die gute Fran	das gute Rind
Gen.	des guten Mannes	der guten Fran	des guten Rindes
Dat.	dem guten Manne	der guten Frau	bem guten Rinde
Acc.	ben guten Mann	die gnte Fran	das gute Kind

PLURAL.

Nom. bie guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder Gen. ber gnten Männer, Frauen, Kinder Dat. ben gnten Männern, Frauen, Kindern Acc. bie guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder (d) Mixed adjective — after indefinite article or "ein" word; weak when the article is inflected, strong when the article is not inflected.

SINGULAR.

ein guter Mann	eine gute Fran	ein gutes Kind
eines guten Mannes	einer guten Fran	eines guten Kindes
einem guten Manne	einer guten Fran	einem guten Kinde
einen guten Maun	eine gute Fran	ein gutes Kind
	_	

PLURAL.

Nom.	feine gnten Männer, Frauen, Kinber
Gen.	feiner gnten Männer, Frauen, Rinber
Dat.	feinen guten Mänuern, Frauen, Kinbern
Acc.	feine guten Männer, Fraueu, Rinder

Note that:

If the article or "ber" word or "ein" word is omitted, or does not show the case (i.e. is not inflected), the case must be shown by the adjective, except in the genitive singular masculine and neuter, where the noun-ending shows the case and the adjective may be weak.

310.

Personal Pronouns.

ich, I; bu, thou; Sie, you; er, he; sie, she; es, it.

(a) First Person: Sing.

SECOND PERSON: SING.

SECOND PERSON: PLUR.

Nom.	ich, I	bu, thou, you beiner (bein), of thee	Sie, you
Gen.	meiner (mein), of me		Ihrer. of you
	mir, to or for me mid, me	bir, to or for thee bid, thee, you	Ihnen, to or for you Sie, you

	wir, we	ihr, you	Sie, you
	unser, of us uns, to or for us	ener, of you end, to or for you	Threr, of you Thnen, to or for you
Acc.	uns, us	ench, you	Sie, you

(c)

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	er, he, it	fie, she, it	es, it
Gen.	feiner (fein), of him, of it	ihrer, of her, of it	feiner (fein), of it
Dat.	ihm, to or for him or it	ihr, to or for her or it	ihm, to or for it
Acc.	ihu, him, it	fie, her, it	es, it

THIRD PERSON PLUBAL: M. F. N.

Nom. fie, they
Gen. ihrer, of them
Dat. ihnen, to or for them
Acc. fie, them

Note that:

- 1. The possessive pronoun is formed from the genitive case of the personal pronoun.
- 2. The polite form, Sie, is the third person plural written with a capital, and is the same for both singular and plural.
- 3. The forms feiner, ihr, ihrer, ihm, uns, euch and fie have more than one meaning. Give all the English equivalents of each.

311. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

(a) The relative ber, who, which, that.

	Singular.			Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
Nom.	ber	bie	ba8	bie
Gen.	beffen	. beren	beffen	beren
Dat.	bem	ber	bem	benen
Acc.	ben	die	bas	bie

(b) The relative welder, who, which, that.

		Singula r .		Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
Nom.	welcher	welche	welches	welche
Gen.	beffen	beren	beffen	beren
Dat.	welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen
Acc.	welchen	welche	welches	welche

(c) The interrogative and relative interrogative wer, who, was, what.

Singular (plural wanting).

MASC. AND FEM.

Nom.

wer

Gen.

weffen

Dat.

mem

Acc.

wen

Neut.

was

weffen

(d) The interrogative welcher is declined like "ber" words.

Note that:

- 1. The only differences between the forms of the relative, ber, and the article, ber, are in the genitive throughout and the dative plural.
- 2. The relative weither is wanting in the genitive and uses the genitive of the relative, ber.
- 3. The dative of the neuter interrogative, was, is wanting. It is usually expressed by wo(r) and a preposition: woru, worad, worad, etc.
- 4. The only differences in form between the relative, welcher, and the interrogative welcher, are in the genitive.

312. Demonstrative Pronouns.

- (a) The demonstratives are der, that; dieser, this; jener, that; solcher, such (a); derjenige, that, the one; derselbe, the same.
- (b) The demonstrative ber, that, is declined like the relative ber; biefer, jener, and solcher are "ber" words (§ 305, c). In berjenige and berselbe, the first part is declined like the definite article, the last part, weak.

•		Singular.		Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
Nom.	berjenige	biejenige	basjenige .	biejenigen
Gen.	besjenigen	berjenigen	besjenigen	berjenigen
Dat.	bemjenigen	berjenigen	demjenigen	benjenigen
Acc.	benjenigen	biejenige	basjenige	biejenigen

Note that:

- 1. The demonstrative, ber, differs in form from the article, ber, only in the genitive throughout and in the dative plural. It is declined just like the relative ber, from which it can be distinguished by the position of the verb following. The demonstrative does not change the order of the sentence; after the relative the verb is put at the end.
- 2. In the declension of berjenige and berjelbe, the second part is inflected just as if it were a separate weak adjective following the article, ber.

313. Indefinites and Reflexives.

- (a) Most indefinites and the reflexive sid for the third person (er, sie, es; sie) are indeclinable. The declinable ones are inflected thus:
- (b) The indefinites jemand, some one; niemand, no one; jestermann, every one; man, one, they.

Singular (plural wanting).

Nom.	jemand	niemaud	jebermanu	man
Gen.	jemand(e)\$	niemand(e)&	jedermanns	
Dat.	jemand(em or en)	niemand(em or en)	jebermann	einem
Acc.	jemand(en)	niemand(eu)	jedermann	einep

The reflexives:

Subject.	Reflexive.		
NOM.	DAT.	ACC.	
iá	mir	mich	
dú	dir	bich	
wir	uns	uns	
ihr	ench	euch	

(c) The indefinite mancher, many (a), is a "ber" word (§ 305, c).

Note that:

1. The reflexive pronouns (a) for the first and second persons singular have different forms for the dative and accusa-

tive; (b) for the first and second persons plural they have one form for both dative and accusative; (c) for the third person both singular and plural of all genders, there is only the one form, fith, for the dative and accusative.

2. Jemand and niemand are just alike in form and ending; jedermann has two n's and man only one.

314. Conjugation of the verb haben, to have.

Perf. Indic. (a) Pres. Indic. Pres. Subj. Perf. Subi. I have had, etc.1 I have, etc. I have, etc. I have had, etc. ich hab e gehabt ich habe ich hab e ich habe gehabt du hab eft gehabt du haft bn hab eft du haft gehabt er hat gehabt er hab e gehabt er hat er hab e wir hab en wir hab en wir haben gehabt wir hab en gehabt ibr bab t ihr hab et ihr hab et gehabt ihr hab et gehabt Sie hab en Sie hab en Sie hab en gehabt Sie hab en gehabt fie haben fie hab en fie hab en gehabt fie hab en gehabt (b) Past Indic. Past Subj. Plup. Indic. Plup. Subj. I had, etc. I had had I had had I had, etc. ich hatte ich hätt e ich hatt e gehabt ich hätte gehabt du hatt eft bu hätt eft du hatt eft gehabt du hätt eft gehabt er hatte gehabt er hatte er hätt e er hätte gehabt wir hatt en wir bätt en wir hatt en gehabt wir hätten gehabt ihr hatt et ihr hätt et ihr hattet gehabt ibr hätt et aehabt Sie hatt en Sie hätt en Sie hatt en gehabt Sie hätt en gehabt fie hätt en gehabt fie hatten fie hätt en fie hatt en gehabt

(c) Future Indicative.
 I shall have, etc.
 ich werd e haben
 bu wir st haben
 er wird haben

Future Subjunctive.
I should have, etc.
ich werde haben
bu werdest haben
er werde haben

Present Conditional.

I should have had
ich würd e haben
bu würd est haben
er würd e haben

¹ The translation of the subjunctive depends wholly upon the context and construction. The student must not think the translation here given is the only one for this mode. As the mode is used chiefly in subordinate clauses, it will be good practice for the student to conjugate the subjunctive with the compound tenses inverted: bag tog established, bag bu getablished, etc.

wir werd en haben ihr werd et haben Sie werd en haben sie werd en haben	wir werb en haben ihr werb et haben Sic werb en haben sie werb en haben	wir würb en haben ihr würb et haben Sie würb en haben fie würb en haben
(d) Fut. Perf. Indic.	Fut. Perf. Subj.	Perf. Conditional.
I shall have had, etc.	I should have had, etc.	I should have had, etc.
ich werd e gehabt haben bu wir ft — — er wirb — — wir werd en — — ihr werd et — — Gie werd en — — fie werd en — —	ich werb e gehabt haben bu werb est — — er werb e — — wir werb en — — ihr werb et — — Gie werb en — — fie werb en — —	ich würd e gehabt haben bu würd est — — er würd e — — ihr würd et — — Gie würd en — — fie würd en — —
(e) Imperative. Sing. habe (bn), Plur. hab t (ihr), haben Sie	have! Prese:	Participles. ST: habend, having cr: gehabt, had

Infinitives.

(zu) haben, to have gehabt (zu) haben, to have had

Note that:

- 1. The plural of the present subjunctive is just like the indicative, except that in the form ihr habet, the t of the ending is preceded by e. This is true for all verbs except sein and tun.
- 2. The past subjunctive always differs from the past indicative only in taking umlaut when possible.
- 3. All subjunctives are regular (except two forms in the present of sein). So when you have learned the subjunctive of haben, you have learned them all.
- 4. The present subjunctive is formed by dropping the n of the infinitive; the past by adding umlaut to the indicative;

the other tenses by using the subjunctive of the auxiliaries of tense.

5. The past and pluperfect subjunctive are often used for the present and perfect conditional respectively.

315. Conjugation of the verb sein, to be, and (as tense auxiliary for intransitives), to have.

(See Footnote, p. 217.)							
(a) Pres. India	. Pres. Subj.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Subj.				
I am, etc.	I am, etc.	I have been, etc.	I have been, etc.				
ich bin	ich fei	ich bin gewesen	ich sei gewesen				
du bift du fei eft		du bist gewesen	du fei est gewesen				
er ift	er fei	er ist gewesen	er sei gewesen				
wir sind	wir sei en	wir sind gewesen	wir sei en gewesen				
ihr feid	ihr sei et	ihr seid gewesen	ihr sei et gewesen				
Sie find	Sie sei en	Sie find gewesen	Sie fei en gewesen				
fie find	fie fei en	sie sind gewesen	ste sei en gewesen				
(b) Past Indic.	Past Subj.	Plup. Ind.	Plup. Subj.				
I was, etc.	I were, etc.	I had been, etc.	I had been, etc.				
ich war	ich wär e	ich war gewesen	ich wär e gewesen				
du war ft	du wär eft	du war st gewesen	du wär est gewesen				
er war	er wär e	er war gewesen	er mär e gewesen				
wir war en	wir wären	wir war en gewesen	wir wär en gewesen				
ihr war et	ihr wär et	ihr war et gewesen	ihr wär et gewesen				
Sie war en	Sie wär en	Sie war en gewesen	Sie wären gewesen				
sie war en	fie wär en	sie war en gewesen	sie wär en gewesen				
(c) Future Indicative. Future Subjunctive. Present Condition							
•		should be, etc.	I should be, etc.				
		werd e sein	ich würde sein				
		werd est sein	du würd est sein				
er wird sein er		werd e fein	er würd e sein				
wir werb en fein wi		r werd en sein	wir würd en sein				
.,		r werd et sein	ihr würd et sein				
		e werd en sein	Sie würden fein				
fie werd en sein fie		werd en sein	sie würd en sein				

(an) fein, to be

(d) Fut. Perf. Indic.		Fut. Perf. Subj.		Perf. Conditional.		
I shall have been, etc.		I should have been, etc.		I should have been, etc.		
ich werd e gewese du wir ft —	n fein	ich werd e gewesen bn werd est —	fein —	ich würd e gewe du würd est —		
er wird —		er werd e —	_	er würde —		
wir werd en —	_	wir werb en -	-	wir würd en -	_	
ihr werd et —	_	ihr werd et —		ihr würd et -	_	
Sie werb en —		Sie werd en —	_	Sie würd en -	_	
fie werd en -	_	fie werb en —	_	fie würd en -	_	
(e) Imperative.				Participles.		
Sing. fei (du), be!			PRESENT: fei eud, being			
PLUR. { feid (ihr) be ! { fei en Sie, be!				Perfect: gewesen, been		
·		Infinitives.				

316. Conjugation of the verb werben, to become (in the sense of come to be), and as auxiliary for the future tenses shall and will; also sign of the passive when used with the perfect participle. See § 318.

gewesen (zu) sein, to have been

(See Footnote, p. 217.)

(a) Pres. Indic. Pres. Subi. Perf. Indic. Perf. Subj. I have become, I become, etc. or I become, etc. or I have become, I shall, etc. I shall (will) etc. etc. etc. ich werb e ich werd e ich bin geworben ich sei geworden du wir ft du werd eft du bift geworden du fei eft geworden er wirb er werd e er ift geworden er fei geworden wir werd en wir werd en wir find geworden wir fei en geworben ihr werd et ihr werb et ihr feid geworben ihr seiet geworden Sie werb en Sie werb en Sie find geworden Sie fei en geworden fie werb en fie werben sie sind geworden fie fei en geworden (b) Past Indic. Past Subi. Plup. Indic. Plup. Subj. I became, etc. I had become, etc. I became, etc. I had become, etc. ich wurd e, warb ich würde ich war geworden ich wär e geworben bu wurd est, war st du würd est du war st geworden du wär est geworden er wurd e, ward er würd e er war geworden er wäre geworben

¹ This form, wirth, is used regularly for the auxiliary of the conditional mode, should, would. See any complete verb conjugation.

Sie wurden Sie würfte wurden fie würse.

(c) Future Indicative.

I shall become, etc.
ich werde werden

wir wurb en

ibr wurd et

wir würd en ihr würd et Sie würd en fle würd en wir war en geworben ihr war t geworben Sie war en geworben fie war en geworben

wir wären geworben ihr wär et geworben Sie wären geworben fie wär en geworben

(c) Future Indicative
I shall become, etc.
ich werd e werden
on wir st werden
er wird werden
wir werd en werden
ihr werd et werden
Sie werd en werden
sie werd en werden

Future Subjunctive.
I shall become, etc. ich werd e werden bu werd est werden er werd e werden wir werd en werden ihr werd et werden Sie werd en werden sie werd en werden

Present Conditional.

I should become, etc.
ich würb e werben
bu würb est werben
er würb e werben
wir würb en werben
ihr würb et werben
Sie würd en werben
sie würd en werben

(d) Fut. Perf. Indic.

I shall have become, etc. ich werde geworden sein du wir st geworden sein zr wird geworden sein wir werd ein geworden sein ihr werd et geworden sein Sie werden geworden sein sie werden geworden sein

Fut. Perf. Subj.

I should have become, etc. ich werd e geworden sein bu werd est geworden sein wir werd en geworden sein wir werd en geworden sein ihr werd et geworden sein Sie werd en geworden sein sie werd en geworden sein sie werd en geworden sein

Perfect Conditional.

I should have become, etc. ich würde geworden fein bu würd eft geworden fein er würde geworden fein wir würden geworden fein ihr würd et geworden fein Sie würd en geworden fein sie würd en geworden fein sie würd en geworden fein

(e) Imperative.

'Sing. werd e (du), become!

Pluk. werd et (ihr), become!
werd en Sie, become!

Participles.

PERFECT: geworden (worden), become PRESENT: werdend, becoming

Infinitives.

(3n) werben, to become

geworden (zu) fein, to have become

Note that:

- 1. The verb, merben, like all intransitives denoting change of condition or position, is conjugated with fein as auxiliary.
- 2. Werben has three distinct meanings: (1) will, as auxiliary for the future tense; (2) to become; and (3) to be, as auxiliary for the passive voice.
- 3. To mean will, it can be used only in the present, followed by an infinitive, or in the past subjunctive, murde, as conditional. The meaning become and the passive auxiliary may be used for all forms.
- 4. As sign of the future merben is followed always by the infinitive; as sign of the passive, always by the past participle; meaning to become, it is not followed by any verb form.

317. Conjugation of loben, to praise, a weak verb. ACTIVE VOICE.

(See Footnote, p. 217.)

(a) Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Perf. Ind.1	Perf. Subj.
I praise, etc.	I praise, etc.	I have praised, etc.	I have praised, etc.
ich lobe	ich lobe	ich habe gelobt	ich habe gelobt
du lobst	du lobeft	du hast gelobt	du habeft gelobt
er lobt	er lobe	er hat gelobt	er habe gelobt
wir loben	wir loben	wir haben gelobt	wir haben gelobt
ihr lobet	ihr lobet	ihr habt gelobt	ihr habet gelobt
Sie loben	Sie loben	Sie haben gelobt	Sie haben gelobt
fie loben	fie loben	fie haben gelobt	sie haben gelobt
(b) Past Ind.	Past Subj.	Plup. Indic.	Plup. Subj.
I praised, etc.	I praised, etc.	I had praised, etc.	I had praised, etc.
ich lobte	ich lobte	ich hatte gelobt	ich hätte gelobt
bu lobteft	du lobteft	du hatteft gelobt	du hätteft gelobt
er lobte	er lobte	er hatte gelobt	er hätte gelobt
wir lobten	wir lobten	wir hatten gelobt	wir hätten gelobt
ihr lobtet	ihr lobtet	ihr hattet gelobt	ihr hättet gelobt
Sie lobten	Sie lobten	Sie hatten gelobt	Sie hätten gelobt
sie lobten	fie lobten	sie hatten gelobt	sie hätten gelobt

¹ For the conjugation of an intransitive verb with fein as auxiliary, see merben, § 316.

	*		
(c) Future Indicative.	Future Subjunctive.	Present Conditional.	
I shall praise, etc.	I should praise, etc.	I should praise, etc.	
ich werde loben dn wirft loben er wird loben	ich werde loben du werdest loben er werde loben	ich würde loben du würdest loben er würde loben	
wir werben loben ihr werbet loben Sie werben loben fie werben loben	wir werben loben ihr werdet loben Sie werben loben fie werben loben	wir würben loben ihr würbet loben Sie würben loben fie würben loben	
(d) Fut. Perf. Indic.	Fut. Perf. Subj.	Perf. Conditional.	
I shall have praised, etc.	I should have praised, etc.	I should have praised, etc.	
ich werde gelobt haben du wirst — — er wird — —	ich werde gelobt haben du werdest — — er werde — —	ich würde gelobt haben du würdest — — er würde — —	
wir werden — — ihr werdet — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — —	wir werben — — ihr werbet — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — —	wir würden — — ihr würdet — — Sie würden — — sie würden — —	
(e) Imperative.	Participles.	Infinitives.	
Sing. lobe (du), praise! Plu. lobt (ihr), praise! loben Sie, praise!	Perf. gelobt, praised	(zu) loben, to praise gelobt (zu) haben, to have praised	
318.	PASSIVE VOICE.		
	(See Footnote, p. 217.))	
(a) Pres. Indic.	· Pres. Subj.		
I am praised, etc.	I am praised, etc.		
idi marka galaki	iá	merho colohi	

in werde gelodt du wirst gelobt er wird gelobt wir werden gelobt ihr werdet gelobt Sie werden gelobt sie werden gelobt ich werde gelobt du werdest gelobt er werde gelobt

wir werden gelobt ihr werdet gelobt Sie werden gelobt fie werden gelobt Perf. Indic.

I have been praised, etc. ich bin gelobt worben bu bist gelobt worben er ist gelobt worben wir sind gelobt worden ihr seid gelobt worden Sie sind gelobt worden sie sind gelobt worden

(b) Past Indic.

I was praised, etc. ich wurde gelobt bu wurdeft gelobt er wurde gelobt wir wurden gelobt ihr wurdet gelobt Sie wurden gelobt fie wurden gelobt fie wurden gelobt

Plup. Indic.

I had been praised, etc. ich war gelobt worden bn warst gelobt worden er war gelobt worden wir waren gelobt worden ihr waret gelobt worden Sie waren gelobt worden sie waren gelobt worden

(c) Future Indic.

I shall be praised, etc.
ich werde gelobt werden
du wirst gelobt werden
er wird gelobt werden
wir werden gelobt werden
ihr werdet gelobt werden
Sie werden gelobt werden
ste werden gelobt werden
ste werden gelobt werden

Perf. Subj.

I have been praised, etc. ich fei gelobt worden bu feieft gelobt worden er fei gelobt worden wir feien gelobt worden ihr feiet gelobt worden Gie feien gelobt worden fie feien gelobt worden

Past Subj.

I was praised, etc. ich würde gelobt bu würdeft gelobt er würde gelobt wir würden gelobt ihr würden gelobt Sie würden gelobt fie würden gelobt fie würden gelobt

Plup. Subj.

I had been praised, etc. ich wäre gelobt worben bu wärest gelobt worben er wäre gelobt worben wir wären gelobt worben ihr wäret gelobt worben Sie wären gelobt worben sie wären gelobt worben

Future Subj.

I should be praised, etc. ich werbe gelobt werden bu werbest gelobt werden er werbe gelobt werden wir werden gelobt werden ihr werdet gelobt werden sie werden gelobt werden sie werden gelobt werden sie werden gelobt werden

(d) Future Perf. Indic.

I shall have been praised, etc. ich werbe gelobt worden sein bn wirst gelobt worden sein er wird gelobt worden sein wir werden gelobt worden sein ihr werdet gelobt worden sein Sie werden gelobt worden sein sie werden gelobt worden sein sie werden gelobt worden sein

(e) Present Conditional.

I should be praised, etc. ich würbe gelobt werben bn würbeft gelobt werben er würbe gelobt werben wir würben gelobt werben ihr würbet gelobt werben Sie würben gelobt werben sie würben gelobt werben sie würben gelobt werben

Future Perf. Subj.

I should have been praised, etc. '
ich werbe gelobt worden sein
bu werdest gelobt worden sein
er werde gelobt worden sein
wir werden gelobt worden sein
ihr werdet gelobt worden sein
Gie werden gelobt worden sein
sie werden gelobt worden sein

Perfect Conditional.

I should have been praised, etc. ich würde gelobt worden fein bu würdeft gelobt worden fein er würde gelobt worden fein wir würden gelobt worden fein ihr würdet gelobt worden fein Sie würden gelobt worden fein sie würden gelobt worden fein sie würden gelobt worden fein

(f) Imperative.

2D SING. werbe (bu) gelobt or fei (bu) gelobt, be praised!

2D PLUR.

werbet (ihr) gelobt or feib (ihr) gelobt, be praised!

werben Sie gelobt or feien Sie gelobt, be praised!

Participles.

Infinitives.

PRESENT: (3n lobent, used only as adj.)
PERFECT: gelobt worten

gelobt (zu) werden gelobt worden (zu) fein

319. Conjugation of schen, to see, a strong verb.

ACTIVE VOICE.

(See Footnote, p. 217.)

(a) Pres. Indic. Pres. Subj. Perf. Indic. Perf. Subj. I see, etc. I have seen, etc. I see, etc. I have seen, etc. ich habe gefehen ich sehe ich sehe ich habe gesehen du siehst du sebest du haft gefehen du habest gesehen er fieht er fehe er hat gesehen er habe gefehen

wir fehen wir fehen wir haben gefehen wir haben gefehen ihr feht ihr fehet ihr habt gesehen ihr habet gesehen Sie feben Gie feben Sie haben gesehen Sie haben gesehen fie feben fie feben fie haben gesehen fie haben gefehen Plup. Indic. Plup. Subj. (b) Past. Ind. Past. Subj. I saw, etc. I saw, etc. I had seen, etc. I had seen, etc. ich sah ich fähe ich hatte gesehen ich hätte gesehen du fahft dn fäheft du hattest gesehen du hättest gesehen er fah er fähe er hatte gesehen er hätte gesehen wir fahen wir fähen wir hatten gefehen wir hätten gefehen ihr hättet gefehen ibr fabt ibr fähet ihr hattet gefehen Sie fähen Sie hatten gefehen Sie batten gefeben Sie fahen fie fähen fie hatten gesehen fie hätten gesehen fie fahen Future Indic. Future Subj. Present Conditional. (c) I shall see, etc. I shall see, etc. I should see, etc. ich werde feben ich werde fehen ich würde feben du wirft feben du werdeft fehen bn würbeft fehen er wird febeu er werbe feben er würde feben wir werben feben wir werden fehen wir würben fehen ihr werbet sehen ihr werbet fehen ihr würdet sehen Sie werben feben Sie werben fehen Sie würden feben fie werben feben fie werben feben fie würden sehen (d) Future Perf. Indic. Fut. Perf. Subj. Perfect Conditional. I shall have seen, etc. I should have seen, etc. I should have seen, etc. ich werde gesehen haben ich werbe gefehen haben ich würde gefehen haben du wirft du werbest du würbeft er wirb er werbe er würbe wir werben -wir werben wir würben ihr werbet ibr werbet ihr würbet -Sie werben ---Sie werben -Sie mürben fie werben fie murben fie werben -Imperatives. Participles. Infinitives. Pres. febend, seeing (au) fehen, to see Sing. fieh(e) bu, see! PLU. fehet (ihr), see! fehen Sie, see! Perf. gefehen, seen gesehen (3n) haben, to

have seen

(f) The Passive Voice of sehen is formed exactly like that of loben, by substituting the form gesehen for the form gelobt in the paradigms in § 318.

Note that:

- 1. The personal endings throughout the weak verb correspond very closely to those of the auxiliaries.
- 2. Many strong verbs change the root-vowel in the present indicative, second and third persons singular, and in the imperative singular.
- 3. Weak verbs have the past participle in t. Strong verbs in en; otherwise they are conjugated just like weak verbs, except in the present and past indicative and in the imperative.

320. Conjugation of anfangen, to begin, a separable strong verb.

(See Footnote, p. 217.)

(a) Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Subj.
I begin, etc.	I begin, etc.	I have begun, etc.	I have begun, etc.
ich fange au	ich fange an	ich habe angefange	
du fängft an	du fangest an	du haft —	du habeft —
er fängt an	er fanget an	er hat —	er habe —
wir fangen an	wir fangen an	wir haben —	wir haben —
ihr fangt an	ihr fanget au	ihr habt —	ihr habet —
Sie fangen an	Sie fangen au	Sie haben —	Sie haben —
fie fangen au	fie fangen au	sie haben —	fie haben —
(b) Past Ind.	Past Subj.	Plup. Indic.	Plup. Subj.
(b) Past Ind. I began, etc.	Past Subj. I began, etc.	Plup. Indic. I had begun, etc.	- '
		•	I had begun, etc.
I began, etc.	I began, etc.	I had begun, etc.	I had begun, etc.
I began, etc.	I began, etc.	I had begun, etc.	I had begun, etc. n ich hätte angefangen
I began, etc. ich fing an bn fingst an	I began, etc. ich finge an du fingest au	I had begun, etc. ich hatte angefange bn hattest —	I had begun, etc. n ich hätte angefangen bu hättest —
I began, etc. ich fing an bu fingst an er fingst an	I began, etc. ich finge an du fingest an er singet an	I had begun, etc. ich hatte angefange bn hattest — er hatte —	I had begun, etc. n ich hätte angefangen bu hätteft — er hätte —
I began, etc. ich fing an bn fingst an er fingt an wir fingen an	I began, etc. ich finge an bu fingeft au er finget au wir fingen an	I had begun, etc. ich hatte augefange bu hatteft — er hatte — wir hatten —	I had begun, etc. n ich hätte angefangen bu hätteft — er hätte — wir hätten —

(c) Future Indic.

I shall begin, etc. ich werbe anfangen bu wirft anfangen er wird anfangen wir werden anfangen ihr werbet anfangen Sie werben anfangen fie werben anfangen

Future Subi.

I should begin, etc.
ich werbe anfangen
bu werbest anfangen
er werbe anfangen
wir werben anfangen
ihr werbet anfangen
Sie werben anfangen

Pres. Conditional.

I should begin, etc.
ich würbe aufangen
bu würbeft aufangen
er würbe anfangen
wir würben aufangen
ihr würbet aufangen
Gie würben aufangen

(d) Future Perf. Indic.

I shall have begun, etc. ich werbe angefangen haben bu wirft angefangen haben er wirb angefangen haben wir werben angefangen haben ihr werbet angefangen haben Sie werben angefangen haben sie werben angefangen haben

Future Perf. Subj.

I should have begun, etc. ich werbe angefangen haben bu werbest angefangen haben er werbe angefangen haben wir werben angefangen haben ihr werbet angefangen haben Sie werben angefangen haben sie werben angefangen haben

Perfect Conditional.

I should have begun, etc.

ich würbe angefangen haben bu würbest angefangen haben er würbe angefangen haben wir würben angefangen haben ihr würbet angefangen haben Sie würben angefangen haben sie würben angefangen haben

(e) Imperative.

Sing. fange (bu) an, begin! PLU. (fanget (ihr) an, begin! (fangen Sie an, begin!

Participles.

Pres. anfangend, beginning Perf. angefangen, begun

Infinitives.

anzufangen, to begin

· angefangen zu haben, to have begun

- (f) The Passive Voice of separable verbs is perfectly regular. See § 318.
 - 321. Conjugation of zerbrechen, to break (to pieces), an inseparable strong verb.

(See Footnote, p. 217.)

(a) Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Subj.	
I break, etc.	I break, etc.	I have broken, etc.	I have broken, etc.	
ich zerbreche du zerbrichft er zerbricht	ich zerbreche du zerbrecheft er zerbreche	ich habe zerbrochen du haft — er hat —	ich habe zerbrochen du habeft — er habe —	
wir zerbrechen ihr zerbrecht Sie zerbrechen fie zerbrechen	wir zerbrechen ihr zerbrechet Sie zerbrechen fie zerbrechen	wir haben — ihr habt — Sie haben — fie haben —	wir haben — ihr habet — Sie haben — fie haben —	
(b) Past. Ind.	Past Subj.	Plup. Indic.	Plup. Subj.	
I broke, etc.	I broke, etc.	I had broken, etc.	I had broken, etc.	
ich zerbrach bu zerbrachft er zerbrach wir zerbrachen ihr zerbracht Sie zerbrachen fie zerbrachen	ich zerbräche bu zerbrächt er zerbräche wir zerbrächen ihr zerbrächet Sie zerbrächen fie zerbrächen	ich hatte zerbrochen bu hattest — er hatte — wir hatten — ihr hattet — Sie hatten — sie hatten —	ich hätte zerbrochen bu hättest — er hätte — wir hätten — ihr hättet — Sie hätten — sie hätten —	

(c) Future Indic.

I shall break, etc. ich werbe zerbrechen bu wirft zerbrechen er wird zerbrechen wir werben zerbrechen ihr werbet zerbrechen Sie werben zerbrechen sie werben zerbrechen

Future Subj.
I should break, etc.
ich werde zerbrechen
bu werdeft zerbrechen
er werde zerbrechen
wir werden zerbrechen
ihr werdet zerbrechen
Gie werden zerbrechen
fie werden zerbrechen

Pres. Conditional.

I should break, etc.
ich würbe zerbrechen
bu würbeft zerbrechen
er würbe zerbrechen
wir würben zerbrechen
ihr würben zerbrechen
Gie würben zerbrechen
fie würben zerbrechen

(d) Fut. Perf. Indic.

I shall have broken, etc. ich werbe zerbrochen haben bu wirst zerbrochen haben er wird zerbrochen haben wir werben zerbrochen haben ihr werbet zerbrochen haben Sie werben zerbrochen haben sie werben zerbrochen haben

Fut. Perf. Subj.

I should have broken, etc. ich werbe zerbrochen haben bu werbest zerbrochen haben er werbe zerbrochen haben wir werben zerbrochen haben ihr werbet zerbrochen haben Sie werben zerbrochen haben sie werben zerbrochen haben

Perfect Conditional.

I should have broken, etc. ich würbe zerbrochen haben bn würbeft zerbrochen haben er würbe zerbrochen haben wir würben zerbrochen haben sie würben zerbrochen haben sie würben zerbrochen haben sie würben zerbrochen haben

(e) Imperative.

Sing. zerbrich (du), break!
PLU. {zerbrechet (ihr), break!
} gerbrecheu Sie, break!

Participles.

Pres. zerbrechend, breaking Perf. zerbrochen, broken

Infinitives.

(3n) zerbrechen, to break zerbrochen (3n) haben, to have broken

(f) The Passive Voice of inseparable verbs is perfectly regular: ich merde zerbrochen, etc. See § 318.

Note that:

- 1. The separable prefix follows and is separated from the root-verb in the present and past indicative and subjunctive and in the imperative.
- 2. In all other cases it precedes and is attached to the rootverb. This includes the past participle with prefix ge- and the

infinitive with sign zu. So we write aufgestanden, aufzustehen, etc.

- 3. Inseparable verbs are just like simple verbs, except that the past participle does not have the prefix ges. It is easy to see that this would sound awkward.
 - 322. Conjugation of sid freuen, to be glad, to rejoice, a reflexive verb.

(See Footnote, p. 217.)

(a) Pres. Ind. Pres. Subj. Perf. Indic. Perf. Subj. I am glad, etc. I am glad, etc. I have been glad, etc. I have been glad, etc. ich frene mich ich frene mich ich habe mich gefreut ich habe mich gefreut du freuft bich du frenest bich bu haft bich du habest dich er freut sich er frene fich er hat sich er habe sich wir freuen nns wir frenen nns wir haben nns wir haben nns ihr freut ench ihr frenet ench ihr habt euch ihr habet ench Sie freuen fich Sie frenen fich Sie haben fich Sie baben fich fie frenen fich fie frenen fich fie baben fich fie haben fich (b) Past Indic. Past Subi. Plup. Indic. Plup. Subj. I was glad, etc. I was glad, etc. I had been glad, etc. I had been glad, etc. ich frente mich ich frente mich ich hatte mich gefrent ich hatte mich gefrent du frenteft bich du freuteft bich bu hatteft bich du hätteft bich er frente fich er frente fich er batte fich er hätte fich wir freuten uns wir freuten uns wir hatten uns wir bätten uns ihr freutet euch ihr frentet euch ihr hattet euch ihr hättet euch Sie freuten fich Sie frenten fich Sie hatten fich -Sie batten fich fie freuten fich fie freuten fich fie hatten fich fie hätten fich

(c) Future Indicative.
 I shall be glad, etc.
 ich werbe mich frenen
 bn wirst dich frenen
 er wird sich frenen
 wir werben uns frenen
 ihr werbet euch frenen
 Sie werben sich frenen

Future Subjunctive. I should be glad, etc. ich werde mich freuen du werdest dich freuen er werde sich freuen wir werden und freuen ihr werdet ench freuen Sie werden sich freuen sie werden sich freuen sie werden sich freuen

- (d) Future Perf. Indic.

 I shall have been glad, etc. ich werbe mich gefrent haben bu wirft bich gefrent haben er wird fich gefrent haben wir werben uns gefrent haben ihr werbet euch gefrent haben Sie werben fich gefrent haben fie werben fich gefrent haben
- (e) Present Conditional.

 I should be glad, etc.
 ich würde mich freuen
 bu würdest dich freuen
 er würde sich freuen
 wir würden und freuen
 ihr würdet euch freuen
 Sie würden sich freuen
 sie würden sich freuen
- (f) Imperative.

Sing. freue did, rejoice!
Plu. freue euch, rejoice!
freuen Sie sich, rejoice!

Future Perf. Subj.

I should have been glad, etc.
ich werde mich gefrent haben
du werdest dich gefrent haben
er werde sich gefrent haben
wir werden nuß gefrent haben
ihr werdet ench gefrent haben
Sie werden sich gefrent haben
sie werden sich gefrent haben

Perfect Conditional.

I should have been glad, etc. ich würbe mich gefreut haben bu würbest bich gefreut haben er würbe sich gefreut haben wir würben uns gefrent haben ihr würbet ench gefrent haben Sie würben sich gefrent haben sie würben sich gefreut haben

Participles.

Pres. sid freuend, rejoicing Perf. sid gefreut, rejoiced

Infinitives.

fich zu freuen, to be glad

sich gefreut zu haben, to have been glad

Note that:

- 1. The reflexive pronoun in the conjugation of the reflexive verb must change to agree with the subject, just as we say in English, I hurt myself, you hurt yourself, he hurt himself.
- 2. The reflexive pronoun always follows directly after the verb in the simple tenses and directly after the auxiliary in the compound tenses.
- 3. All reflexive verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary haben.

323. The Modal Auxiliaries correspond to the English modals as follows:—

COLO W	J				
(a)	PRESENT.			PAST PARTICIPLE.	
bürfen	bürfen, may, to be permitted			gedurft or dürfen	
tönnen	, can, to be o	ible to	fonnte	getonnt	or fönnen
	, may, to car		mochte	gemocht	or mögen
	, must, to be			mußte gemußt or müff	
. ,	shall, ought,		follte	gesollt of	
wollen, will, to want to		wollte	wollte gewollt or wol		
(b)	Pr	esent Indica	tive of M od	lals.	
I may, etc.	I can, etc.	I like, etc.	I must, etc.	I am to, etc.	I want to, etc.
id) berf	ich fann	ich mag	ich muß	ich foll	i ch will
du barfft	du fannft	du magft	du mußt	du follft	dn willft
er darf	er fann	er mag	er muß	er foll	er will
wir dürfen	wir fönnen	wir mögen	wir müffen	wir follen	wir wollen
ihr dürft	ihr könnte	ihr mögt	ihr müßt	ihr follt	ihr wollt
Sie dürfen	Sie können	Sie mögen	Sie müffen	Sie sollen	Sie wollen
fie dürfen	fie können	fie mögen	fie müffen	fie follen	fie wollen
(c)		Present St	ıbjunctive.		
I may, etc.	I can, etc.	I like, etc.	I must, etc.	I am to, etc.	I want to, etc.
ich bürfe	ich tonne	ich möge	ich müffe	ich folle	ich wolle
du dürfeft	du fonneft	du mögeft	du müssest	du folleft	du wollest
er dürfe	er fönne	er möge	er müffe	er solle	er wolle
wir dürfen	wir föuneu	wir mögen	wir müssen	wir follen	wir wollen
ihr dürfet	ihr könnet	ihr möget	ihr müffet	ihr follet	ihr wollet
Sie bürfen	Sie tonnen	Sie mögen	Sie müffen	Sie sollen	Sie wollen
fie dürfen	fie können	fie mögen	sie müssen	fie sollen	fie wollen
(d) Past Indicative.					
I was per- mitted, etc.	I was able, etc.	I liked to, etc.	I had to, etc.	I ought to, etc.	I wanted to, etc.
ich durfte	ich kounte	ich mochte	ich mußte	ich follte	ich wollte
du durfteft er durfte	du konntest er konnte	du mochtest er mochte	du mußtest er mnßte	dn follteft er follte	du wolltest er wollte
				,	

wir durften wir konnten wir mochten wir mußten wir sollten wir wollten ihr durftet ihr konntet ihr mochtet ihr mußtet ihr folltet ihr wolltet Sie durften Sie konnten Sie mochten Sie mußten Sie sollten Sie wollten fie durften fie konnten fie mochten fie mußten fie follten fie wollten

(e) Past Subjunctive.

I might, I could. I should I sh'd have I ought to, I should etc. etc. like, etc. to, etc. want to, etc. ich bürfte ich könnte ich möchte ich müßte ich follte ich wollte du dürfteft bu tonnteft bu möchteft bu müßteft bu follteft dn wollteft er bürfte er föunte er möchte er müßte er follte er wollte wir burften wir konnten wir mochten wir mußten wir follten wir wollten ihr burftet ihr konntet ihr möchtet ihr mußtet ihr folltet ibr molltet Sie burften Sie fonnten Sie möchten Sie mußten Sie follten Sie wollten fie burften fie tounten fie möchten fie mußten fie follten fie wollten

(f) Future Indicative of all modals is regular: ich werde bürfen, I shall be permitted; du wirst dürsen, etc.

Future Subjunctive of all modals is regular: ich merde dürfen, I shall be permitted; du merdest dürsen, etc.

- (g) Perfect Indicative without a dependent infinitive is regular: ich habe geburft, I was (have been) permitted: ich habe gefonnt, I was (have been) able, etc.
- (h) Perfect Indicative with a dependent infinitive has the past participle with infinitive form ("two infinitives"):

I was permitted to go, etc.
ich habe gehen bürfen
bu hast gehen bürfen
er hat gehen bürfen
wir haben gehen bürfen
ihr habt gehen bürfen
Sie haben gehen bürfen
sie haben gehen bürfen

(i) Perfect Subjunctive.

Without Dependent Infinitive.

I have been permitted, etc.

ich habe geburft bu habeft geburft er habe geburft wir haben geburft ihr habet geburft Sie haben geburft fie haben geburft

(j) Pluperfect Indicative.

Without Dependent Infinitive.

I had been permitted, etc.

ich hatte geburft bu hattest geburft er hatte geburft wir hatten geburft ihr hattet geburft Sie hatten geburft sie hatten geburft

(k) Pluperfect Subjunctive.

Without Dependent Infinitive.

I might have been permitted, etc.

ich hätte gedurft bu hättest gedurft er hätte gedurft wir hätten gedurft ihr hättet gedurft Sie hätten gedurft sie hätten gedurft With Dependent Infinitive.

I have been permitted to go, etc.

ich habe gehen bürfen bu habest gehen bürfen er habe gehen bürfen wir haben gehen bürfen ihr habet gehen bürfen Sie haben gehen bürfen sie haben gehen bürfen

With Dependent Infinitive.

I had been permitted to go, etc.

ich hatte gehen bürfen bu hattest gehen bürfen er hatte gehen bürfen wir hatten gehen bürfen ihr hattet gehen bürfen Sie hatten gehen bürfen sie hatten gehen bürfen

With Dependent Infinitive.

I might have been permitted to go.

ich hätte gehen bürfen bu hättest gehen dürfen er hätte gehen dürfen wir hätten gehen bürfen ihr hättet gehen bürfen Sie hätten gehen bürfen sie hätten gehen bürfen

(1) Future Perfect Indicative and Subjunctive of modals is regular but seldom used.

(m) Imperative.

perative. Participles.

Wanting, except wollen, which is rare.

PRES. bürfend, fönnend, etc. PREF. gedurft or bürfen, etc.

Infinitives.

bürfen, fonnen, etc.

gedurft zu haben, gekonnt zu haben, etc.

Note that:

- 1. In their principal parts all modals are irregular and resemble weak verbs.
- 2. The forms are regularly made from the principal parts except in the present, and in the past subjunctive of sollen (sollte) and wollen (wollte), which do not take umlaut.
- 8. The past indicative and subjunctive of sollen and of mollen have the same form.
- 4. The English should like or would like is usually German möchte (gern).
- 5. English expressions, could have gone, might have been, must have seen, ought to have done, etc., are almost always German, hätte gehen fönnen, hätte sein fönnen, hätte sehen müssen, hätte tun müssen, etc. Always begin such a phrase with a form of hätte.
- 6. Because of the future idea in mögen, sollen and wollen, they are not commonly used in the future tense.
 - 7. All modals are conjugated with haben as auxiliary.

PRONUNCIATION.

Introduction.

324. A German Accent. — Most of us can imitate German brogue in telling a dialect story. We say: "Vell, vot iss it?" and so on. To speak in this way we throw our organs of speech by force into the positions which those of a German occupy naturally. This is the basis of what we call a German accent.

The easiest way to approach a good German accent is to make believe we are telling a German dialect story, and to do this when we read or speak German. We must also get rid of all false modesty, for trying to mimic German sounds is not half so ridiculous as giving German letters their American sounds.

325. The Main Difficulties. — In general, those German sounds for which English has nothing to correspond — like th, id, and it — are well mastered by American pupils. The chief difficulties are with sounds like l, r, and long e, because we wrongly assume that these letters represent English sounds. Pupils prepare themselves for the difficulties offered by such words as das Buth, die Mühe, or schön, and take pains in pronouncing them. The result is that they are pronounced much nearer the true German way than words which are thought to offer no difficulty, like alse, sehren, or die Seese.

The things that are most distinctively German — neglect of which marks an American most clearly when he speaks with a German — are: (1) pure vowel sounds, especially $\mathfrak o$ and $\mathfrak e$, §§ 326 ff.; (2) the diphthongs, §§ 329-330; (3) the glottal catch, §§ 331 ff.; (4) the consonants $\mathfrak l$ and $\mathfrak r$, §§ 338-339; (5) length

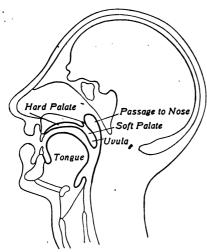


Fig. 1. — The Tongue-position for i.

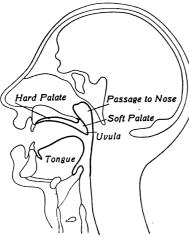


Fig. 2. — The Tongue-position for a.

of consonants, § 340; and (6) the ending en in certain special cases, § 342.

Vowels.

326. Quality of Sound. - American vowels are usually slurred, but German vowels are simple, pure. There is almost always an uh-sound after an American vowel. This is caused by the moving of the tongue or the lower jaw. We pronounce \bar{o} as \bar{o} - $\bar{o}\bar{o}$, while a German keeps tongue, lips, and lower jaw in exactly the same position throughout the entire We pronounce sound. art, school, rose, a-ert, schoo-ul, ro-ooze, where a German makes pure, simple sounds of die Art, die Schule, die Rose. The English sounds are of course exaggerated here, the better to illustrate the tendency. But the

Germans keep the organs of speech in the same position throughout each sound.

327. Tongue and Lip Position. — In order not to move tongue,

lips, and lower jaw during the sound of German vowels, it is important to know the exact position of these parts for the making of the various vowel sounds.

Articulate carefully the vowels in feed, far, food. For the vowel sound in feed the lips are drawn back as in a smile; in far they are in their normal position of rest; in food they are (or should be) thrust forward as in a pout. And

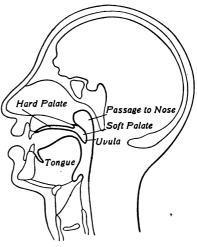


Fig. 3. - The Tongue-position for u.

the tongue is raised and thrown forward in *feed*, is normal in *far*, and is drawn back in *food*. These positions are illustrated in Figures 1, 2, and 3.

The German vowel sounds form a sequence i, e, a, v, u, beginning with a sound in the front of the mouth and running to the back. Notice the

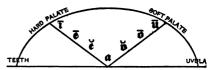


Fig. 4. — Diagram of the Tongue-position for German vowels.

position of the tongue for the series as graphically shown in Figure 4. It must not change position during each sound.

A good way to keep the tongue steady is to rest its tip consciously against the base of the lower teeth. A good way to keep the lower jaw steady is to hold a lead pencil between the teeth.

328. Pronunciation. — Except in the case of long ϵ , German vowels offer little difficulty if we remember not to move tongue or lower jaw during vowel sounds.

German e has three sounds: short, obscure, and long. When short it is like e in met, when obscure like e in golden. But long e makes trouble, as it has no English equivalent. It is between a in mate and ee in meet. It is made with the teeth almost together, the lips drawn back as in a smile, and the tongue almost as high as in the i-position (Fig. 1). It is a pure sound and has not the slur usually following English long a, as when we pronounce name, nā-im. Pronounce Ehre (not Ühre), Seele (not Säle), mehren (not Mähren), sehe (not fähe).

Note. For the sound of e in the unaccented syllable er, see r, § 339, Note.

Diphthongs.

- 329. Pronunciation. Properly speaking, a diphthong is a double sound. But we often speak of two vowels when written together, as a diphthong, even when they are spoken as a single sound: each, heart, heard. Below are treated the three genuine diphthong sounds: ai (ei), au, and eu (äu). They differ from the English chiefly in having the main emphasis on the second sound where English has it on the first. But there are also differences in the quality of the sounds.
- (1) The diphthongs et and at are pronounced exactly alike in German. Their sound is nearly like that of English i in mine,

but English long i is a long ah-sound followed by a short ee sound $(\bar{a}'-ee)$, while German ai (ei) is a short a-sound followed by a longer e-sound (a=ee'). In German, after the short a-sound, the tongue does not bother to climb clear to the i-position (Fig. 1), but stays for the longer part of the diphthong in the e-position (Fig. 4): Das Ei, mein, der Hain, die Saite.

- (2) The diphthong an is nearly like English ow in how, but English ow is a long ah-sound followed by a short u-sound $(\vec{a}' \circ o)$, while German an is a short a-sound followed by a longer v-sound (a-ov'). In German, after the short a-sound, the tongue does not bother to go way back into the u-position (Fig. 3), but stays for the longer part of the diphthong in the v-position (Fig. 4): Das Saus, ber Raub, bas Maul, aus.
- (3) The diphthongs en and an are historically the same sound and are pronounced exactly alike in German. Their sound is nearly like that of English oy in boy, but English oy is a short aw-sound followed by a shorter i-sound (aw-i) German en (au) is a short v-sound followed by a longer i-sound (v-vi). In German, after the short v-sound the lips keep the same rounded position and the tongue does not bother to climb clear to the i-position (Fig. 1), but stays for the longer part of the diphthong in the e-position (Fig. 4): Die Leute, heute, die Häute, die Säule.
- 330. Summary of the Differences. German diphthong-sounds have the emphasis on the second part, where English emphasizes the first element. The second (longer) element of the German diphthong is not so different from the first (short) element as in English. In other words, both the lip- and the tongue-positions for the second element of the German diphthong are nearer those of the first element, than in English.

German diphthongs are also of shorter duration than English. They are not so long as a long vowel.

If we want to emphasize a claim to something we say: "That's mine" ($m\ddot{a}\ddot{a}\ddot{a}\ddot{a}'een$), where a German says: "Das ift mein" ($m\ddot{a}\bar{e}en$). When we are hurt, we say: "Ow" ($\ddot{a}\ddot{a}\ddot{a}\ddot{a}'oo$), but a German says: "Au" ($\check{a}oo$). We also call: "Ship ahoy" ($\overline{a}w'i$), but a German in calling out the word for hay, says: "bas Heu" ($\check{b}oo$). The best way to say this right is to think mainly of the second sound; the first will take care of itself.

The Glottal Catch.

331. The "Catch" Proper. — Germans usually speak with the muscles of the chest and diaphragm tense. They seem to be holding their breath, as it were; there is always pressure upon the bellows which furnishes the motive-power for speech. This tenseness or pressure accounts not only for the staccato effect and the impression of vigor and speed given by most spoken German, but also for the greater explosiveness of many German sounds. It is also the foundation of what is called the glottal catch.

When we say, "pooh!" the breath bursts through our lips in a little explosion. If we close our vocal cords, as we do our lips in "pooh," and then let the breath pop through them, we have what is known as a "glottal catch." There is nothing like it in English; the nearest approach is when we whisper "uh-uh" for "no." It is a little, jerky cough.

332. Use of the Catch.—In English conversation we carry over a consonant to a following vowel, even when they are in separate words: not at all, odd or even. But a German comes to a full stop—closing his vocal cords—before words or syl-

lables beginning with a vowel. The sound of the vowel is then preceded by the little, jerky cough — the "glottal catch" — caused by the sudden bursting open of the vocal cords: odd | or | even, not | at | all.

Pronounce the following words, making a complete closure of the vocal cords after the prefix, and beginning the basic word with a glottal catch: ent|ehren, er|innern, miß|achten, ver|einen, ur|alt. Also: Es | ist | ein | außer|ordentsich | un|artiges Kind.

When in English a vowel sound precedes an initial vowel—whether this begins a word or a syllable—we join the two by the sound of w (after o or u) or of y (after e or i). In rapid speech, throughout, see it, I am are pronounced through-wout, see yit, I yam. But a German comes to a full stop before the initial vowel sound, which he pronounces with a glottal catch: through | out, see | it, I | am.

Pronounce the following words, making a complete closure of the vocal cords after the prefix, and beginning the basic word with a glottal catch: be|ob|achten, be|achten, ge|endet, ge|arbeitet. Also: Ich habe | eine | un|angenehme | Antwort | erhalten.

333. Rule for the Glottal Catch. — In very rapid speech, especially in unaccented words and syllables, the glottal catch is sometimes omitted. But as such fluency is not acquired till after years of practice, it is best to follow the rule. Except after the participles mentioned below, a glottal catch should precede every word or root syllable beginning with a vowel.

It sounds queer to us when a German speaks English with a glottal catch, but no queerer than it sounds to a German when we say: be-yo-bachten, be-yachten, ge-yendet, and ge-yarbeitet instead of be|ob|achten, be|achten, ge|endet, and ge|arbeitet.

Much of the difficulty Germans have in understanding our pronunciation of their language is due to our omission of the glottal catch. An illustration of this is the fact that an American was once obliged to pronounce the word "erinnern" five times before her German teacher could tell what word she was trying to say. The difficulty lay partly in the drawling of the American r, partly in the omission of the glottal catch after the first er. The American said e-rinnurn instead of erlinnern.

334. Omission of the Glottal Catch.—In words compounded with the particles hier, hin, her, dar, war, wor, vor, wieder, and after II, there is no glottal catch. Thus hinaus, herein, darunster, warum, woran, vorüber, wiederum, vollenden, are easy for Americans, as they are pronounced without the glottal catch.

Consonants.

- 335. Dissimilar Consonants. The consonants which have sounds not found in English are d, d, d, and d. Naturally they make the most trouble for Americans.
- 336. The Sound of th.—(1) When we pronounce the after a, o, u, or au, the back of the tongue is raised and drawn back toward the soft palate so that a scraping sound is made as the breath is forced through. It is like the Scotch ch in loch. The nearest equivalent English sound is the rasping we sometimes make at the end of a long yawn, or the sound some people utter when breathing on their eye-glasses before cleaning them. Pronounce: adh, bas Budh, bas Loch, auch.
- (2) After all other sounds that is, after consonants or ϵ , i, ϵu , or the umlauted vowels ϵu has a sound resembling the noise made by a spitting cat. Raise the tongue to the position for long i (Fig. 1) and holding it there, stop the vowel sound

and breathe out. Pronounce: das Pech, das Licht, euch, die Töchter, die Dächer, die Tücher, die Schläuche, welch, manch.

The guttural ch-sound, made in the back of the mouth, goes naturally with the vowels a, v, and u, which are formed in the middle or back of the mouth (see Fig. 4). The palatal ch-sound, made against the front part of the palate, goes naturally with the vowels formed in the front of the mouth (Fig. 4) or with I or u, both of which are articulated with the tongue against the front of the palate (Fig. 5).

- (3) At the beginning of a syllable, the is pronounced as in (2) before e and i: Chemie, China. Before other vowels or consonants it is pronounced like f: Chor, Christ, Charafter, Fuths, wathfen.
- **337.** The Sounds of g.—(1) German g at the beginning of a word or syllable is like English g in go. (2) At the end of a syllable it is like k except (3) in the ending ig, when it is like ig in ig.
- Thus \mathfrak{g} and \mathfrak{g} in rightig are pronounced alike. But as soon as inflectional endings are added to final \mathfrak{g} , so that \mathfrak{g} becomes the first letter in the following syllable, \mathfrak{g} is pronounced like g in go. Pronounce: (1) gut, grün; (2) ber Tag, ber Sieg; (3) ruhig, rightig; but (1) die Tage, die Siege, ruhiger, rightiger.

Note. There is less uniformity in Germany for the pronunciation of g than for any other letter. Probably half the people in Germany pronounce final g like final th, as in § 336, 1 or 2. But the best authorities are now agreed upon the pronunciation as given above.

338. The Sound of 1.—German 1 is pronounced with the tongue pressed against the front of the palate, like *lli* in *million* (Fig. 5). The sound of y in year seems interwoven with the 1, which is made in the very front of the mouth, not at the

back as English l. One might say that German l has an se-shade (Fig. 1), while English l has an oo-shade (Fig. 3). Pronounce: Lilli Lehmann, alles, Ulf.

339. The German r. — There are two distinct German r's; the tongue-tip (trilled) r, and the uvula (rolled) r. Both differ from the American slurred r of the East and South, and from

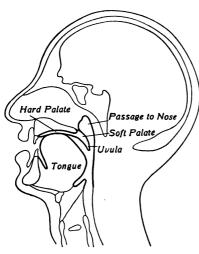


Fig. 5. — The Tongue-position for 1.

the drawled r of the West.

- (1) In the trilled t (Fig. 6), the tongue-tip is vibrated against the palate just behind the front teeth. This is not only the easier of the two, but it is the one approved on the stage.
- (2) The uvula or throat r (Fig. 7) is made by the vibrations of the uvula upon the back of the tongue. It is more distinctively German, but it is usually difficult for

Americans to acquire. In a way it resembles a gargle, and it may best be developed from the guttural th, § 336, 1. In fact, many Germans pronounce r as th when speaking rapidly; they give Martha and Magha almost the same sound. The physiological explanation of this is that in very rapid speech the uvula fails to vibrate when the breath is forced out, thus making only the scraping sound of th, § 336, 1. For this

uvula \mathbf{r} the front of the tongue must never be raised as in the drawled r of the West. The back of the tongue is raised so that the uvula is forced to vibrate when we breathe out (see Fig. 7).

In conversation Note. the r in the unaccented syllable er is not rolled. uvula touches the tongue just once, but does not vibrate. This makes a very short awsound, akin to o in short. Thus Der Bater hat es vergeffen is spoken almost like Daw fahtaw hat es fawgessen. The sound here represented by aw is as short as it can possibly be. It is not at all like the aw in "See, saw, Marjorie Daw," but on the contrary so brief as to be practically only a grace note.

340. Length of Consonants. — German has long and short consonants as well as long and short vowels A long vowel followed by

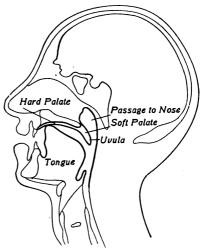


Fig. 6.—The Tongue-position for trilled :.

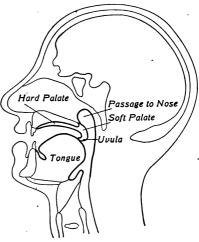


Fig. 7.—The Tongue-position for uvula r,

a short consonant offers no difficulty, as that is a frequent combination in English. But care must be taken to prolong a consonant following a short vowel. Remember to hold tongue and jaw still during a German vowel-sound and to jump without any slur from a vowel to the following consonant, especially when the vowel is short. Compare ber Rönig and fönnen. Pronounce Rööööönig and fönn n n nen. In the same way pronounce die Schule and die Schulb (Schu u u u le and Schullib). Also der Ofen and offen (O o o o fen and offfffen). Be careful always to jump without any slur from the vowel to the consonant. Do not say Röluh|nig, föluh|nnen, Schu|uh|le, Schu|uh|lb, O|uh|fen, o|uh|ffen.

This is one of the most characteristic features of German and one of the easiest to learn. Just remember to put on extra lung-pressure for short vowels and then to hold the following consonant. If we admire something very much, we say it is "wo o o nderful"; a German says "wunnnbervoll." The best English illustration of this is the way ng is prolonged in the American slang expression: "Stung!" This length of consonants is especially easy to get with I, m, and n. Try these first.

A few good pairs with which to practice these short vowels followed by long consonants and to compare them with similar long vowels followed by short consonants are: bem Sohne, bie Sonne; fühlen, füllen; fomisch, tommen; ber Stahl, ber Stall; wohlmollen; ber Ballsaal; Hallsaal; Hallsaa

Pitch.

341. Change of Pitch. — In English words the vowel carries the changes in pitch. When we say "Oh, come on" in a pleading tone, the o in on slides several notes down the scale. If

a German were to use the same expression "Romm an" in the same tone, the n in an would carry this change in pitch. Graphically this may be represented by English "Come on"; German "Romm an." In German any change in pitch is carried by the long element in the syllable, whether vowel or consonant. Of course, to carry change in pitch a consonant must be voiced, that is, the vocal cords must vibrate when it is pronounced. Thus change of pitch cannot be carried by mutes like p, b, t.

Assimilation.

- 342. The Ending en. Much of the speed with which Germans speak is due to their clipping of the ending en. An enormous number of German words end in en, the sound of which is shortened in various ways. In conversation the e in en is always silent. The n then undergoes various changes, called assimilation, depending upon the preceding or following consonant. Chief of these are: (1) next to b or p; (2) after g; and (3) after n or ng.
- (1) When the ending en comes just after or just before a b or a p sound, it is pronounced like m. The sentence Wir haben eben sieben Anaben gesehen is pronounced, Wir habm ebm siebm Anabm gesehn. Eschenbach and Wolfenbüttel are pronounced Eschmbach and Wolfmbüttel.

¹This statement is at variance with German pronunciation as formally taught, but it is consistent with the practice, even of teachers. The author once heard a professor in the University of Berlin—a man well known in America—say in a lecture: Die Endung ,en' muß immer volln Ion habm! Advocates of stage German insist that en should have its regular sound, but even on the stage b and p usually attract n to m. For instance, Biepenbrint (in Freytag's "Journalistent") is never pronounced according to the stage rules.

If we notice carefully how b and p come to attract n to m, we shall see that it is all done by the soft palate. For the sounds b and p the lips are closed and the soft palate cuts off the nasal passage. For the following n-sound it is much easier to keep the lips closed and simply to let the soft palate down, thus opening the nasal passage, than it is to open the lips and raise the tongue to the n-position. This opening of the nasal passage gives a nasal sound, and the only nasal sound possible with the lips closed is m.

- (2) A similar process to that just described takes place when en follows g. In the sound of g in gehen (§ 337, 1) the nasal passage is closed by the soft palate, and it is easier to lower the soft palate than to raise the tongue to the n-position. The result is that the following n-sound becomes nasal (like ng in sing) Wir tragen hohe Rragen is pronounced Wir tragng hohe Rragen.
- (3) When the ending en follows n or ng it is indicated simply by a change of pitch. The change may be up or down. In other words the tongue remains in the n-position while the vocal cords alter the pitch. This may be graphically indicated thus: Wir können einen schönen Spaziergang machen wir könnt einen schönen spaziergang machen wir schönen spaziergang machen or wir könnt einen schönen spaziergang machen or wir könnt einen schönen spaziergang machen or wir könnt einen schönen spaziergang machen. Sie fingen an, zu singen sie singen sie singen an, zu singen sie singen an, zu singen sie singen an, zu singen sie singen an zu singen sie sing

Actors always say Riepmbrint. This is a practically universal law, which the Greeks and Romans embodied in their written language: $\epsilon \nu + \beta \delta \lambda \lambda \omega - \epsilon \mu \beta \delta \lambda \lambda \omega$ (en + ballo - emballo); con + prehendo - comprehendo. In speaking hurriedly we say "Opm the door," for "Open the door."

WORD PORMATION.

- **343.** Introduction German is very rich in compound words. Not only does it compound many words which in English are written separate, as die Hauptsache, the main thing, die Luftschiffsahrtsachtiengesellschaft, the airship passage stock company, and so on, but it is particularly varied in its roots, prefixes, and suffixes.
- 344. Roots. German roots often vary their vowel sounds so that it is hard to identify the original root: schließen, das Schloß, der Schluß; der Bund, die Binde, das Band. English also has this same kind of change: sing, sang, sung, song; swim, swam, swum.

Nouns derived from verb roots are usually of one of three kinds: (a) an active object, performing the action of the verb; (b) a passive object, on which the action of the verb is performed; or (c) an abstract noun, denoting the condition or action of the verb.

- (a) Das Band (binden), something that binds. Der Bogen (biegen), something that bends. Der Fluß (fließen), something that flows.
- (b) Der Bruch (brechen), something that is broken. Der Bund (binden), something that is bound. Der Trank (trinken), something that is drunk.
- (c) Der Flug (fliegen), action or condition of flying. Der Gang (gehen), action or condition of going. Der Trunk (trinken), action or condition of drinking.
- 345. On the next page are given some common verbal roots from which nouns are derived in the way just shown.

Binden, to bind; der Band, bound volume; das Band, ribbon; die Binde, bandage; der Bund, bond, union.

Fließen, to flow; der Fluß, river; das Floß, raft.

Graben, to dig; das Grab, grave; die Grube, grotto; die Gruft, vault; der Graben, ditch.

Rlingen, to sound; der Rlang, sound; die Klingel, bell.

Schießen, to shoot; ber Schuß, shot; ber Schoß, shoot, twig.

Schlagen, to strike; der Schlag, stroke; die Schlacht, battle.

Schließen, to shut; das Schloß, lock; castle; der Schluß, end; der Schlüssel, key.

Singen, to sing; ber Sang, ber Gefang, song.

Sprechen, to speak; die Sprache, language; der Spruch, saying; das Gespräch, conversation.

Trinfen, to drink; ber Tranf and ber Trunf, drink.

Wiegen, (1) to weigh, (2) to rock; (1) die Wage, scale; das Gewicht, weight; (2) die Wiege, cradle; die Woge, wave.

Ziehen, to draw; ber Zug, train; feature; die Zucht, breed(ing).

- 346. German Prefixes may be divided into two classes, verbal and general. The verbal prefixes have been treated under inseparable and separable verbs. Of the general prefixes the most important are: erz, ge, un, ur. They are used chiefly with nouns.
- (a) Erz= (English arch-) means leader, chief; der Erzbischof, archbishop; der Erzherzog, archduke; der Erzlügner, arch-liar.
- (b) Ge= (no English equivalent) forms (1) collectives out of noun stems, or (2) verbal nouns from verb stems.
- (1) Das Gebirge, mountain chain (der Berg); die Gesbrüder, brothers (der Bruder); das Gefieder, plumage (Feder).
- (2) der Gedanke, thought (denken); das Gedicht, poem (dichten); das Geschenk, present (schenken).

- (c) Un: (English im- or in-, sometimes mis-) usually reverses the meaning of a word: unartig, naughty (artig); unbestimmt, indefinite (bestimmt); die Ungebuld, impatience (die Geduld).
- (d) Ur= (no English equivalent) denotes origin or source. It may also intensify the meaning of a word: uralt, very old (alt); urfomisch, very funny (fomisch); der Ursprung, source (der Sprung); das Urwald, primeval forest (der Bald).
- 347. Suffixes. Many German words are formed by adding suffixes to roots. The most important groups of words formed in this way are: (1) nouns, (2) adjectives, and (3) verbs Nouns formed by suffix may be divided into two classes: concrete and abstract.
- 348. Concrete Nouns are formed by the following suffixes: then, lein, er, in, and ling.
- (a) Chen and sein form neuter diminutives out of other nouns, the root vowel taking Umlaut when possible: das Mädchen, little girl (die Magd); das Bächsein, brooklet (der Bach); das Fräusein, Miss, little woman (die Frau).
 - (b) Er forms masculine agents, usually with Umlaut, from —
- (1) Nouns: der Fleischer, butcher (das Fleisch); der Gartner, gardener (der Garten); der Töpfer, potter (der Topf).
- (2) Verbs: ber Führer, guide (führen); ber Leser, reader (lesen); ber Schreiber, clerk (schreiben).
- (c) In forms feminines from masculines; die Königin, queen (der König); die Lehrerin, lady teacher (der Lehrer).
- (d) Ling forms masculines of varying meaning, having Umlaut when possible.
- (1) Nouns: der Günstling, favorite (die Gunst); der Spröfling, scion (der Sprof, sprout).

- (2) Adjectives: der Fremdling, stranger (fremd); der Frühling, spring (früh); der Jüngling, youth (jung).
- (3) Verbs: ber Findling, foundling (finden); ber Lehrling, apprentice (lehren); ber Säugling, suckling (faugen).
- (4) Numerals: der Erstling, first fruits (erst); der Zwilling, twin (zwei); der Drilling, triplet (drei).
- 349. Abstract Nouns are formed by the following suffixes: e, ei, heit, feit, schaft, and ung.
 - (a) & forms abstract feminines with Umlaut from —
- (1) Adjectives: die Härte, hardness, cruelty (hart); die Größe, size (groß); die Länge, length (lang).
- (2) Verb Roots: die Bitte, request (bitten); die Liebe, love (lieben); die Liege, lie (liegen).
- (b) $\mathfrak{E}i$ forms feminines of various meanings (many have become concrete) from —
- (1) Nouns: die Bäckerei, bakery (ber Bäcker); die Fischerei, fishery (ber Fischer); die Sklaverei, slavery (ber Sklave).
- (2) Verbs: die Neckerei, chaffing (necken, to tease); die Plauderei, chattering (plaudern); die Schmeichelei, flattery (schmeicheln).
 - (c) Seit forms abstract feminines from —
- (1) Nouns: die Kindheit, childhood (das Kind); die Menschheit, humanity (der Mensch).
- (2) Adjectives: die Dummheit, stupidity (dumm); die Einheit, unity (ein); die Weisheit, wisdom (weise).
- (d) Keit forms abstract feminines from adjectives which have endings like ig, sich, sam, bar, etc.: die Dankbarkeit, gratitude (bankbar); die Freundlichkeit, kindness (freundlich).
 - (e) Schaft forms abstract feminines, chiefly from nouns de-

- noting persons: die Bürgerschaft, citizens (ber Bürger); die Dienerschaft, servants (ber Diener).
- (f) Ung forms abstract feminines, chiefly from verbs: die Erzählung, story (erzählen); die Rleidung, clothing (kleiden).
- 350. Adjectives are formed by the following suffixes: bar, en, haft, ig, ifth, lith, and sam.
 - (a) Bar forms adjectives from —
- (1) Nouns: dankbar, grateful (der Dank); ehrbar, honorable (die Ehre); furchtbar, terrible (die Furcht).
- (2) Verbs: brauchbar, usable (brauchen); egbar, eatable (essen); lesbar, legible (lesen).
- (b) En forms adjectives, usually of material, from nouns: eichen, oaken (die Siche); golden, golden (das Gold).
 - (c) Saft forms adjectives from —
- (1) Nouns: efelhaft, disgusting (ber Efel); meisterhaft, masterful (ber Meister); fündhaft, sinful (bie Sünde).
- (2) Adjectives: boshaft, malicious (böfe, bad); frankhaft, sickly (frank); wahrhaft, real (wahr, true).
- (d) Ig forms adjectives, chiefly from nouns: mutig, courageous (der Mut); sonnig, sunny (die Sonne).
- (e) Jich forms adjectives, chiefly from proper nouns: ameristanisch, American (der Amerikaner); französisch, French (der Franzose); homerich, Homeric (der Homer).
 - (f) Rich forms adjectives from —
- (1) Nouns: glücklich, happy (bas Glück); menschlich, human (ber Mensch); täglich, daily (ber Tag).
- (2) Adjectives: fröhlich, joyous (froh); länglich, lengthy (lang); rötlich, reddish (rot).

- (3) Verbs: begreiflich, comprehensible (begreifen): fraglich, questionable (fragen); häßlich, hateful, ugly (hassen).
 - (g) Sam forms adjectives from -
- (1) Nouns: furchtsam, timid (die Furcht); gewaltsam, violent (die Gewalt); sittsam, modest (die Sitte, usage).
- (2) Verbs: biegsam, pliable (biegen); gehorsam, obedient (gehorchen); strebsam, assiduous (streben, to strive).
- 351. Verbs are formed by the following suffixes: en, ern, ieren, and igen.
 - (a) En forms verbs from —
- (1) Nouns: bürsten, to brush (die Bürste); fischen, to fish (der Fisch); füssen, to kiss (der Kuß).
- (2) Adjectives: härten, to harden (hart); plätten, to iron flat (platt, flat); stärken, to strengthen (stark).
- (3) Roots of other verbs: brängen, to crowd (bringen, to force one's way); (fällen), to fell (fallen).
- (b) Ern forms verbs, chiefly from adjectives. With comparatives it may be considered as simply an added to the comparative root. A prefix—commonly vers—often precedes the root: verbessern, to correct (besser); verlängern, to prolong (länger); vergrößern, to enlarge (groß).
- (c) Jeren forms verbs, chiefly from foreign words: amii= sieren, to entertain (Fr. amuser); regieren, to rule (Lat. regere).
 - (d) Jgen forms verbs from —
- (1) Nouns: hulbigen, to do homage (bie Huld, grace); freuzigen, to crucify (bas Kreuz); steinigen, to stone (ber Stein).
- (2) Adjectives (when an adjective has the ending ig, this class of verbs is not to be distinguished from that in (a)): befeftigen, to fasten (feft); befchönigen, to beautify (fchön).

352. German Compounds always have the basic word last: blaugrün, bluish green; grünblau, greenish blue. They may be any part of speech (nouns take their gender from the last element): bas Tischbein (noun), table leg; basselbe (pronoun), the same; hellblau (adjective), light blue; mahrsagen (verb), to prophesy; bergan (adverb), up hill; anstatt (preposition), instead of; nachbem (conjunction), after; postausend (interjection), Great Scott! But most compounds are (1) Nouns, (2) Adjectives, and (3) Verbs.

353. Compound Nouns may be formed from -

- (a) Nouns: das Federbett, feather bed; der Fingerhut, thimble; das Goldstück, gold piece; die Hauptstadt, capital city.
- (b) Pronouns, usually selbst: ber Selbstmord, suicide; ber Selbstlaut, vowel; die Selbstsucht, selsishness.
- (c) Adjectives: der Blödsinn, nonsense; das Deutschland, Germany; die Großmutter, grandmother.
 - (d) Verbs: das Fahrrad, bicycle; die Füllfeder, fountain pen.
 - (e) Adverbs: die Außenseite, outside; das Ebenbild, image.
 - (f) Prepositions: das Mitleid, pity; die Nachwelt, posterity.

354. Compound Adjectives may be formed from -

- (a) Nouns: bilbschön, pretty as a picture; seekrank, seasick; silberhell, clear as crystal.
- (b) Adjectives: bittersüß, bitter sweet; gutmütig, good natured; grünblau, greenish blue.
- (c) Verbs: bemerkenswert, worthy of note; lernbegierig, eager to learn; merkwürdig, remarkable.
- (d) Prepositions: aufrecht, upright; außerordentlich, extraordinary; vorlaut, forward, pert.

355. Compound Verbs may be formed from -

- (a) Nouns: haushalten, to keep house; stattfinden, to take place; teilnehmen, to take part.
- (b) Adjectives: großtun, to swagger; liebäugeln, to ogle; vollenden, to finish.
- (c) Adverbs: hingehen, to go away; wiederkommen, to come again; zurückkehren, to turn back.
- (d) Prepositions: anziehen, to put on; mitgehen, to go along with; nachsiten, to stay after school.
- 356. Derivations through the Latin. Latin students may like to compare certain English words, derived from Latin, with their German synonyms. German equivalents for many English words may be found by translating the Latin word, part by part, into German. A few illustrations are given below; students should be on the watch for others.
 - (a) Nouns:

Attraction, die Anziehung (ad, an + trahere, ziehen). Eruption, der Ausbruch (e, aus + rumpere, brechen).

(b) Adjectives:

Retrograde, rückgängig (retro, rück + gradi, gehen). Subsequent, nachfolgend (sub, nach + sequi, folgen).

(c) Verbs:

Expel, austreiben (ex, aus + pellere, treiben). Prescribe, vorschrieben (prae, vor + scribere, schreiben). Survive, überseben (super, über + vivere, seben).

GRIMM'S LAW

357. Jacob Grimm was one of the greatest scholars Germany ever produced. He is best known for the discovery or the

working out of *Grimm's Law*. In all its details this law is too complex for any but advanced students, but many parts of it may be readily understood by beginners. In brief it is the *law of cognates* or of related words.

- 358. The German Language, as it is spoken and written to-day, is a growth or development from an older tongue, commonly called Germanic. From the Germanic language grew in succession Old High German (——1100), Middle High German (1100-1350), and New High German, which is usually dated from the time of Martin Luther (1483-1546). During this evolution certain changes of sounds took place, somewhat like those that have taken place in English from the old Anglo-Saxon through Chaucer and Shakspere down to the present time.
- 359. Cognates. English, as well as German, comes from the old Germanic language, so we have many words in English like corresponding German words. These similar words are called *cognates*. (a) Some are identical in spelling but different in sound; (b) some are identical in sound but different in spelling; (c) others differ in both sound and spelling and even in meaning, but their relation to each other can easily be seen.
- (a) Similar spellings are seen in such words as ber Arm, ber Ball, die Dame, der Finger, das Gold, die Hand, das Horn, das Land, der Name, der Plan, der Sack, der Wind. Most of these have been given in the vocabularies of this book.
- (b) Similar sounds, but with different spelling, are seen in such words as ber Bär, das Boot, der Busch, das Eis, das Glas, das Haus, der Mann, die Maus, die Milch, der Müller, der Sommer, der Stuhl.

- (c) Other cognates, differing in both sound and spelling, are such words as das Brot, der Bruder, die Feder, das Feuer, der Garten, der Hund, der Hut, die Mutter, das Papier, das Salz, die Schule, der Sohn, die Suppe, der Tee, der Bater, der Wagen.
- 360. Statement of the Law. From these examples we see that many consonants are just the same in both German and English. These are in general the liquids $(\mathbf{I}, \mathbf{m}, \mathbf{n}, \mathbf{r})$, and the letters \mathbf{b} , \mathbf{f} , \mathbf{g} , \mathbf{f} , \mathbf{h} , and \mathbf{f} , when these latter come at the beginning of a word.

But many consonants are different in English and in German, although certain ones in English correspond regularly to the same ones in German. Jacob Grimm formulated the law showing just how they correspond. In general:—

- (1) English d is German t: der Tag, gut, alt, das Bett, das Brot.
 - (2) English th is German b: bas, bies, brei, ber Dorn.
 - (3) English v is German b; haben, leben, geben, bas Silber.
 - (4) English k is German ch: das Buch, machen, die Milch.
- (5) English p is German pf or f: der Pfad, die Pflanze, das Pfund, hoffen, reif.
 - (6) English t is German f or si: heiß, aus, essen.
- ¹ Footnote to teachers. The statements here given make no distinction between the first and second sound-shifts, nor between the formulations of Grimm, Verner, and other philologists. They merely attempt to give pupils an idea of the relation of the two languages, making no pretence to scientific, philological completeness.

GERMAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

91

A'bend, ber, des -8, die -e, evening; written without a capital in adverbial expressions like ge'stern a'bend, heu'te abend, mor'gen abend.

A'bendson'nenschien, ber, bes -8, evening sunshine.

A'bendwol'fe, die, die -n, evening cloud.

a'ber, conjunction, followed by the normal order, but.

ad, excl., oh, ah; as noun, das Ad, alas; Weh und Ad, (the saying of) Alas and alack!

acht, eight.

acht'mal, eight times.

acht'zehnhun'dertsie'bennndnenn'= zig, 1897.

ähn'liá, adj., like, resembling, similar, preceded by the dative.

Ah're, die, die -n, ear (of corn).

all, all; for special uses, see § 124, b and § 162, a.

allein' (e), alone; Wahre Größe hat allein, wer, etc., only he who.

allerhärtst', hardest of all.

all'zeit, always.

als, conjunction, referring to past time, when, as; als ob, as if; correlative, as; after a comparative, than. al'io, so, then (never also).

alt, äl'ter, äl'test, old; as a noun, ber Alte, bes –n, bie –n, old person, old man.

am, an dem; with the superl., § 212, b.

a'men', excl., amen.

Amē'rifa, das, des -s, America.

amüsierren sid, sid, amüsierre, sid, amüsierr' (haben), to have a good time.

an, prep. with dat. or acc., at, by, near, to; reich an, rich in; benfen an, to think of; also separable prefix as in an'fangen.

An'beginn, der, des -8, beginning; bom Anbeginn, from the very first.

an'ber, other, different, as distinguished from noth (ein), other, in the sense of more.

An'bersiein, das, being different, difference, peculiarity.

an'derthalb, one and a half.

An'fang, ber, bes -(e)s, die Anfänge, beginning.

an'faugen, fing an', an'gefangen (haben), er f\u00e4ngt an, to begin, commence.

an'gefaugen, see an'fangen.

an'getommen, see an'fommen.

an'genehm, agreeable, pleasant to, preceded by the dative.

an'tam, see an'tommen.

an'fommen, fam an', an'gefommen (fein), to arrive; at, in or an with the dative; bas fommt barauf an, that depends.

an'mutig, graceful.

An'na, die, proper name, Anna.

An'spruch, ber, bes -(e)8, bie Anssprüche, claim; in Anspruch nehsmen, lay claim to.

auftatt', prep. with gen., instead of; followed by in with the infinitive in German, where English has a verbal in -ing.

an'anfangen, see an'fangen.

An'zug, der, des -(e)s, die An'züge, suit (of clothes).

Ap'fel, ber, bes -8, die ", 'apple.

Ar'beit, bie, bie -en, work, in the sense of labor as distinguished from bas Bert, work, in the sense of the result or product of labor.

ar'beiten, reg. (haben), to work. arm, adj., poor.

Arm, der, des -(e)s, die -e, arm. ag, ate, see effen.

and, also, too.

Au(e), bie, bie -(e)n, meadow, pasture.

anf, prep. with dat. or acc., on, upon, onto; auf beutsch, in German; auf bie Post, to the post-office; auf bem Lande, in the country; warten auf, with acc., to wait for; with the superl., aufs höchste, in the highest possible way; also separable prestx as in auf'hören, auf'machen, auf's stehen, etc.

Auf'gabe, bie, bie -n, exercise, assignment, task, problem.

aushalten

auf'gegangen, see auf'gehen.

anf'gehen, ging auf', auf'gegangen (sein), to go up, rise, arise; of love, die Liebe (cf. p. 137), to dawn.

auf'gehört, see auf'hören.

auf'gelefen, see auf'lefen.

anf'gestanden, see auf'stehen.

auf'hören, reg., sep. (haben), to stop, followed in German by the infinitive with zu, where English has the verbal in -ing.

anf'lefen, las auf', auf'gelefen (haben), er liest auf, to gather up, pick up, glean.

auf'maden, reg., sep. (haben), to open.

auf'stehen, stand auf', auf'gestanden (sein), to rise, get up, stand up.

auf'zumachen, see aufmachen.

An'ge, das, des -s, die -n, eye.

Au'genblid, der, des -8, die -e, moment.

Äug'lein, das, des —s, die —, little eye.

August', ber, (the month) August; Au'gust, ber, Augustus, August, the man's name.

ans, prep. with dat., out of, from out, from, of; ein Märchen aus alten Zeiten, a tale of olden times; also separable prefix as in aus'halten, aus'sehen, aus'sprechen, aus'spannen, etc.

and'gefprocen, see ans'fprechen. aus'halten, hielt aus', aus'gehalten

(haben), er hält aus', to bear, suffer, endure, "stand."

ans'fah, see aus'fehen.

ans'feben, fah aus', aus'gefehen (haben), er fieht aus', to look, appear; das Aussehen, des -s, appearance, look, looks.

au'ferhalb, prep. with gen., out-

aus'ipannen, reg., sep. (haben), to spread out.

Aus'iprache, die, die -n, pronunciation, accent, in the sense of a good German accent.

ans'ipreden. iprad aus', aus'geiprochen (haben), er fpricht aus', to pronounce.

ans'aufpreden, see aus'ipreden.

• 93

Ba'de, die, die -n, cheek. Bab, bas, bes -s, bie "er, bath. Bahn, die, die -en, way, road. bald(e), adv., soon; bald... bald, now . . . now; at one time . . . then again. Ball, der, des -s, die "e, ball. Balla'be, bie, bie -n, ballad. Band, ber, bes -8, die "e, volume. ban'gen, reg. (haben), usually impers. with dat., es bangt mir, to be afraid; langen und bangen, to be longing and fearing. Bant, die, die ze, bench. Barmher'zigkeit, die, mercy.

Bau'erntracht, die, die -en, peasants' costume or dress.

Baum, ber, bes -8, die Baume, tree.

Bed'fiein, Ludwig, proper name, a German poet.

bedeu'ten, reg., insep. (haben), to mean (of things) as contrasted with meinen, to mean (of per-80ns).

bedrän'gen, reg., insep. (haben), to oppress; bedrängt', oppressed, afflicted.

befin'ben fich, fich befand', fich befun'= den (haben), to be, to do (in health); Wie befinden Gie fich? How do you do? How are you?

begeg'nen, reg., insep. (fein), followed by the dative, to meet by chance, happen upon, run across.

begin'nen, begann', begon'nen (ha= ben), to begin, commence.

beglü'den, reg., insep. (haben), to make happy; beglüdt, happy. begon'neu, see begin'nen.

begrü'fen, reg., insep. (haben), to

bei. prep. with dat., near, close to, by; at the house of.

bei'de, both, two; used after the article or adjective that precedes it in English: both the boys, die beiben Anaben.

Bein, das, des -s, die -e, leg. bei'gen, big, gebif'sen (haben), to bite.

betom'men, betam', betom'men (ha= ben), to get, secure, procure.

bel'len, reg. (haben), to bark. bereit', ready, prepared.

berei'ten, reg., insep. (haben), to prepare.

Berg, ber, bes -(e)s, bie -e, mountain.

beschei'den, beschied', beschie'den (haben), to allot, assign, apportion.

befifer, better, comparative of gut. best, superlative of gut; am besten, best.

bestim'men, reg., insep. (haben), to decide, decree, settle.

Besuch', der, des -(e)8, die -e, visit; visitor.

befu'chen, reg., insep. (haben), to visit; of school, to attend.

betrü'ben, reg., insep. (haben), to grieve, afflict, depress.

Bett, bas, bes -(e)s, die -en, bed; au Bett, to bed.

bie'gen sich, reg. (haben), to bend (itself); to sway, wave.

Bie'ne, die, die -n, bee.

Bilb, bas, bes -(e)s, bie -er, picture. bil'ben, reg. (haben), to form, fashion, shape; sich bilben, to form itself, to develop.

Billett', bas, bes -s, bie -e (pronounced bilyet'), ticket.

bin, am, see fein.

bis, prep. with acc., till, until; conjunction with dependent order, till, until.

bift, art, are, see sein.

bit'te, see bit'ten.

bit'ten, bat, gebe'ten (haben), to beg, ask; for, um with the acc.; (id) bitte, please; you're welcome.

bla'fen, blies, gebla'fen (haben), er bläft, to blow; of the watchman (Wächter), to sound his horn. Blatt, das, des -(e)s, die zer, leaf. blau, blue.

blei'ben, blieb, geblie'ben (fein), to stay, remain.

bli'den, reg. (haben), to look, glance; see also niederbliden.

blit'sen, reg. (haben), to flash, gleam, sparkle.

blii'hen, reg. (haben), to bloom, blossom; to flourish.

Blüm'den, das, des -s, die —, little flower, posy.

Blu'me, die, die -n, flower.

Blii'tenschimmer, ber, bes -8, bie --, gleam, glitter, or splendor of blossoms.

Bo'den, der, des -8, die —, floor.

Boot, das, des -(e)s, die -e, boat.

bor'gen, reg. (haben), to borrow. Börne, proper name, a German author.

brach, see brechen.

brau'den, reg. (haben), to need. braun, brown.

bre'den, brach, gebro'chen (haben), er bricht, to break.

breit, broad, wide.

Brenta'no, proper name, a German poet.

Brief, der, des -(e)s, die -e, letter, epistle.

brin'gen, brach'te, gebracht' (haben), to bring.

Brot, das, des -(e)s, die -e, bread.

Bru'der, der, des -8, die ", brother. Bud, das, des -(e)s, die "er,

book. Buch'ftabe, ber, bes -ns, die -n, lot-

Bud'stabe, ber, bes -us, die -u, letter (of the alphabet).

buchstabie'ren, buchstabier'te, buchstabiert' (haben), to spell.
Burg, die, die –en, castle, fortress.
Buich, der, des –es, die ze, bush.

Buf'se, proper name, a German poet.

But'ter, die, butter.

Q

Carl, der; proper name; Charles, Carl.

Charat'ter, der, des -8, die Charat= te're, character.

Cle'meus, ber, proper name, Clement.

D

ba, adv., there, in that place; conjunction usually giving a reason, as.

babei', at the same time, too.
bage'gen, against it'; etwas bagegen
haben, to have any objections.

baher', along.

bahin', along, thither.

Dahn, proper name, a German poet.

Da'me, bie, die -n, lady.

bamit', with it.

bam'mern, reg. (haben), to grow dark or dusk.

Dant, der, des -(e)s, thanks.

ban'fen, reg. (haben), with dat., to thank; (id) bante, thank you.

bann, then, next.

bar, adv. and sep. prefix, usually not to be translated. It adds a suggestion of definite direction to a verb. See barführen. baran', of it.

baranf', upon it, on it; bas fommt barauf an, that depends.

baraus', out of it.

barf, barfft, see dürfen.

bar'führen, reg., sep. (haben), to lead along or away.

barin', in it.

barü'ber, about it, over it.

barum', then, therefore.

bas, see ber, article and demonstrative.

daß, conjunction followed by the dependent order, that.

basfel'be, see berfel'be.

Da'vid, ber, proper name, David. banon', of it, from it, from there, away.

be'den, reg. (haben), to cover; of a table, to set.

bein, poss. adj., your, thy; poss. pron., yours, thine.

dem, see der.

den, see ber.

de'nen, dat. plu. of rel., ber.

ben'fen, bach'te, gedacht' (haben), to think; of, an with acc.

beau, interrogative particle, usually omitted in translation; conjunction followed by the normal order, for.

ber, bie, bas, gen., bes, ber, bes, article, the; rel. pron., gen., bessen, bessen, bessen, bessen, bessen, that; demonstr. pron., that, the one.

berfel'be, biefel'be, basfel'be, gen., besfel'ben, berfel'ben, besfel'ben, the same. berweil', conjunction followed by the dependent order, while.

bes, see ber.

bef'sen, gen. of the relative, ber or welcher.

befits, correlative of comparison with je: je . . . befts, the . . . the. bentiti, adj., German; auf bentiti, in German.

Deutsch, das, des -en, the German language; er spricht Deutsch, he speaks German.

Deutsche, ber, bes -n, die -n, German man; plu., the Germans.

Deutsch'land, das, des -8, Germany. Dezem'ber, der, des -8, December. bich, acc. of du.

Dich'ter, ber, bes -8, bie -, poet. bie, see ber.

Diens'tag, der, des -8, Tuesday. diesel'be, see derselbe.

bie'fer, bie'fe, bie'fes, or bies, this; plu., these.

bies'feits, prep. with gen., on this side of.

Ding, bas, bes -(e)s, bie -e, thing. bir, dat. of bu.

both, adv., after all, still, yet, but; idiomatic particle, pray; yes; is it? (§ 296.)

Don'nerstag, ber, bes -8, Thursday. Dorf, bas, bes -(e)8, bie "er, village. Dorn, ber, bes -8, bie -en, thorn. bort, there, over there, yonder.

brau'fen, outside, out of doors, used with verbs of rest.

brei, three.

brei'undeinhalb', three and a half. brei'undvier'zig, forty-three. Dre'ves, proper name, a German poet.

britt, third.

brit'tens, thirdly, in the third place. brü'ber, for barü'ber, over it, about it.

brum, for darum', then, therefore. bn, beiner, bir, bich, you, thou. bulb'sam, patient.

bumm, stupid.

bun'feln, reg. (haben), impersonal with e8, to grow dark.

durch, prep. with acc., through.

burchblät'tern, reg., insep. (haben), to run through (of a book).

durch'ziehen, zog durch', durch'gezogen (sein), to go through.

bür'fen, burf'te, geburft' or bür'fen (haben), er barf, to be permitted, be allowed, may.

durf'ten, see dürfen. dur'ftig, thirsty.

Œ:

ē'ben, just; ja, eben, yes, that's so. Eb'ner-Efch'enbach, proper name, a German poet.

ē'bel, declined ebler, eble, ebles; compared ebel, ebler, ebelft, noble. e'he, conjunction followed by the dependent order, before.

Ch're, die, die -n, honor.

eh'ren, reg. (haben), to honor.

Ei, bas, bes -(e)s, bie -er, egg. ei'gen, declined eig(e)ner, eig(e)ne, eig(e)nes, own, one's own.

Gi'le, die, haste.

ein, indef. art., a, an; numeral (eins), one; sep. prefix as in ein-

fallen, einhüllen, einschenken, einsichlafen, etc.

einer[ei', of one and the same kind; bas ift mir einer[ei, it's all the same to me, I don't care.

ein'fallen, fiel ein', ein'gefallen (fein), es fällt mir ein, with the dat., to occur to; es fällt mir nicht ein, it doesn't occur to me, I should not think of (such a thing).

einher', sep. prefix usually implying stateliness, along, forth.

einher'wallen, reg., sep. (haben), to float along.

ein'hüllen, reg., sep. (haben), to wrap up, envelop.

ei'nig, united; einige, plu., some; einige Zeit, some time.

ein'mal, once; once upon a time.

ein'shenten, reg., sep. (haben), to fill up (of a glass).

ein'schlafen, schlief ein', ein'geschlafen (sein), to go to sleep.

einft, once upon a time, one day. elf, eleven.

El'tern, die (plu.), parents.

empfahn', poetic for empfangen.

empfau'gen, empfing', empfan'gen (haben), er empfängt', to receive. En'de, bas, bes -s, bie -n, end.

end'lich, finally.

Gu'gel, der, bes -8, die --, angel.

eng'lisch, adj., English; auf englisch, in Englisch.

Eng'lisch, das, des -en, the English language.

Ens'lin, proper name, a German poet.

entbie'ten, entbot', entbo'ten (haben), to summon away.

entbo'ten, see entbie'ten.

enthal'ten, enthielt', enthal'ten (haben), es enthält', to hold, contain.

enthielt', see enthal'ten.

entichlie'fen, entichlog', entichlof'sen (haben), to decide.

entichlog'nes, see entichlie'gen.

entschul'digen, entschul'digte, entschul'digt (haben), to excuse.

entste'hen, entstanb', entstan'ben (sein), to come into being, begin, arise, break out.

ent'weder, either; entweder . . . oder, either . . . or.

er, fie, es, he, she, it.

erbit'ten, erbat', erbe'ten (haben), to obtain by entreaty, to get by asking.

Er'de, die, der —, earth; auf Erden (old weak dative), on earth.

Er'benrunb, ba8, be8 -e8, bie -e, face of the earth, terrestrial globe.

erfle'hen, reg., insep. (haben), to get by pleading.

erge'ben, ergab', erge'ben (haben), er ergibt', to deliver up, yield to; past part., ergeben, devoted, attached.

ergrei'fen, ergriff', ergrif'fen, to grasp, seize; ergreift es mit wilbem Beh, is seized with a wild yearning (lit., woe).

erhal'ten, erhielt', erhal'ten (haben), er erhält', to keep; to receive.

erhielt', see erhal'ten.

erin'nern, reg., insep. (haben), to

remind; sich erinnern with the genitive, to remember.

erfamp'fen, reg., insep. (haben), to get by fighting.

erfaunt', see erfen'nen.

erfen'uen, erfann'te, erfannt' (haben), to recognize.

erflä'ren, reg., insep. (haben), to explain.

erlau'ben, reg., insep. (haben), with dative, to allow, permit.

erlö'fen, reg., insep. (haben), to deliver, ransom, redeem.

ernft'lid, earnest(ly), serious(ly). erqui'den, reg., insep. (haben), refresh, restore.

errei'den, reg., insep. (haben), to reach.

errin'gen, errang', errun'gen (haben), to obtain by striving.

errun'gen, see errin'gen.

erft, adv., for the first time, first; just, only; not till.

er'ftens, adv., in the first place, firstly.

erfter, erfte, erftes, adj., first.

erstrei'ten, erstritt', erstrit'ten (haben), to get by fighting.

erftrit'ten, see erftrei'ten.

erwa'chen, reg., insep. (sein), to awaken, wake up (neuter).

erwäh'len, reg., insep. (haben), to choose.

erwar'ten, reg., insep. (haben), to await, expect.

erwi'dern, reg., insep. (haben), to repay, requite, render in return.

erzäh'len, reg., insep. (haben), to relate, tell.

es, it; there (is or are); with sein and a plural predicate attribute, they, those. See § 155.

ef'fen, aß, gegef'sen (haben), er ißt, to eat.

et'was, something, anything; a following adjective must be neuter and is capitalized, except ander: etwas Gutes, etwas anderes.

end, dat. and acc. of ihr, you. eu'er, your.

Evange'lium, das, des -s, die Evange'lien, gospel.

e'wig, adj., eternal; adv., forever. G'wigfeit, bie, eternity; in Ewigleit, forever and ever.

F

Fa'ben, der, des -8, die Fäden, thread.

fah'ren, fuhr, gefah'ren (fein), er fährt, to drive, ride, go (by train); see also fort'fahren.

fal'len, fiel, gefal'len (sein), er fällt, to fall; see also ein'fallen.

Fal'lerslebeu, proper name, a German poet.

fällt, see fal'len and ein'fallen.

falfd, false; in the class room, wrong.

Famt'lie, die, die -n (four syllables), family.

fand, fan'den, see fin'den.

fan'gen, fing, gefan'gen (haben), er fängt, to catch, seize; see also an fangen.

Fe'bruar, der, des -8, February.

Fe'ber, die, die -n, pen.

feh'len, reg. (haben), to lack, with

the dative of the person who lacks and the subject of the thing lacked: mir fehlt Brot, I lack bread.

Feh'ler, der, des -8, die ---, mistake, error.

fei'erlich, festive; stately, solemn. Feind, ber, bes—(e)\$, bie—e, enemy. Feld, bas, bes—(e)\$, bie—er, field. Fe'lig, ber, proper name, Felix. Fel'fenrist, bas, bes—(e)\$, bie—e, rocky reef.

Feu'ster, bas, bes -s, bie --, window. Fer'ne, bie, distance, remoteness; in ber Ferne, far away, at a dis-

tance.

fer'tig, ready; through, finished. Fest'gesang, ber, bes –(e)s, bie Festgesänge, sestal song, joyous music. Fench'tersseben, proper name, a German poet.

Feu'er, das, des -8, die —, fire. fin'den, fand, gefun'den (haben), to find.

fing, fin'gen, see fan'gen. Fin'ger, ber, bes -8, bie —, finger. fin'fter, gloomy, dark. Fisch, ber, bes -e8, bie -e, fish.

Fi'fmer, der, des —s, die —, fisherman, fisher.

Fi'scherknabe, ber, bes -n, die -n, fisher lad or boy.

flech'ten, flocht, gefloch'ten (haben), er flicht, to weave, twine, braid. Fleisch, das, des —es, die —e, meat. fleisch, superl., fleißigst, industrious, diligent; fleißig sernen, to study hard.

Flie'ge, die, bie -n, fly.

hie'gen, flog, geflogen (sein), to fly. flie'sen, floß, geflos'sen (sein), to flow.

flog, flö'ge, see flie'gen.

Flo'te, die, die -n, flute.

flö'ten, reg. (haben), to play the flute; das Flöten, playing on the flute.

Flü'gel, der, des -8, die --, wing. Flüß, der, des Flusses, die Flüsse, river.

flü'stern, reg. (haben), to whisper. flü'sternd, see flüstern.

Fint, die, die -en, flood, stream; water.

fol'gen, reg. (sein), with dat., to follow.

fort'fahren, fuhr fort', fort'gefahren (haben), er fährt fort', to continue; followed in German by an infinitive with zu, where English has either an infinitive or a verbal in -ing.

fort'gefahren, see fort'fahren.

fra'gen, reg. (haben), to ask (a question), as distinguished from bitten, to ask (a favor); reflexive impersonal, es fragt fich, it is a question.

Frau, die, die -en, woman; wife; Mrs.

frei, free(ly).

Frei'tag, ber, bes -8, Friday.

fremb, strange, a stranger to, preceded by dat.

Fren'be, bie, bie -n, joy, happiness; vor lauter Freud', for very joy, for pure joy.

freub'voll, joyous, happy.

fren'en fich, reg. (haben), to be glad; impersonal, es freut mich, I am glad.

Frend, ber, bes -(e)s, bie -e, friend. freund'lid, adj., kind, friendly; adv., in a friendly way.

Frie'be, ber, bes -ns, bie -n, peace. Frie'benswolfe, bie, bie -n, cloud of peace.

Fried'rich, der, proper name, Frederick.

friid, fresh.

Frit, ber, proper name, Fred, Fritz. fröh'lich, joyous, joyful, merry.

früh, compar., früher, early, soon; morgen früh, to-morrow morning.

Früh'lingsahnung, bie, premonition of spring, feeling that spring is in the air.

Früh'lingslied, das, des -(e)s, die -er, spring song.

fü'gen, reg. (haben), to fit together, join; see also zufügen.

fuhr, fuh'ren, see fahren and fortfahren.

füh'ren, reg. (haben), to lead; take, bring.

Ful'da, proper name, a German poet.

fünf, five.

fun'feln, reg. (haben), to sparkle, gleam.

für, prep, with acc., for.

Furth, bie, fear, terror, dread.

fürch'ten, reg. (haben), to fear; sich fürchten vor with dat., to be afraid of.

Fuß, ber, bes -es, die Füße, foot.

(3)

gab, ga ben, see geben.

Ga'bel, die, die -n, fork.

ganz, whole, entire, all; zu jedem ganzen Wert, for every complete work; ein Ganzes, a whole.

gar, in fact, really; at all.

Gar'ten, ber, bes -8, bie Garten, garden.

ge'ben, gab, gege'ben (haben), er gibt, to give; es gibt, there is; Was gibt's? What's up? gebe'ten, asked; see bitten. geblie'ben, stayed; see blei'ben.

geborgt', borrowed; see bor'gen. gebracht', brought; given, see brin'gen.

Gedan'fe, der, des -ns, die -n, thought.

gedan'fenvoll, pensive.

gedanft', thanked; see ban'ten.

gedect', covered; of tables, set; see be'den.

gebei'h(e)n, gebieh, gebie'hen (fein), to increase, grow, develop, thrive, flourish.

Gedicht', das, des -(e)s, die -e, poem.

gedul'dig, patient(ly).

gefal'len, fallen; see fal'len.

gefal'len, gefiel', gefal'len (haben), er gefällt', with dat., to please.

Gefähr'te, ber, bes -n, bie -n, companion, comrade.

gefan'gen, caught; see fan'gen. gefehlt', lacked; see feh'len.

Gefie'der, das, des -s, feathers, plumage.

worth.

11

geflo'gen, flown; fam geflo'gen, came flying; see flie'gen. gefun'den, found ; see fin'den. gegan'gen, gone; see ge'hen. gege'ben, given; see ge'ben. ge'gen, prep. with acc., against, toward, to. Ge'genteil, das, des -s, contrary. gegef'fen, eaten; see ef'fen. geglaubt', believed, thought; see alau'ben. gehabt', had; see ha'ben. gehei'liget, hallowed; see hei'ligen. Geheiß', das, des -es, command, order. ge'hen, ging, gegan'gen (fein), to go; Wie geht es Ihnen? How goes it? How are you? See also berum'aeben, bin'aeben, log'geben, fpagie'ren geben. gehol'fen, helped; see hel'fen. gehört', heard; see hö'ren. gehö'ren, reg., insep. (haben), with dat., to belong to; gehört ein ganzer Mann, requires or is required by. geht, 3d sing. indic. or 2d plu. imperative; see ge'hen. gefanft', bought; see fau'fen. gefom'men, come; see fom'men. gefüßt', kissed; see füf'fen. Geld, bas, bes -(e)s, bie -er, monev. gelegt', laid; see le'gen. gele'fen, read ; see le'fen. gelie'hen, lent; see lei'hen. gelind'(e), soft(ly), mild(ly), gently, gentle. gelin'gen, gelang', gelun'gen (fein), e8 gelingt mir, impers. with dat., to succeed.
gelobt', praised; see lo'ben.

gel'ten, galt, gegol'ten (haben), es gilt, with dat., to be for, be intended for; with acc., to be

gelun'gen, succeeded; see gelin'gen. gemacht', made; see ma'chen.

Gemahl', ber, bes -8, die -e, husband.

Gemahl', das, des -s, obsolete and poetic, consort, spouse.

gemußt', been obliged to; see müs's sen.

genäht', sewed; see nä'hen. genom'men, taken; see neh'men.

genug, enough.

genü'gen, reg., insep. (haben), to suffice, be enough; bas genügt, that is sufficient, that will do. gera'be, adj., straight; adv., just,

gera'be, adj., straight; adv., just, exactly.

gern, compar., lieber, superl., am liebsten, gladly; usually translated to like to: ich singe gern, I like to sing.

gefagt', said; see sa'gen.

geichafft', worked; see ichaf'fen.

gefche'hen, geschah', gesche'hen (sein), es geschieht', impers. with dat., to happen.

Geschich'te, die, die -n, story; history.

geschickt', sent; clever, dexterous; see schi'cken.

Geschmei'de, das, des -s, die -, jewelry.

gefdrie'ben, written; see fdrei'ben.

gefe'hen, seen; see fe'hen. gefett', set; see fet'gen. gefpon'nen, spun ; see fpin'nen. gefpro'den, spoken; see fpre'den. Sefta'de, bas, bes -s, bank, shore, beach. geftand', see gefte'hen. Geftand'niß, bas, bes Geftanb'niffes, die Geständ'nisse, confession, avowal. geftedt', put, see fte'den. gefte'hen, geftanb', geftan'den (ha= ben), to confess, admit. ge'ftern, adv., yesterday; a following noun is written as an adverb without a capital, ge'ftern mor'= gen, ge'ftern a'benb. Ge'ftern, das, noun, (the) yestergeftor'ben, died; see fter'ben. getan', done; see tun. getrennt', separated; see tren'nen. gewal'tig, powerful, mighty. gewe'fen, been; see fein. gewin'nen, gewann'. aewon'nen (haben), to win. gewollt', wanted; see wol'len. gewon'nen, won, see gewin'nen. gewor'den, become, got; 8ee wer'ben. gewußt', known; see mif'fen. gezeigt', shown ; see zei'gen. gezo'gen, with haben, drawn; with fein, gone ; see zie'hen. gib, imperative of ge'ben, give. gibt, see geben; es gibt, there is. gie'gen, gog, gegof'fen (haben), to pour ; see also hinein'gießen. gilt, see gel'ten.

ging, see ge'hen. Gip'fel, ber, bes -8, bie -, top, summit. glan'zen, reg. (haben), to gleam, shine, sparkle. Glas, bas, bes Glafes, bie Glafer, glass. glau'ben, reg. (haben), to think; to believe, with dat. of person believed, but with acc. if the object is a thing. gleich, adj., preceded by dat., like, alike, equal, the same; adv., at once. gleich'fommen, fam gleich', gleich'= gefommen (fein), with dat., to equal. Glüd, das, des -(e)s, happiness, fortune, luck. glud'lid, superl., glud'lidift, happy, fortunate. Glut, bie, bie -en, heat, glow; ardor, passion. Goe'the, proper name, a German poet. **Gold**, bas, bes -(e)s, gold. golden, gold(e)nes, golden. gön'nen, reg. (haben), to grant willingly, not to begrudge. Gott, ber, bes -(e)s, bie er, God; god. Got'tesbote, ber, bes -n, die -n, divine messenger. Grab, das, des -(e)s, die eer, grave. Graf. der, des -en, die -en, count. Gramma'tit, bie, bie -en, grammar.

Gras, bas, bes Grafes, bie Grafer,

grass.

gran, gray.

groß, compar., grö'ßer, superl., größt, large, great, big.

Größe, die, greatness.

grau, green.

gut, adj., good; adv., well; as noun, Gutes, good; bas Gute, the good.

£

Saar, bas, bes -(e)s, bie -e, hair, used both in sing. and plu. in general sense of hair.

ha'ben, hat'te, gehabt' (haben), du hast, er hat, to have; often translated by English did.

Sa'geborn, ber, bes -8, bie -en, hawthorn; proper name, a German poet.

Sain, der, des -(e)8, die -e, grove. halb, adj., half; following the article: half a cup, eine halbe Tasse; halb elf, half past ten.

half, see hel'fen.

Balf'te, die, die -n, noun, half.

Sal'le, die, die -n, hall.

hal'ten, hielt, gehal'ten (haben), er hält, to hold, keep; hälten für with acc., to take for; see also aus'halten.

Sand, die, die "e, hand.

hau'gen, hing, gehan'gen (haben), er hängt, to hang.

haft, see ha'ben.

hat, hat'te, hat'te, see ha'ben.

Saud, ber, bes -(e)s, bie -e, breath.

Saupt, bas, bes -(e)s, bie Saup'ter, head.

Saus, bas, bes -es, bie Bau'fer,

house; zu Hause, at home; nach Hause, (to) home.

he'ben, hob, geho'ben (haben), to lift, raise.

hehr, august, majestic, sublime.

Sei'de, die, die -n, heath; old weak dative, Heiden in auf der Heiden; compare Erden.

Sei'delberg, bas, proper name, a German city.

Sei'denrös'lein, das, des -s. die -, heather rose, heath rose.

Sei'ue, proper name, a German poet.

heiß, hot.

hei'ğeu, hieß, gehei'ßen (haben), to be called, named; in translating, to be (translated); to bid, command: hieß auf jener Bahn bich giehn.

hei'ter, cheerful, jovial, merry.

Seld, ber, bes -en, die -en, hero.

hel'fen, half, geholfen (haben), er hilft, with dat., to help.

Seu'sel, proper name, a German poet.

her, adv., along; sep. prefix, denoting motion toward the speaker, but often not translated; hin und her, to and fro, hither and thither; see also herjagen, herjagen.

Herbst'lied, das, des -(e)s, die -er, autumn song.

Ser'be, bie, bie -n, flock, herd.

Ser'der, proper name, a German poet.

her'gefagt, recited, see her'sagen. her'jagen, reg., sep. (haben), to chase along, hunt. hernie'der, adv. and sep. prefix, down here or hither.

hernie'derschauen, reg., sep. (haben), to look down here.

Serr, ber, bes -n, bie Serren, gentleman; Sir; Mr.; referring to the Deity, Lord.

herr'lid, magnificent, grand, glorious, lordly.

Berr'lichfeit, die, glory.

her'sagen, reg., sep. (haben), to recite.

herum', adv. and sep. prefix, around, about.

herum'gehen, ging herum', herum's gegangen (fein), to go around or about.

Herz, bas, bes -ens, bie -en, heart. Hen, bas, bes -(e)s, hay.

heu't(e), to-day; this, heute morgen, this morning; a following noun is written as an adverb without a capital, heute abend.

hielt, held, see hal'ten.

hier, here.

hieß, see hei'fen.

Bil'fe, die, die -n, help.

Sim'mel, der, des -s, heaven; sky. him'melhod, high as the heavens.

him'melhom, high as the heavens. Sim'melshelt, bas, bes -(e)s, canopy of heaven.

himm'lifth, heavenly, divine.

hin, adv., along; sep. prefix, denoting motion away from the speaker, but often not translated; hin und her, hither and thither.

hinauf', adv. and sep. prefix, up, up there.

hinein', adv. and sep. prefix, in.

hinein'gießen, goß hinein', hinein's gegossen (haben), to pour in.

Hund

hin'gehen, ging hin', hin'gegangen (sein), to go (away or along).

hin'geftellt, see hin'ftellen.

hin'stellen, reg., sep. (haben), to place, put.

hin'ter, prep. with dat. or acc., behind.

hinun'ter, adv. and sep. prefix, down; bie Treppe hinunter, downstairs.

Hirt'(e), der, des -(e)n, die -(e)n, shepherd.

hoch, declined hoher, hohe, hohes; compared hoch, höher, höchft, high; aufs höchfte, in the highest possible way; ber Höchfte, des -n, the Highest, the Deity.

Sommut, ber, bes -(e)s, pride, haughtiness, arrogance.

hof'fen, reg. (haben), to hope.

Hoff mann von Fal'lersleben, proper name, a German poet.

höf'lich, polite(ly).

ho'he, see hoch.

Sö'he, die, die -n, height.

hö'her, higher, see hoch.

hold, favorable; kind, friendly.

ho'len, reg. (haben), to go and get, fetch.

hö'ren, reg. (haben), to hear; see also auf'hören, zu'hören.

Bu'gel, ber, bes -8, bie -, hill.

Suhn, das, des -s, die "er, chicken, fowl.

hül'len, reg. (haben), to wrap up, cover, hide; see also ein'hüllen.

Sund, ber, bes -(e)s, die -e, dog.

hung'rig, hungry. Hut, der, des -(e)s, die "e, hat. Hut'te, die, die -n, hut.

3

ich, meiner, mir, mich, I, me. 3bee', die, die 3be'en, idea. ihm, dat. sing. of er or e8, (to) him or it. ihn, acc. sing. of er, him. ih'nen, dat. plu. of fie, (to) them. Th'uen, dat. of Sie, (to) you. 3hr, poss: adj., your. ihr, poss. adj., her, their; pers. pron. 2d plu., you; dat. sing. of fie, (to) her. im, in bem. im'mer, always. im'merbar', forever (and ever). in, prep. with dat., in; with acc., into, to, in. indem', conjunction followed by dependent order, while, at the mo-

ment when (§ 285). ins, in bas.

ir'bifth, earthly.
ir'gend, any, some; at all; usually
making what it modifies more indefinite, irgend jemand, some one
or other.

ift, is ; see fein.

3

ja, yes; with an imperative, by all means; why, you know (§ 295). ja'gen, reg. (haben), to hunt, chase; see also her'jagen.

Jahr, das, des -(e)s, die -e, year.

Ja'nuar, der, des -s, January.

jauch'zen, reg. (haben), to shout with joy, exult. jauch'zend, exulting; see jauchzen; him'melhoch jauch'zend, in ecstatic exultation. je, adv., ever; correl., with comparatives, je . . . desto, the . . . the. je'ber, je'de, je'bes, every, each. ie'dermann, every one, everybody. jeboch', nevertheless, yet, but. ie'manh, some one, any one. Je'na, das, proper name, a city on the Saale river near Weimar, the site of a famous German university and the scene of one of Napoleon's victories. je'ner, je'ne, je'nes, that. jest, now. 30'hann, der, proper name, John. Ju'li, der, des –s, July. Ju'ling, der, proper name, Julius. jung, adj., young; as noun, ber Junge, des -n, die -n, young per-

son. Jung'frau, die, die -en, maid, virgin. Ju'ni, der, des -s, June.

P

Raf'fee, ber, bes -s, bie -s, coffee.
fahl, bare, bald, exposed.
Rahn, ber, bes -(e)s, bie "e, skiff,
 (row) boat.
fall, cold.
fam, fa'men, tä'me, see fom'men.
Ramerab', ber, bes -en, bie -en,
 comrade, companion.
Ramm, ber, bes -(e)s, bie "e, comb.
täm'men, reg. (haben), to comb.

Räm'merlein, das, des -s, die -, little chamber.

Rampf, ber, bes -(e)s, bie *e, combat, fight.

fämp/fen, to fight, combat.

fann, see fon'nen.

Rarl, ber, proper name, Charles, Carl.

fan'fen, reg. (haben), to buy, purchase.

faum, hardly.

fein, no, not a, not any, none.

ten'nen, fann'te, gefannt' (haben), to be acquainted with, know; fennen lernen, to meet.

Rie'sel, ber, bes -8, bie -, pebble. Rind, bas, bes -(e)8, bie -er, child.

Rir'de, die, die -n, church. Rla'ge, die, die -n, complaint,

plaint, lament. Rla'gelied, bas, bes -(e)s, bie -er,

lamentation, dirge.

fla'gen, reg. (haben), to complain, lament.

Rlang, ber, bes -(e)s, bie e, sound, clang.

flar, clear.

Riaf'fe, bie, bie –n, class; classroom. Rieid, bas, bes –(e)s, bie –er, dress; plu., clothes.

flein, small, little.

flin'gen, flang, geflun'gen (haben), to sound, resound; bem flingt es, he hears it (lit., it (re)sounds to him); as noun, bas Klingen, the sound, resounding.

Ana'be, ber, bes -n, bie -n, boy. Ina'den, reg. (haben), to crack. Anie', bas, bes -s, bie Ani'e, knee. Rnopf, der, des -(e)s, die e, button. Rnof'pe, die, die -n, bud.

tom'men, fam, gefom'men (sein), to come; spät fommen, to be (or come) late; gleich'fommen, with dat., to equal; see also an'fommen, zurüch'fommen.

Ro'nig, ber, bes -s, bie -e, king.

fön'nen, fonn'te, gefount', or fön's nen (haben), ex fann, to be able, can; may (denoting possibility).

fonn'te, fonn'te, see fon'nen.

Ronfonant', der, des -en, die -en, consonant.

Ropf, ber, bes -(e)s, bie "e, head.

Ronzert', das, des -(e)s, die -e, concert.

Rör'ner, The obor, proper name, a German poet.

Rraft, die, die ze, power, strength. fraf/tig, powerful, strong.

frant, sick, ill.

Rrei'be, bie, bie -n, chalk.

Rro'ne, die, die -n, crown.

Ru'gel, die, die -n, bullet ; ball.

Ruh, die, die "e, cow.

tihl, cool.

fund, known.

fund'tun, tat fund', fund'getan (has ben), to make known.

furz, compar., fürzer, superl., fürzeft, short.

füffen, reg. (haben), to kiss.

Ω

lä'cheln, reg. (haben), to smile. la'chen, reg. (haben), to laugh. La'ben, der, des –8, die Läden, store, shop. la'ben, lub, gelaben (haben), er läbt (also regular), to load (of a gun); to invite (used for einlaben).

lag, la'gen, see lie'gen.

Lam'pe, die, die -n, lamp.

Land, bas, bes -(e)s, bie *er, and poetic, Lande, land; country; auf bem Lande, in the country.

lang, compar., länger, adj., long; as adv. following an accusative of time, for, during: mein Leben lang, all the days of my life, forever.

lan'ge, adv., for a long time, long. lan'gen, reg. (haben), to long; langen unb bangen, longing and fearing.

las, la'fen, see le'fen.

laf'fen, ließ, gelaffen (haben), er läßt, imperative, laß, to let; to cause to be (done), to have (done).

lau'fen, lief, gelau'fen (sein), er läuft, to run.

lant, adj., loud; adv., aloud, out
loud.

lau'ter, indecl. adj., pure, genuine,
nothing but.

Le'ben, das, des —s, die —, life. le'ben, reg. (haben), to be alive, live. Leb'recht; der, proper name.

leer, empty.

le'gen, reg. (haben), to lay.

leh'ren, reg. (haben), to teach. Leh'rer, ber, bes -8, bie --, teacher.

leicht, light; easy.

Seib, bas, bes -s, harm; pain; sorrow, grief, woe.

leib, adj., painful.

lei'ben, litt, gelit'ten (haben), to suffer, endure; to permit, stand: und ich will's nicht leiben.

leid'tun, tat leid', leid'getan (haben), impers. with dat. of English subject, to be sorry; es tut mir leid, I am sorry.

leib'voll, sorrowful.

lei'hen, lieh, gelie'hen (haben), to lend.

lei'fe, soft(ly), gentle, gently.

Ler'che, bie, bie -n, lark.

ler'nen, reg. (haben), to learn; to study (as a pupil); flubieren is used only of advanced study, as at a university.

Le'sebuch, das, des -(e)s, die Le'sebücher, reading book, reader.

le'fen, las, gele'sen (haben), er liest, to read.

lett, last.

Sendy'te, bie, bie -n, beacon; guiding star.

leuch'teu, reg. (haben), to light; to shine.

Leu'te, die (plu.), people.

Licht, bas, bes -(e)8, bie -er, light. Licht'gefilde, bas, bes -s, bie -, fields of light.

lieb, dear, superl. as noun, bas liebsie, the dearest; what one loves most.

Lieb'chen, bas, bes -s, bie --, little love, darling, sweetheart.

lie'ben, reg. (haben), to love.

Lieb'fte, das, see lieb.

Lieb, das, des -(e)s, die -er, song. lief, lie'fen, see lau'fen. lie'gen, lag, gele'gen (haben), to lie, recline.

lies, see le'fen, vor'lefen, wei'terle= fen.

ließ, see laf'fen.

Lin'be, bie, bie -n, linden (tree). linf, left (hand).

Lip'pe, die, die -n, lip.

lo'ben, reg. (haben), to praise.

Löf'fel, ber, bes -8, bie -, spoon.

Lo'gan, Friedrich, proper name, a German poet.

Lorelei, die, the Lorelei, a river nymph on the Rhine.

Iss, loose; the matter; Was ift Ios? What's the matter? see also Ios'gehen.

los'gehen, ging los', los'gegangen (fein), to start in, begin.

Lewis. Louis, proper name, Louis,

Luft, die, die "e, air.

Sui'fe, die, proper name, Louise. Lust, die, die "e, joy, happiness.

In'ftig, joyful, jovial, jolly.

W

ma'chen, reg. (haben), to make, do; see also auf'machen, zu'machen. mäch'tig, mighty.

Mäd'chen, das, bes, -s, die —, girl, maiden.

mag, see mögen.

Mai, ber, (the month of) May. Mal, das, bes -(e)s, die -e, time.

mala'de, (French), sick.

ma'len, reg. (haben), to paint. Ma'ler, ber, bes -8, die —, painter.

man, one; they; you.

mand, many (a); special declension, § 124.

mann/mal, many a time, often.

man'gein, reg. (haben), impers. with dat., to want, lack; mir wirb nichts mangein, I shall not want.

Mann, ber, bes -(e)8, die eer, man; husband; Mr.

Man'tel, der, des -8, die Mäntel, cloak, robe, mantle.

Mär'chen, das, des -s, die -, fairy tale, story.

Marie', bie, proper name, Mary, Marie.

März, ber, (the month of) March. Matthä'n\$, ber, be8 Matthä'i, proper name, Matthew.

Meer, das, des -(e)s, die -e, sea, ocean.

mehr, more.

mein, poss. adj., my; poss. pron., mine.

mei'nig, ber mei'nige, bes -n, poss. pron., mine.

Mei'ster, ber, bes -6, bie -, master. Melodei', bie, bie -en (for Melodie'), melody, music.

Menich, ber, bes -en, bie -en, man, in the sense of human being, as distinguished from ber Mann, male.

Men'shehitter, der, des -s, die -, guardian of men.

Men'schentröster, der, des -8, die --, consoler of men.

Menich'heit, die, humanity.

mer'fen, reg. (haben), to note, take note of.

mef'sen, maß, gemes'sen (haben), er mißt, to measure.

Mes'ser, das, des -s, die —, knife. mich, me; see ich.

Mild, die, milk.

milb(e), mild(ly).

min'der, less.

Minu'te, die, die -n, minute.

mir, (to) me; see ich.

mit, prep. with dat., with; adv. and sep. prefix, along.

mitfam'men, adv., together.

Wit'te, bie, bie -π, middle, midst.
mit'ten, adv., in the midst or
middle.

möch'te, see mögen.

mö'gen, moch'te, gemocht' or mögen (haben), er mag, to like; may; pres. subj., möge is often used to introduce a wish.

M \overline{v} 'nat, ber, be8 -(e)8, bie -e, month.

Mond, der, des -(e)s, die -e, moon. Mon'tag, der, Monday.

Mor'gen, ber, bes -8, bie —, morning; written as an adverb without a capital when following an adverb like gestern, heute: heute morgen, this morning.

mor'gen, adv., to-morrow; as noun, bas Morgen, (the) to-morrow.

Mor'genrot, bas, bes -(e)s, dawn, morning glow.

mor'genichon, fair as the morning.

mübe, tired, weary; as noun, ber Mübe, bes -n, bie -n, weary person; allen Müben, to all the weary.

Mühl'rad, das, des -(e)s, die Mühl'= räder, millwheel.

Mül'ler, ber, bes -8, bie -, miller; proper name, Miller.

mur'meln, reg. (haben), to murmur.

Mus, bas, the word "must."

muffen, mußte, gemußt, or muffen (haben), er muß, to have to, be obliged to, must.

muß'te, müßte', see müf'fen.

Mut, ber, bes -(e)s, courage.

mu'tig, bold, courageous; strong. Mut'ter, bie, die Müt'ter, mother.

92

nach, prep. with dat., to; after; according to; nach Hause, (to) home; sep. presix in nach salagen.
nachbem', conjunction followed by

the dependent order, after.

Nach'mittag, ber, bes -(e)s, bie -e, afternoon; written as an adverb without a capital following words like hente, morgen, etc.: gestern nachmittag.

nach's lagen, schlug nach', nach'geschlagen (haben), er schlägt nach',
to look up, as of words in a
dictionary.

nächft, superl. of nah, nearest, next; ber Nächfte, bes -n, the next one; one's neighbor.

Racht, die, die "e, night.

Nacht'lied, das, des -(e)s, die -er, evening song.

nach'zuschlagen, see nach'ichlagen.

Ma'del, die, die -n, needle.

nah, compar., näher, superl., nächst, near, preceded by the dative.

nä'hen, reg. (haben), to sew.

Rame, ber, bes -ns, bie -n, name. naß, wet.

natür'liğ, adj., natural; adv., of course.

Re'bel, ber, bie —, fog, mist, haze. ne'ben, prep. with dat. or gcc., beside, by, near.

Re'car, ber, proper name, a German river, on which Heidelberg stands. neh'men, nahm, genom'men (haben), er nimmt, imperative, nimm, nehmt, to take; in An'spruch nehmen, to lay claim to.

nei'gen, reg. (haben), to incline; to decline, wane.

nein, adv., no; as noun, das Nein, the word "no."

Reft, bas, bes -(e)s, bie -er, nest. **new**. adj., new: adv., anew. **neun**, nine.

nennt, ninth.

neun'undacht'zigst, eighty-ninth.
neun'zehuhun'dertdrei'zehn, nineteen hundred thirteen.

nicht, not.

nichts, nothing, not anything; a following adjective is neuter, strong and is written with a capital, except ander: nichts Gutes, nichts anderes.

nie, never.

nie'ber, adv. and sep. prefix, down. nie'berbliden, reg., sep. (haben), to look down, glance down.

nie'derneigen, reg., sep. (haben), to bend down.

nie'mals, never, at no time. nie'mant, no one, nobody; niemant anters, no one else. nimm, see neh/men. nim/mer, never.

nimmermehr', never, nevermore. nit, dialect for nicht.

nod, still, yet; nod, nicht, not yet; more (§ 160); nod, etwas, some more; nor: weber...nod, neither...nor; sometimes omitted, § 297.

Not, bie, bie "e, need, necessity.
nun, excl., well; adv., now.
nur, only.

Rug, die, die Ruffe, nut.

Đ

o, excl., O, oh, ah.

conjunction followed by the dependent order, whether, if; ob
 figon, although.

o'ben, above, upstairs.

o'ber, or; entweder . . . oder, either . . . or.

off, often.

oh ne, prep. with acc., without; used also with German infinitive where English has a verbal in -ing. Ohr, bas, bes -s, bie -en, ear. Ol, bas, bes -s, bie -e, oil.

8

Ot'to, ber, proper name, Otto.

Baar, bas, bes -s, bie -e, pair; ein paar, used as indecl. adj., a few, a couple of.

Bapier', bas, bes —s, bie —e, paper. **Baradies'**, bas, bes Paradie'ss, paradise. paf'sen, reg. (haben), with dat., to suit.

Bein, die, agony, torture, pain.

Ffab, ber, bes -(e)s, bie -e, path.

Bfef'fer, ber, bes -8, bie --, pepper.

Pferd, das, des -(e)s, die -e, horse. Pfund, das, des -(e)s, zwei Pfund,

pound.

Pla'ten, August, Graf von, proper name, a German poet.

Blat, ber, bes -es, bie "e, room (space); seat.

Bortion', die, die -en (t like t), portion, helping.

Boft, die, die -en, post office.

Breis, der, des Preises, die Preise, price; praise, glory.

Brut, Robert, proper name, a German poet.

Pfalm, ber, bes -(e)8, bie -en, psalm.

Bult, das, des -(e)s, die -e, desk.

ถ

Quel'le, die, die -n, spring (of water).

90

Rat, ber, bes -(e)s, bie ee, counsel, advice.

ran'ben, reg. (haben), to rob.

rau'schen, reg. (haben), to rustle, ripple, roar, rush.

recht, adj., right, morally; right, as distinguished from left; recht haben, to be right; adv., rightly, really; well.

re'ben, reg. (haben), to speak, talk.

Re'gel, die, die -n, rule.

Re'gen, der, des -8, die —, rain.

reg'nen, reg. (haben), impers., to rain; es regnet, it's raining.

reich, rich(ly); in, an; as noun, ber Reiche, des -n, die -n, the rich (man).

Reich, bas, bes -(e)s, bie -e, kingdom, empire.

rei'den, reg. (haben), to hand to, pass; to hold out, of one's hand; to reach.

rein, pure, clean.

Rei'nid, Robert, proper name, a German poet.

Rhein, der, des -s, the Rhine, Germany's most famous river.

rid/tig, right, correct(ly).

rie'feln, reg. (haben), to ripple, trickle.

No'bert, der, *proper name*, Robert. **Nod**, der, de8 –(e)8, die "e, coat. **Roman**", der, de8 –8, die –e, novel;

tale.

Ro'fe, die, die -n, rose.

ro'fenfarben, rosenfarbnes, rosyhued, roseate.

ro'fig, rosy.

Nös'lein, das, des -s, die —, little rose.

rot, red.

Rü'dert, Friedrich, proper name, a German poet.

ru'fen, rief, geru'fen (haben), to call, cry out; see also zu'rufen.

Ruh(e), bie, ber -, rest.

rn'hen, reg. (haben), to rest.

ru'hig, quiet, calm.

rund, round.

Œ

St., abbreviation for Sanft, Saint,

Saa'le, die, proper name, a German river.

Sa'the, die, die -n, affair, business; thing.

facht(e), soft(ly), gently.

Sad, ber, bes -(e)s, bie "e, bag, sack.

fa'gen, reg. (haben), to say, tell; see also her'sagen.

fah, sa'hest, see se'hen; sah aus', see aus'sehen.

Sai'te, bie, bie -n, string, as of a harp.

fal'ben, reg. (haben), to anoint. Salz, das, des -es, die -e, salt.

fam'mein, reg. (haben), to gather, collect.

famm'le, see fam'meln.

fauft, gentle, mild(ly), peaceful(ly).

Sän'ger, ber, bes -8, bie --, singer, minstrel.

faß, sa'gen, see sit'zen.

Sat, ber, bes -es, bie "e, sentence. ichaf'fen, reg. (haben), to work, toil. Schat, ber, bes -es, bie "e, treasure;

sweetheart, of either sex.

ichät'zen, reg. (haben), to value, treasure.

íchau'en, reg. (haben), to look at, see; see also hernie'derschauen.

ing(ly). shudder-

Schef'fel, 30'sef Bil'tor von, proper name, a German poet.

ichei'ben, ichied, geschie'den (sein), to part, depart.

see also ein'schenken, to present;

Scheu'ne, die, die -n, barn.

ichi'den, reg. (haben), to send; fich schi'den, impers., to be proper.

Schiff, das, des -(e)s, die -e, ship.

Schif'fer, ber, bes -8, bie -, boatman.

Shil'ler, Friedrich von, proper name, a German poet.

Schim'mer, ber, bes -8, die -, shimmer, glimmer, gleam.

fchla'fen, schlief, geschla'fen (haben), er schläft, to sleep; see also ein'= schlafen.

fchla'gen, schlug, geschla'gen (haben), er schlägt, to strike, beat; of drums, to beat.

faliant, smooth, polished.

folief, see fchla'fen.

fchlie'hen, ichloh, geschlos'sen (haben), to shut, close; see also zu'schliehen.

ichlimm, bad; compar., ichlimmer, worse.

Schloff, das, des Schlosses, die Schlösser, castle.

schlug, see schla'gen.

fclum'mern, reg. (haben), to slumber.

íchmäch'tig, slender, slim.

sich schmüden, reg. (haben), to adorn; sich schmüden, to deck oneself out.

Schnee, der, bes -8, snow.

ichnei'en, reg. (haben), impers., to snow.

fonell, compar., foneller ; superl.,

schnellst, aufs schnellste, swift(ly), fast.

ர்**ற்**ய, superl., foonst, beautiful.

figon, already; sign of continued action, § 73; sometimes omitted, § 298; ob . . . figon, although.

Schöp'fer, ber, bes -8, bie --, creator. schrei'ben, schrieb, geschrie'ben (haben), to write; as noun, bas Schreiben, bes -8, writing, letter.

fdrieb, see fdrei'ben.

Schritt, ber, bes -(e)s, die -e, step, stride, pace; in gleichem Schritt und Tritt, keeping step side by side.

Schuh, ber, bes -(e)s, bie -e, shoe. Schuld, bie, bie -en, fault; debt.

Schul'biger, ber, bes -8, bie -, debtor.

Schu'le, die, die -n, school.
Schü'ler, der, des -s, die --, pupil.
ichwach, weak.

Schwal'be, die, die -n, swallow. fcwand, see fchwin'den.

Shwarm, ber, bes -8, bie "e, swarm; crowd, host.

imwarz, black.

fdwe'ben, reg. (haben), to sway, float; soar, hover.

fame'bend, see fame'ben; in famebender Pein, in the agony of suspense.

idwei'fen, reg. (haben), to wander, stray, roam.

fdwei'gen, schwieg, geschwie'gen (haben), to be silent; to keep still.

idwer, heavy, of weight; hard, of work.

Schwe'fter, bie, bie -n, sister. Schwie'rigfeit, bie, bie -en, diffioulty.

fcmin'den, schwand, geschwun'den (sein), to vanish, disappear.

ichwö'ren, ichwor, geschwo'ren (has ben), to swear.

feche, six.

feche'undbrei'fig, thirty-six.

See, ber, bes -8, bie Se'en, lake.

See'le, die, die -n, soul.

fe'hen, sah, gese'hen (haben), er sieht, to see, look; imperative, sieh!

fehr, very; much.

fei, feib, feien, see fein.

fein, poss. adj. and pron., his, its.

fein, war, gewe'sen (sein); ich bin, bu bist, er ist; wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind; pres. subj., ich sei, etc.; imper., sei, seid, seien Sie, to be; with some verbs (§ 66), have; es ist, there is.

feit, prep. with dat., since; conjunction followed by the dependent order, since.

Sei'te, bie, bie -n, side ; page.

felbft, intensive pron., self, himself, herself, myself, etc.; adv., even. fel'ten, seldom, rarely.

fet'zen, reg. (haben), to set, put; fich fetjen, to sit down.

fid, reflexive pron. for dat. and acc. of the third person and Sie, himself, herself, etc.

fie, she; they.

Sie, you.

Sie'bel, Karl, proper name, a German poet.

ste'ben, seven. ste'benmal, seven times.

fie'benundfünf'zigft, fifty-seventh. fiebt, seventh.

fie'gen, reg. (haben), to conquer.

fieh, siehst, see se'hen; sieht aus, see aus'sehen.

Sil'ber, bas, bes -8, bie --, silver. fin'gen, fang, gefungen (haben), to sing; as noun, bas Singen, singing.

fin'ten, sant, gesun'ten (sein), to sink; to wane, flag.

Sinn, ber, bie -e, sense; thoughts; head.

fit'zen, faß, gefef'fen (haben), to set. fo, so; then; often omitted in translation when used at the beginning of a German conclusion.

jobald', conjunction followed by the dependent order, as soon as.

Sohn, der, des -8, die "e, son.

fold, such; special declension, § 124.

Soldat', ber, des -en, die -en, soldier. fol'len, sold'te, gesollt' or sol'len (has ben), er soll, to be to; ought to; shall; Was soll das? What's the meaning of that? Es hat nicht sollen sein, it was not so to be.

foll'te, see fol'len.

Som'mer, ber, be8 -8, bie --, summer.

Som'merstorff, Otto, proper name, a German poet.

fon'der, prep. with acc., without; it is not in common use.

fon'bern, but (instead), but (on the other hand), but (rather).

Son'nabend, ber, bes —8, bie —e, Saturday.

Son'ne, die, die -n, sun.

Soun'tag, der, des -8, die -e, Sunday.

Sor'ge, bie, bie -n, care, worry. foviel', so much.

(haben), to stretch, span, spread; see also aus'spannen.

fpät, late.

24

fpazie'ren, spazier'te, spaziert' (sein), used generally with gehen, to take a walk.

Spie'gel, ber, bes -8, bie -, mirror. spie'gelflar', clear as a mirror.

Spiel, das, des -s, die -e, play, game.

spie'len, reg. (haben), to play.

sprach, see spre'chen.

Spra'che, die, die –n, language, tongue.

fpran'gen, see fprin'gen.

fpre'chen, sprach, gespro'chen (has ben), er spricht, imperative, sprich; pres. part., sprechend, to speak, talk; as noun, das Sprechen, speaking.

Sprich'wort, das, des -(e)s, die Sprichwörter, proverb.

fprin'gen, fprang, gefprun'gen
 (fein), to spring, leap, jump; of
 buds, to burst.

Spruch, der, des -8, die "e, saying, proverb.

(haben), to detect, note, find.

Staat, ber, bes -(e)s, die -en, state; country.

Stab, ber, bes -(e)s, bie "e, staff, rod.

ftach, see fte'chen.

Stadt, die, die "e, city; in die or der Stadt, down town.

Städt'chen, bas, bes -8, die —, little city.

ftand, stan'den, see ste'hen; stand(en) auf', see auf'steben.

ftarb, see fter'ben.

ftarf, adj., strong; adv., hard.

ftatt, prep. with gen., instead of. fte'chen, stach, gesto'chen (haben), er

sticht, to prick; to sting. stick, sterk, reg. (haben), to put, stick,

as into a pocket.

Stolden her hes _s hie _ stick

Ste'den, der, bes -8, die -, stick, staff, rod.

fte'hen, stand, gestau'den (haben), to stand; see also auf'stehen.

ftei'gen, stieg, gestie'gen (sein), to rise, arise, go up.

fter'ben, starb, gestor'ben (sein), er stirbt, to die.

Ster'nenmeer, das, des -(e)s, die -e, sea of stars, starry ocean.

fteruflar, clear, with the stars shining.

ftill(e), compar., stiller, still, soft(ly), quiet(ly).

Stil'le, bie, ber —, stillness, quiet, peace.

Stim'me, die, die -n, voice.

Storm, Theodor, proper name, a German author.

Strahl, der, des -8, die -en, beam, ray.

ftrah'len, reg. (haben), to gleam, beam.

Stra'se, die, die -n, street.
ftre'ben. reg. (haben), to strive.
Streit, der, des -(e)s, die -e, conflict, dispute, strife.
Strom, der, des -(e)s, die e, stream.
Stid, das, des -(e)s, die e, piece.
ftudie'ren, studier'te, studiert' (haben), to be a student at a university, to study in a higher institution; it is generally not used of study in high schools; see lernen.

Stuhl, ber, bes -s, bie "e, chair. ftumm, dumb; silent.
Stun'de, bie, bie -n, hour; lesson.
Sturm, ber, bes -(e)s, bie "e, storm.
Sturm, Julius, proper name, a German poet.

fu'chen, reg. (haben), to look for, seek.

fum'men, reg. (haben), to hum. Sup'pe, die, die -n, soup. füß, sweet(ly).

T

Tag, ber, be8 -(e)8, bie -e, day; acht Tage, a week; heute über acht Tage, a week from to-day. täg'lich, daily.

Tal, da8, be8 -8, bie -er, valley.

Ta'fche, bie, bie -n, pocket.

Taf'se, bie, bie -en, cup.

Tat, bie, bie -en, deed.

tat, ta'ten, tä'te, see tun.

Tec, ber, be8 -8, bie -8, tea.

Tel'ser, ber, be8 -8, bie -e, carpet.

Thea'ter, ba8, be8 -8, bie -e, carpet.

Thea'ter, ba8, be8 -8, bie -e, tea.

The odor, der, proper name, Theodore.

thro'nen, reg. (haben), to be enthroned.

tief, deep.

Tin'te, die, die -n, ink.

Tisch, der, des -(e)s, die -e, table.

Toch'ter, die, die Töch'ter, daughter. Toch, der, des -(e)s, die -e, death.

tot, dead; as noun, ber Tote, bes
-n, bie -n, dead man, the dead.

tra'gen, trug, getra'gen (haben), er trägt, to carry, bear; to wear, as of clothes.

Traine, die, die -n, tear.

Tran'erfleid, das, des -(e)s, die -er, mourning, mourning dress.

tran'lia, familiar; cordial; snug, cozy.

Traum, der, des -(e)s, die Trau'me, dream.

trän'men, reg. (haben), to dream. tran'rig, sad.

trei'ben, trieb, getrie'ben (haben),
to drive; of flocks, to tend; to
do, act; to work at, study.

tren'nen, reg. (haben), to separate. Trep'pe, die, die —n, stairway, stairs; die Treppe hinanf, upstairs; die Treppe hinunter or hinab, downstairs (§ 267).

tren, faithful; of love, true.

trieb, see trei'ben.

trin'fen, trant, getrun'fen (haben), to drink.

Tritt, ber, bes -(e)8, bie -e, step; in glei'chem Schritt und Tritt, keeping step side by side.

Erom'mel, die, die -n, drum.

Troft, ber, bes -(e)s, comfort, solace, consolation.

trö'sten, reg. (haben), to comfort, console.

tros, prep. with gen., in spite of. trug, see tra'gen.

Tud, bas, bes -(e)s, bie "er, cloth. tun, tat, getan' (haben), to do; leib' tun, with dat., to hurt, to make sorry, es tut mir leib, I am sorry; funb' tun, to make known, pro-

Tür, die, die -en, door.

claim.

11

it'bel, evil; übel gehen, with dat., to fare ill; übel nehmen, to take [it] ill.

Ü'bel, das, des -s, die —, evil.

ii'ben, reg. (haben), to practice; fich iiben, to practice.

ii'ber, prep. with dat. or acc., over, above; about; heute über acht Tage, a week from to-day; also sep. and especially insep. prefix, as in überhe'ben, überhet'zen, etc.

überall', everywhere, all over.

iberhe'ben fid, fid überhob', fid überho'ben (haben), to boast, be proud; to presume, be conceited.

überset'zen, reg., insep. (haben), to translate.

überzen'gen, reg., insep. (haben), to convince.

ü'bung, die, die -en, practice.

u'fer, das, des -s, die -, shore, bank.

Uh'land, Ludwig, proper name, a German poet.

The, bie, bie -en, clock, watch; o'clock; mieviel Uhr ift es? what time is it? zehn Uhr, ten o'clock.

um, prep. with acc., around, about; with the infinitive and zu, in order to; also sep. and insep. prefx, as in umge'ben, etc.

umge'ben, umgab', umge'ben (has ben), er umgibt', to surround.

nmher', adv. and sep. prefix, around, about, round about.

unb, and.

Un'glüd, das, des -(e)s, misfortune, unhappiness.

un'recht, wrong; unrecht haben, to be wrong.

uns, us; see wir.

un'jer, poss. adj. and pron., our,

un'ten, below; downstairs.

un'ter, prep. with dat. or acc., under; among; sep. and insep. prefix, as in unterhal'ten, etc.

nnterhal'ten, unterhielt', unterhal'=
ten (haben), er unterhält', to entertain.

unterneh'men, unternahm', unternom'men (haben), er unternimmt', to undortake.

23

Ba'ter, ber, bes -s, die Bäter, father; the heavenly Father.

Ba'terland, bas, bes -(e)s, bie -e, fatherland, mother country.

Beil'chen, das, des -s, die --, violet.

verbef'fern, reg., insep. (haben), to correct; to improve.

verblü'hen, reg., insep. (sein), to wither, decay.

verder'ben, verdarb, verdor'ben (haben), er verdirbt', to spoil, injure, ruin.

verbrie'sen, verbroß', verbrossen (haben), to vex, annoy, trouble.

verei'nen, reg., insep. (haben), to unite.

verfol'gen, reg., insep. (haben), to follow vigorously; to persecute.

verge'ben, vergab', verge'ben (haben), er vergibt', imperative, vergib', to forgive.

verge'hen, verging', vergan'gen (sein), to pass, of time or events. vergel'ten, vergalt', vergol'ten (haben), er vergilt, to pay for.

vergef'sen, vergaß', verges'sen (ha= ben), er vergißt', to forget.

Bergiß/meinnicht, das, des -s, forget-me-not.

vertau'fen, reg., insep. (haben), to sell.

verlet'zen, reg., insep. (haben), to hurt, harm, injure.

verlie'ren, verlor', verlo'ren (haben), to lose.

vernahmft', see verneh'men.

berneh'men, bernahm', bernom'men (haben), er bernimmt', to hear, perceive, learn.

verschlin'gen, verschlang', verschlun'= gen (haben), to swallow.

verftand', see verfte'hen.

verste'hen, verstanb', verstan'ben (haben), to understand; sich verste'hen, impers., to be a matter of course. 28

versu'den, reg., insep. (haben), to try.

Berfu'chung, die, die -en, temptation.

verwei'nen, reg., insep. (haben), to pass (time) in weeping; to weep; verwein'te Augen, eyes swollen with weeping.

verwen'ben, reg., insep. (haben), to use, utilize.

viel, much; plu., many.

vielleicht', perhaps.

vier, four.

viert, fourth.

Bier'tel, bas, des -s, die -, fourth. vier'zigst, fortieth.

Bo'gel, ber, bes -8, bie Bögel,

Bö'g(e)lein, bas, bes -8, die —, little bird.

Botal', ber, bes -8, die -e (v like w), vowel.

Bolf, bas, bes -(e)s, bie eer, nation, people, folk.

Bolls'ton, ber, bes -s, the tone of the people; im Bollston, after the manner of a folksong.

voll, full.

vollen'den, vollen'dete, vollen'det (haben), to finish.

bom, von bem.

von, prep. with dat., from, of.; with passive, by.

vor, prep. with dat. or acc., before, in front of; vor zwei Bochen, two weeks ago; vor lauter Freud', for very joy, for pure joy; sep. prefix, as in vor'lesen, etc.

porher', adv., before.

vor'lefen, las vor', vor'gelefen (haben), er lieft vor', to read (aloud). vor'zulefen, see vor'lefen.

233.

wa'den, reg. (haben), to watch; to wake, be awake.

Bäch'ter, ber, bes -8, bie -, watch-

Ba'gen, ber, des -8, die —, wagon, carriage.

wahr, true; nicht wahr, isn't it true?

wäh'rend, prep. with gen., during; conjunction followed by the dependent order, while.

Wald, ber, bes -(e)s, bie er, wood, forest.

wal'len, reg. (haben), to undulate, float; as noun, des Meeres Ballen, the motion of the sea; see also einher'wallen.

Wand, bie, bie "e, wall (of a room). wan'bein, reg. (sein), to go, travel. Wan'berer, ber, bes -8, bie —, wanderer.

wan'bern, reg. (sein), to wander.

wan, interrog., when. war, wa'ren, wä're, see sein.

warm, warm.

war'ten, reg. (haben), wait; for, auf with acc.; also in poetry with gen., seiner Freude warten.

warum', why.

was, interrog., what; rel. after neuter adjs. and prons., which; sometimes for etwas (Less. XXXIX), something, anything. 23affer, bas, bes -s, bie —, water. we'ben, wob, gewo'ben (haben), also reg., to weave, twine.

Bed'fel, der, des -s, die -, change. we'den, reg. (haben), to waken, wake up (active).

we'ber, neither; weder . . . noch, neither . . . nor.

28eg, ber, bes -(e)8, bie -e, way, road; bes Wegs, along the way. we'gen, prep. with gen., on account of.

weg'geriffen, see meg'reifen.

weg'reißen, riß weg', weg'geriffen (haben), to tear away, snatch

Weh, das, des -(e)s, woe, pain, misery.

weh(e), excl., alas! oh! woe!; as noun, fein Weh und Ach, no (saying of) woe and alas.

we'hen, reg. (haben), to blow, flutter; wave; as noun, das We'= hen, bes -s, blowing.

Wehl, Feodor, proper name, a German poet.

weh'ren fich, reg. (haben), to defend oneself.

wei'den, reg. (haben), to pasture, to let graze.

weil, conjunction followed by the dependent order, because.

Bei'le, bie, bie -n, while, time; delay ; Gile mit Beile, haste with delay; the more haste, the less speed.

wei'nen, reg. (haben), to weep, cry. Bei'se, die, die -n, melody, music to a song; way, manner.

wei'se, adj., wise.

weiß, weifit, see mif'fen. weiß, adj., white.

weit, far (not wide).

wei'ter, adv. and sep. prefix, further.

wei'tergeleseu, see wei'terlesen.

wei'terlefen, las wei'ter, wei'terge= lesen (haben), er liest weiter, to read on, read further.

welch, rel. pron., who, which, that; interrog., what, which.

Bel'le, die, die -en, wave.

Belt, die, die -en, world.

wem, to whom; see wer. we'nig, little; plu., few.

me'niger, fewer, less.

weun, conjunction followed by the dependent order, when; whenever: if.

wer, interrog. and compound rel., who; he who.

wer'den, mur'be, gewor'den (fein), er wird, past part. in passive of other verbs, worden, to become, get; as sign of future tense with pres. infin., will, shall; as sign of passive with past participle, am, is, are; past subj. as sign of conditional, würde, would, should.

Werk, das, des -(e)s, die -e, work, the result of labor, as distinguished from die Arbeit, labor.

wert, worth; worthy.

Wet'ter, bas, bes -s, die -, weather. Wi'dert, proper name, a German poet.

Bi'berfpruch, ber, bes -(e)8, bie Bi'dersprüche, contradiction.

wie, how; as; like.

wie'ber, adv. and sep. prefix, again. wieberho'len, reg., insep. (haben), to repeat.

Bie'ge, die, die -n, cradle.

Wie'genlied, bas, bes -(e)s, die -er, cradle song, lullaby.

wie'gen sich, reg. (haben), to rock, wave.

wieviel', how much; plu., how many; wieviel llhr? what time? ben wievielten haben wir heute? what day of the month is to-day? wilb, wild.

will, willft, see wol'len.

Bil'le, der, des -ns, die -n, will.

wil'len, um . . . 'willen, with gen., for the sake of.

Wind, ber, des -(e)8, die -e, wind. Win'ter, der, des -8, die --, winter. Wip'fel, der, des -8, die ---, top, summit, tip.

wir, we.

wird, see wer'ben.

wir'fen, reg. (haben), to effect; to bring about.

wif'sen, wuß'te, gewußt' (haben), er weiß, to know, have knowledge of; as noun, das Wissen, bes -s, knowledge, knowing.

wo, where.

Bo'che, die, die -n, week.

Bo'ge, die, die -n, wave.

wo'gen, reg. (haben), to surge, undulate.

woher', where (from).

wohin', where (to).

wohl, perhaps, probably, I think; well; wohl habe ith es geschen, yes, I did see it. Wohl, das, des -s, welfare.

woh'nen, reg. (haben), to live, reside.

Bolf'gang, der, proper name, Wolfgang.

Bol'te, bie, bie -n, cloud.

Bol'fenlamm', das, des -(e)s, die Bol'fenlam'mer, cloud lamb, fleecy cloud.

wol'ien, woll'te, gewollt' or wol'ien (haben), er will, to want to, wish, will.

woll'te, see wol'len.

23on'ne, bie, ber —, bliss, happiness, joy.

wor'ben, sign of the passive, see wer'ben.

Bort, das, word; plu., die Bor'te, connected words; die Bör'ter, separate words.

Wirt'chen, bas, bes —8, bie —, little word.

Wör'terbuch, das, des -(e)s, die Wor'terbücher, dictionary, vocabulary.

woven', of which, from which.

wun'berbar, strange, miraculous.

wun'berfam, strange, peculiar.

wun'berichön, wonderfully beautiful.

wün'schen, reg. (haben), to wish. wur'de, wür'de, see wer'den.

Wnr'zel, die, die,-n, root. wuß'te, see mis'sen.

2

zehn, ten. zehn'mal, ten times.

zei'gen, reg. (haben), to show.

Bei'le, die, die -n, line. Beit, die. die -en, time. Belt, bas, bes -(e)s, die -e, tent; vault of heaven. zerbrach', zerbro'chen zerbre'den, (haben), er zerbricht', to break to pieces, smash. gerbro'den, see gerbre'den. gerrei'gen, gerriß, gerrif'fen (haben), to tear to pieces. zerrif'fen, see gerrei'gen. zerstren'en, reg., insep. (haben), to scatter, strew. gie'hen, jog, gezo'gen (haben), to draw, pull; with fein, to go, go along; impers., es zieht, there's a draft. Biel, das, bes -(e)s, die -, goal, aim, end. Zim'mer, bas, bes -s, die --, room. gog, see gie'hen. zn, adv., too; prep. with dat., to; zu Hause, (at) home; sep. prefix, as in au'fügen, au'machen, au'ru=

fen, zu'schließen, etc.

Bu'der, ber, bes -8, bie -, sugar.

zu'fügen, reg., sep. (haben), to add. Bug, ber, bes -(e)s, bie "e, train. zu'hören, reg., sep. (haben), with dat., to listen to. gum, ju bem. zu'machen, reg., sep. (haben), to shut; close. gur, ju ber. zurüd', adv. and sep. prefix, back. zurud'tommen, fam gurud', gurud'getommen (sein), to come back. zu'rufen, rief zu', zu'gerufen (ha= ben), to call to. an'fchließen, fchloß gu', gu'gefchloffen (haben), to lock, close up, shut. zwan'zig, twenty. ¿war, it is true; really. awei, two. zwei'mal, twice. aweit, second. awei'tens, in the second place. zwei'undeinhalb', two and a half. zwei'undfieh'zig, seventy-two. zwi'schen, prep. with dat. or acc., between; among.

awölf, twelve.

	•					
					-	
				`		
		•			•	
					•	
•						
	•					
		•				
	-					
				•		
					•	
					•	
			•			
		•				

ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY

A

a, ein; not a, fein.

able, to be, fon'nen, tonnte, gefonnt (haben), ich fann.

about, adv., un'geführ; prep. (fig.), über with acc.; (lit.), um with acc.

above, prep., über with dat. or acc. accent (in sense of pronunciation), bie Aus'sprache.

account, on account of, we'gen with gen.

across, ii'ber with dat. or acc.

afraid, to be afraid, sich fürch'ten, reg. (haben), of, vor with dat.

after, prep., nach with dat.; conj., nachdem' with transposed order; day after to-morrow, il bermorgen.

afternoon, ber Rach'mittag, bie -e; written small with adverbs: this afternoon, heute nachmittag.

against, ge'gen with acc.

ago, vor followed by the noun of time in the dative.

agreeable, an'genehm preceded by the dative.

all, all; (in sense of whole), gang; all right, fchön, gut; all kinds of, al'lerlei, indecl.

allow, erlau'ben, reg. (haben) with dat.

aloud, adv., laut; to read aloud,

vor'lesen, las vor', vor'gelesen (has ben), er liest vor.

already, ichon.

also, auch (never also).

always, im'mer.

am, bin; see fein and progressive form, § 16.

America, bas Amē'rifa.

among, un'ter with dat. or acc. an, ein.

and, und followed by normal order.

Ann(a), (die) An'na.

another (in sense of one more of the same kind), nody ein; (in sense of a different one), ein an'ber.

any, ir'gend (ein); not any, fein. anybody, ir'gend je'mand.

any one, ir'gend je'mand.

anything, et'was (a following adjective is capitalized, except an'bers); not anything, nichts (a following adjective is capitalized, except an'bers).

appear (in the sense of look), au8'=
fehen, fah au8', au8'gefehen (ha=
ben), er fieht au8'.

apple, ber Apfel, die Apfel.

are, find; see also fein, and the progressive form, § 16; are we to? follen wir? there are, es gibt, es find.

arm, ber Arm, bie -e.

around, um with acc.

arrive, an'tommen, fam an', an'gefommen (fein).

as, conj. of past time, als; conj. of reason, da; as if, als ob or als with inverted order (§ 274, a); correl., as . . . as, e'benjo . . . wie; as long as, folan'ge; as soon as, fobald'.

ask (in sense of beg), bit'ten, bat, gebe'ten (haben), for, um with acc.; (in sense of question), fra's gen, reg. (haben).

at, an with dat., an with dat.; (of time), um with acc.; at school, in ber Schule; at home, ju Saufe; at once, gleich; at last, end'lich; at the house of, bei with dat.

attend (of school), besu'chen, reg. (haben).

August, ber August'.

В

bag, ber Gad, bie "e. ball, ber Ball, die "e. barn, die Scheu'ne.

be, fein, mar, gewesen (fein), er ift; (of health) fich befin'den, befand' fich, fich befun'den (haben); to be (translated), beifen, bief, qe= heißen (haben); to be late, fpat tommen, tam fpat, fpat getommen (fein); see also progressive forms,

beautiful(ly), ichön; most beautiful, schönst.

because, weil with transposed order; because of, wegen with gen.

become, wer'den, murbe, geworben (fein), er wird.

bed, bas Bett, bie -en; to bed, ju Bett.

bee, die Bie'ne, die -n.

before, prep., por with dat. or acc.; conj., the with dependent order. beg, bit'ten, bat, gebeten (haben).

began, see begin.

begin, an'fangen, fing an', an'gefangen (haben), er fängt an'. .

begun, see begin.

behind, hin'ter with dat. or acc.

believe, glau'ben, reg. (haben) with acc. for things, with dat. for persons.

belong, gehö'ren, gehörte, gehört (haben) with dat.

below, adv., un'ten.

bench, die Bant, die "e.,

beside, neben with dat. or acc.; beside it, bane'ben.

besides, auch.

better, bei'ser; see good; to like better, lie'ber mö'gen.

between, ami'ichen with dat. or acc. big, bigger, biggest, groß, größer, größt.

bird, ber Bo'gel, die Bogel.

blue, blau.

boat, das Boot, die -e.

book, das Bud, die "er.

borrow, bor'gen, reg. (haben).

Boston, (das) Bo'fton.

both, beide (see § 162, c).

bought, see buy.

boy, der Rnabe, des -n, die -n.

bread, bas Brot, die -e.

break, bre'den, brach, gebrochen

(haben), er bricht; break to pieces, zerbre'den, zerbrad', zerbro'den (haben), er zerbricht'. broad, breit. broke, broken, see break. brother, der Bruber, die Bruber. brown, braun. bush, der Buich, die "e. but, conj., a'ber; as alternative after a negative, fon'bern; adv., nur; nothing but, nichts als. butter, die But'ter. button, der Anopf, die "e. buy, fau'fen, reg. (haben). by (beside); ne'ben with dat. or acc.; agent with passive, von with dat.

C

call (in sense of call to), ru'fen, rief, gerufen (haben); be called, bei'gen, bieß, gebeißen (haben). came, see come. can, fon'nen, tonnte, gefonnt (ha= ben), er tann. cannot, see can and not. care, I don't care, es ift mir einerlei'. carpet, ber Teppich, die -e. carriage, ber Ba'gen, bie -. carry, tra'gen, trug, getragen (ha= ben), er trägt. catch, fan'gen, fing, gefangen (ha= ben), er fängt. caught, see catch. chair, ber Stuhl, bie "e. chalk, die Rrei'de, die -n. Charles, (ber) Rarl. cheek, die Bade, die -n. chicken, das Suhn, die "er.

child, children, bas Rind, bie -er. church, die Kir'che, die -n. city, die Stadt, die "e. class, die Rlaffe, die -n. clean, rein. close, ju'machen, machte ju', ju'gemacht (haben), er macht gu'. cloth, das Tuch, die "er. clothes, die Rlei'der (pl.). coffee, ber Raf'fee. coat, ber Roct, die "e. cold, colder, fait, fäiter. come, tom'men, tam, getommen (fein). concert, bas Ronzert', die -e; to the concert, ins Ronzert'. consonant, der Ronfonant', des -en, die -en. contain, enthal'ten, enthielt', enthal'ten (haben), es enthält. continue, fort'fahren, fuhr fort', fort'gefahren (haben), er fährt fort', followed by the infinitive with zu. convince, überzeu'gen, überzeug'te, überzeugt' (haben). correct, adj., rich'tig; verb, verbef'= fern, verbef'ferte, verbef'fert (ha= ben). could, see can. country, bas Land, die "er; to the country, auf das Land. couple, das Baar, die -e; a couple of, ein paar (used like an adjec-

tive not affecting the case of a

a matter of course, es versteht'

course, of course, natür'lich; it is

following noun).

fiά).

cow, die Ruh, die Rühe. cup, die Taf'se, die -n.

D

daughter, bie Toch'ter, die Töchter.
day, der Tag, die -e; day after tomorrow, ü'bermorgen; what day
of the week? welchen Tag?
what day of the month? ben
wieviel'ten?

deal, a great deal, viel.

dear, lieb.

desk, das Pult, die -e.

dictionary, das Bör'terbuch, die Börterbücher.

did, see do and progressive forms, § 16.

didn't, see did and not.

die, fter'ben, ftarb, geftorben (fein), er ftirbt.

different, an'der.

difficulty, die Schwie'rigkeit, die -en. do, tun, tat, getan (haben); (of health) sich befin'den, befand' sich, sich befun'den (haben); that will do, das genigt'; for emphasis with the imperative, doch; see also progressive forms, § 16.

does, see do.

dog, der Hund, die -e.

door, die Tür, die -en.

down, hinun'ter, nie'ber; down town, in die (or der) Stadt; down stairs, (motion) die Trep'pe hinun'ter or hinab', (rest) unten; to sit down, sich setzen (reg., haben).

draft, there's a draft, es zieht. draw, zie'hen, zog, gezogen (haben).

dress, das Kleid, die -er.
drink, trin'fen, trant, getrunten
(haben).
during, wäh'rend with gen.

ĸ

each, je'ber, jebe, jebes; each other, 'fich, einan'ber.

early, earlier, früh, früher.

easy, easily, easier, easiest, leicht, leichter, leichtest, am leichtesten. eat, essen, ag, gegessen (haben), er

ißt.

egg, das Ei, die -er. eight, acht; eighth, (das) achte.

eighteen, acht'zehn; eighteenth, achtzehnt.

either, ent'weber; either . . . or, entweber . . . ober.

eleven, elf.

else, an'beres; anything else, (in sense of more), noch etwas; (in sense of different), etwas anderes. end, das En'be, die –n.

English, adj., eng'lisch; noun, bas Englisch(e); in English, auf englisch; to speak English, Englisch sprechen.

enough, genug'; to be enough, genüg'en, genüg'te, genügt' (haben).
entertain, unterhal'ten, unterhielt',
unterhal'ten (haben), er unterhält'.
evening, der A'bend, die -e; in the
evening, am Abend, abends; written small when used with adverbs; hen'te abend, mor'gen
abend.

ever, je.

every, je'ber, jebe, jebes.

everybody, je'bermann.
everything, al'le8.
everywhere, überall'.
exactly, gera'be, genau'.
excuse, entschul'digen, entschul'digte,
entschul'digt (haben).
exercise, die Aus'gabe, die -n.
expect, erwar'ten, erwar'tete, erwar'tet (haben).
explain, ertsären, ertsär'te, ertsärt'
(haben).
eye, das Aus'ge, des -8, die -n.

fall, fal'len, fiel, gefal'len (fein), er fällt. false, falid). family, die Fami'lie (four syllables), die -n. far, weit; as far as, bis. fast, faster, ichnell, ichneller. father, ber Ba'ter, die Bater. February, der Fe'bruar. feel (of health), fich befin'den, befand' fich, fich befun'den (haben). fell, see fall. fetch, ho'len, reg. (haben). few, fewer, we'nige, weniger; a few, ein paar, used as an indeclinable adjective without affecting the case of the following noun: with a few (a couple of) books, mit ein paar Büchern. field, bas Feld, bie -er. fifteen, fünf'zehn. finally, end lich. find, fin'den, fand, gefunden (haben). fine, schön, pracht'voll. finger, ber Fin'ger, die -.

fire, bas Feu'er, die -. first, adj., erft; adv., querft'. fish, der Fifch, die -e. fisher(man), ber Fi'icher, bie -. fit, pasisen, reg. (haben), with dat. five, fünf. floor, der Bo'ben, die - or Boben. flower, die Blu'me, bie -n. fly, noun, die Flie'ge, die -n; verb, flie'gen, flog, geflogen (fein). follow, fol'gen, reg. (fein) with dat. foot, der Fuß, die "e. for, prep., für with acc.; um with acc.; conj. giving a reason, benn with normal order; to tell extent of time, it is translated simply by the accusative; to look for, $\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}'=$ then, reg. (haben); to wait for, war'ten, reg. (haben) auf with acc. forget, vergef'jen, vergag', vergef'= fen (haben), er vergißt' forgot(ten), see forget. fork, die Ga'bel, die -n. forty-seventh, fie'benundvier'gigft. found, see find. four, vier. fourteenth, vier'zehnt. fourth, adj., viert: noun, das Bier's tel, die -. Fred, (ber) Frit. Friday, der Frei'tag, bie -e. friend, der Freund, die -e. from, von with dat.; come from, her'tommen, tam her', her'getom= men (sein); a week from to-day, heute über acht Tage. front, in front of, por with dat. or acc.

G

game, das Spiel, die -e.
garden, der Gar'ten, die Gärten.
gentleman, der Herr, des -n, die -en.
German, ach., deutsch; noun, (the
German language), das Deutsch(e); (the German citizen), der
Deutsche, des -n, die -n; in German, auf deutsch; to speak German, Deutsch; fiprechen.

Germany, das Deutsch'land.

get, (obtain, secure) betom'men, betam', betom'men (haben); (become) wer'den, wurde, geworden (sein), er wird; (go and get) ho'len, reg. (haben); get up, aus'sseed, stand aus', aus'gestanden (sein).

getting, see get.

girl, das Mäd'chen, die -.

give, ge'ben, gab, gegeben (haben), er gibt.

glad, froh; to be glad, fich freuen, reg. (haben), ich freue mich, § 241, or es freut mich, § 248; be glad to do something, etwas gern tun.

gladly, gern.

glass, bas Glas, bie Glafer.

go, ge'hen, ging, gegangen (sein); go and get, ho'len (reg. haben); go on, fort'sahren, suhr fort', fort's gesahren (haben), er fährt sort'; go walking or for a walk, spazieren ge'hen, ging spazieren, spazieren gegangen (sein).

gold, bas Gold.

gone, see go.

good, gut; have a good time, sich (gut) amüsie'ren, amüsier'te sich, sich amüsiert' (haben).
got, see get.
grammar, die Gramma'tis, die -n.
grass, das Gras, die Gräser.
great, groß; a great deal, viel.
green, greenest, grün, grünst.
grow, (become) wer'den, wurde, geworden (sein), er wird; (increase in size) wach'sen, wuchs, gewachsen (sein), er wächst.

H

had, see have. hair, das Haar, die -e.

half, adj., halb, following the article; noun, die Hälf'te, dia -n; half past ten, halb elf; and a half, sundeinhalb; one and a half, an'derthalb (§ 219, a).

hall, ber Saal, die Sale; die Bal'le, bie -n.

hand, noun, die Sand, die "e; Berb, reichen, reg. (haben).

hang, han'gen, hing, gehangen (haben), er hängt.

happen, gesche'hen, geschah', gesche'hen (sein), es geschieht', followed by the dative.

happy, glüd'lid.

hard, adj., (difficult) schwer; (to the touch) hart; adv., (vigorously) start; (industriously) stei'sig; (to study hard) sleisig sernen, reg. (haben).

hardly, faum.

has, hasn't, see have and not. hat, der Hut, die de.

have, ha'ben, hat'te, gehabt' (haben), er hat; (auxil. with neuter verds) sein, war, gewesen (sein), er ist; to have to, müs'sen, muß'te, gemußt' (haben), er muß; to have done or made, lassen, ließ, gelassen (haben), er läßt.

haven't, see have and not, also nicht (wahr), § 3, a.

hay, das Ben, bes Ben(e)8.

he, er.

hear, hö'ren, reg. (haben); I heard them play, ich habe sie spiesen hören, § 141.

help, noun, die Sil'se; verb, hel'sen, half, geholsen (haben), er hilft, with dat.

her, adj., ihr; pronoun, ihr, sie. here, hier.

herself, reflex., sich; intens., selbst. high, higher, highest, hoch, höher, höchst; declined in the positive, hoher, hohe, hohes.

him, pronoun, ihm, ihn.

himself, reflex., sid; intens. selbst. his, sein; with parts of the body used in the predicate, sid, and the def. art.

hold, hal'ten, hielt, gehalten (haben), er hält.

home, at home, zu Hause; (to) home, nach Hause.

hope, hof'fen, reg. (haben).

horse, das Pferd, die -e.

hot, heiß.

hour, die Stun'be, die -n; an hour and a half, an'berthalb Stunden. house, das Haus, die Häuser; at the house of, bei with dat.

how, wie.

hundred, hun'bert, § 217, c.

hungry, hung'rig.

hurt, verlet'zen, verlet'te, verlett' (haben).

I

I, ich.

if, wenn; after verbs of asking, ob; as if, als ob or als with inverted order.

ink, die Tinte, die -n.

in, in with dat. or acc.; in it, barin'; in the evening, a'bends or am Abend; in German or English, auf beutich or eng'lisch.

industrious(ly), flei'ßig.

instead of, anfiatt' with gen.; also followed by a phrase (§ 204, d) or a clause (§ 286).

into, in with acc.

is, ift, see be; is (translated), heißt; there is, es gibt or es ift.

isn't, see is and not, also nicht (wahr), § 3, a.

it, e8; also er or fie (§ 93); with prepositions, da(r).

J

John, (ber) Jo'hann.

just, adv., gera'be, when qualifying another word; e'ben, when referring to time.

K

kind, die Sor'te, die -n; all kinds of, al'ieriei; what kind of, was für.

king, ber Ro'nig, bie -e.

knee, das Ante', die Ant'e.
knew, see know.
knife, das Messser, die —.
know, (have knowledge of) wissen, wußte, gewußt (haben), er weiß;
(be acquainted with) ken'nen,
kannte, gekannt (haben).

L lady, bie Da'me, bie -n. laid, see lay. lain, see lie. lake, ber See, bes -8, bie -n. lamp, die Lam'pe, die -n. land, bas Land, bie "er or (poetic). large, larger, largest, groß, größer, arökt. last, lett; at last, end'lich; last summer, po'rigen Som'mer. late, later, fpat, fpater; to be late, fpat fommen. lay, see lie. leaf, bas Blatt, bie "er. learn, ler'nen, reg. (haben). left, lint. leg, bas Bein, die —e. lend, lei'hen, lieh, geliehen (ha= ben). lesson, die Stun'de, die -n. let, laf'fen, ließ, gelaffen (haben), er läkt. letter, (epistle) der Brief, die -e; (of the alphabet) ber Buch'stabe, des -n(8), die -n. lie, lie'gen, lag, gelegen (haben). mögen, mochte, aemocht should or (haben), er mag; would like, möchte; gern in sense

of gladly; adj., (resembling) ähn'lich, preceded by dat. line (on the page), die Bei'le, die -n. lip, die Lip'pe, die -n. little (in sense of small), flein; (in sense of not much), we'nig. long, longer, longest, lang, länger, längst; adv., a long time, lange; as long as, folange with dependent order. look, fe'hen, fah, gefehen (haben), er fieht; (appear) aus'feben, fab aus', aus'gesehen (haben), er fieht aus'; look for, su'chen, reg. (haben); look up (as in a dictionary), nach'ichlagen, ichlug nach', nach'geschlagen (haben), er schlägt nach'. loose, los. lose, verlie'ren, verlor', verlo'ren (haben). lost, see lose. lot, a lot (in sense of many), viel. loud, louder, laut, lauter. love, lie'ben, reg. (haben); loving,

M

made, see make.

liebend.

lying, see lie.

make, ma'chen, reg. (haben).

man, ber Mann, die "er; sometimes omitted in the general sense of people: some men, einige.

many, vie'le; many a, mand; how many, wievie'le.

March, der Marg.

Marie, Mary, (die) Marie'.
matter, what's the matter? was

tft 108 ? it's a matter of course, es versieht' sich, es verstand' sich, es hat sich verstan'den.

May, der Mai.

may, (possibility) fon'nen, konnte, gekonnt (haben), er kann; (permission) bürfen, burfte, geburft (haben), er darf.

me, mir, mid).

mean, (of things) bedeu'ten, reg. (haben); (of people) mei'nen, reg. (haben); what do you mean by that? Was foll benn das? meat, das Fleisch, die -e.

meet, begeg'nen, begeg'nete, begeg'= net (fein), followed by dat.

middle, die Mit'te.

might, see may.

milk, die Milch.

million, eine Million'.

mine, mein, ber meine, ber meinige. minute, bie Minu'te, bie -n.

mistake, ber Feh'ler, die -.

moment, der Au'genblick, die -e.

Monday, ber Mon'tag.

money, bas Gelb, die -er.

month, der Mo'nat, die -e; what day of the month, den wieviel'ten.

more, mehr; noch (§ 160).

morning, ber Mor'gen, bie —; written small when used with adverbs: this morning, heute morgen.

mother, die Mut'ter, die Mütter.

Mr., Berr.

Mrs., Frau.

much, viel, usually not declined; how much, wieviel'.

must, muffen, mußte, gemußt

(haben), er muß; must not (in withholding permission), nicht bür'sen, burste, gedurst (haben), er darf nicht.

my, mein; with parts of the body in the predicate, usually mix and the def. art.

myself, reflex., mir, mich; intens., felbst.

N

name, ber Ra'me, bes -ns, bie -n; to be named, hei'fen, hieß, geheißen (haben).

named, genannt'; to be named, heißen.

near, prep., an with dat. or acc.; adj., nahe, preceded by dat.

need, brau'chen, reg. (haben).

needle, die Na'del, die -n.

neither, we'ber; neither . . . nor, weder . . . noch.

nest, das Nest, die -er. never, nie, nie'mals.

new, neu.

next, nächst.

night, die Nacht, die "e; when referring to evening, as in "Did you go to the theatre last night?", der Abend, die -e; last night, gestern abend.

nine, neun.

nineteen, neun'zehn.

ninety, neun'zig.

no, adv., nein; adj., tein.

none, fein.

nor, noch; neither . . . nor, we'ber . . . noch.

not, nicht; not any, fein.

nothing, nights; a following adjective is neuter and is written with a capital (§ 159, e).

now, jett; (less often) nun.

0

occur, ein'fallen, fiel ein', ein'gefallen (sein), es fällt mir ein', with dat. o'clock, Uhr; omitted, as in English, except on the exact hour.

October, der Ofto'ber.

of, von with dat.; often rendered by the gen.; afraid of, fid, fürth's ten vor; of course, natür'lid; a pound of, etc., omitted, see § 113.

often, oft.

oh, o, ah, ach.

old, older, oldest, alt, alter, altest.
on, auf with dat. or acc.; to go on, fort'sahren, suhr fort', fort'gesahren (haben), er fährt fort'; to read on, wei'terlesen, sas wei'ter, wei'tergesesen (haben), er liest wei'ter.

once, ein'mal; at once, gleich.

one, ein; one's, sein; not one, sein; no one, nie'mand; in general sense, one hears, etc. man; the one, ber, berje'nige; often translated by inflected adjective, § 128, d.

only, nur. .

onto, auf with acc.

open, auf'machen, machte auf', auf's gemacht (haben).

or, oder; either . . . or, ent'meber . . . ober.

order, in order to, um with infin.

other, (in sense of different) an'ber; (in sense of more) noch.

ought to, sol'sen, sollte, gesollt (haben), er soll; see § 144, b, 2.

our, un'ser.

out, adv., hinaus'; prep., aus with dat.; out of it, baraus'; out of doors, brau'hen.

outside, adv., drau'sen; prep., outside of, au'serhalb with gen.

over, adv., hinü'ber; prep., ü'ber with dat. or acc.

P

page, die Sei'te, die -n.
pair, das Paar, die -e.
paper, das Papier', die -e.
pass (in sense of hand to), rei'chen,
reg. (haben).
past, half past ten, halb elf'.
pen, die Fe'der, die -n.
pepper, der Pfef'fer.

perhaps, vielleicht'.

permitted, to be permitted, bur'fen,
burfte, geburft (haben), er barf.

picture, das Bilb, die -er; (painting), das Gemäl'de, die -.

piece, das Stud, die -e; break to pieces, gerbre'chen, gerbrach', gerbro'chen (haben), er gerbricht'.

place, in the first, second place, etc., er'ftens, zwei'tens, etc.

plate, der Tel'ler, die -.

play, noun, das Spiel, die -e; verb, spie'len, reg. (haben).

please, gefal'len, gefiel', gefal'len (haben), es gefällt' mir, followed by dat.; if you please, bit'te.

plenty (of), genug', viel.

pocket, die Ta'sche, die -n: the definite article is used instead of a personal pronoun to translate my, your, his, etc. poem, bas Gedicht', die -e. polite(ly), höf'lich. poor, arm. portion (to eat), die Bortion', die -en (t like B). post-office, die Bost, die -en; to the post-office, auf die Bost. pound, das Bfund, zwei Bfund. practice, die U'bung. praise, lo'ben, reg. (haben). pray (used with the imperative), doch, bit'te. probably, mohl, mahrichein'lich. pronounce, aus'ipreden, iprach aus', aus'gesprochen (haben), er spricht pronunciation, die Aus'sprache, die pull, zie'hen, zog, gezogen (haben). pupil, ber Schüler, bie -. put, ste'den, reg. (haben); (lay) (set) le'gen, reg. (haben);

fet'zen, reg. (haben).

quarter, bas Bier'tel, die - : quarter to three, brei Biertel brei. question, it is a question, es fragt fich, reg. (haben). quickly, fcnell. quite, ganz.

rain, ber Re'gen, die ran, see run.

read, le'fen, las, gelefen (haben), er lieft; read aloud, vor'lejen, las vor', vor'gelesen (haben), er lieft por'; read on, wei'terlesen, las wei'ter, wei'tergelesen (haben), er lieft wei'ter. reader, bas Le'febuch, bie Lefebuder. ready, fer'tig. receive, erhal'ten, erhielt, erhal'ten (haben), er erhält'. rocite, her'fagen, fagte her', her gefagt (haben). red, rot. remain. blei'ben, blieb, geblieben (fein). remember, fich erin'nern, erin'nerte fich, fich erin'nert (haben), with repeat, wiederho'len, wiederhol'te, wieberholt' (haben). rich, reich. right (correct), rich'tig; (not left) recht: to be right, recht haben, hatte recht, recht gehabt (haben), er hat recht; all right, schön,

aut. rise, auf'stehen, stand auf', auf'ge-

ftanben (fein). river, der Fluß, die Fluffe.

room, bas Zimmer, bie -.. rose, die Ro'se, die -n.

round, adj., rund; prep., um with

rule, die Re'gel, die -n.

run, lauf'en, lief, gelaufen (fein), er Jäuft: run through, durchblättern, durchblät'terte, durchblät'tert (ha= ben).

should, foll'te (follen); see also sub-

8

sack, ber Sad, die "e. said, see say; is said to, foll (§ 144, b). salt, das Salz, die -e. same, felb; the same, berfelbe; all the same, einerlei'. Son'nabend, der Saturday, der Sams'taa. saw, see see. say, fa'gen, reg. (haben). scarcely, faum. school, die Schu'le, die -n; to school, in die Schule; at school, in ber Schule. second, zweit. soe, fe'hen, fah, gefeben (haben), er ficht; I have seen them play, ich habe fie fpielen feben. sell, vertau'fen, vertauf'te, verfauft' (haben). send, ichi'den, reg. (haben). sentence, ber Gat, die "e. set, set'zen, reg. (haben). seven, fie'ben. seventeen, sieb'(en)zehn. seventh, fie'bent. seventy-fourth, vier'unbfieb'zigft. seventy-three, brei'undfieb'zig. several, meh'rere. sew, nä'hen, reg. (haben). shall, (future) werden; (is to) follen; (want to) wollen. she, fie. ship, das Schiff, die -e. shoe, ber Schuh, die -e. shore, das U'fer, die -. short, shorter, furz, fürzer.

junctive. show, zei'gen, reg. (haben). shut, zu'machen, machte zu', zu'ge= macht (haben). side, this side of, bies'feits with gen. since, prep., feit with dat.; conj., feitbem'. sick, frant. silver, das Silber. sing, fin'gen, fang, gefungen (baben). sir, mein Berr'. sister, die Schwe'fter, die -n. sit, fit'zen, faß, geseffen (haben); to sit down, fich fet'zen, reg. (haben). sitting, see sit. six, feche. small, flein. smash, gerbre'den, gerbrach', ger= bro'chen (haben), er zerbricht'. snow, noun, ber Schnee; verb, es schneit, reg. (haben). so, fo; that's so, e'ben; with glau'= ben, das or es. sold, see sell. soldier, ber Solbat', bes -en, bie -en. some, ei'nig; some more, noch et'was; some one, (ir'gend) je'manb. something, et'was; a following adjective is neuter and is written with a capital. son, ber Gohn, bie "e. song, bas Lieb, bie -er; ber Gefang', die Gefänge. soon, bald; as soon as, jobald'.

sorry, to be, leib'tun, tat leib', leib'getan (haben) with dat.; I am sorry, e8 tut mir leib'.

soup, die Sup'pe, die -n.

speak, spre'chen, sprach, gesprochen (haben), er spricht; to speak German, Deutsch sprechen.

spell, buchstabie'ren, buchstabier'te, buchstabiert' (haben).

spite, in spite of, trots with gen.

spoke, see speak.

spoon, der Löf'fel, die -..

stairs, stairway, die Trep'pe, die -n; upstairs, (rest) oben, (motion) die Treppe hinauf'; downstairs, (rest) unten, (motion) die Treppe hinab' or hinun'ter.

stand, ste'hen, stand, gestanden (haben); stand up, auf'stehen, stand auf', auf'gestanden (sein).

state, der Staat, des –es, die –en. stay, blei'ben, blieb, geblieben (sein).

stick (put), steden, reg. (haben). still, (of time), noch.

stop, auf'hören, hörte auf', auf'gehört (haben), followed by the infinitive where English has a verbal.

store, ber La'den, die Läden. story, die Geschich'te, die -n.

straight, gera'be.

strange, fremb.

stranger, adj., fremd; noun, ber Fremde, bes -n, die -n.

strong, ftart.

study, ler'nen, reg. (haben); fluble's ren is used only of advanced study, as at a university. succeed, gelin'gen, gelang', gelun's gen (sein), impers. with dat.; I succeed, es gelingt mir.

such, solch (§ 124); such a good man may also be translated ein so guter Mann.

sugar, der Bu'der, die -.

suit, noun, der An'zug, die An'züge; verb, pass'sen, reg. (haben) with dat.

summer, der Som'mer, die —. Sunday, der Sonn'tag. sung, see sing.

surround, umge'ben, umgab', um ge'ben (haben), et umgibt'.

T

table, ber Tisch, die -e.

take, neh'men, nahm, genommen (haben), er nimmt.

talk, spre'chen, sprach, gesprochen (haben), er spricht.

tea, der Tee.

toacher, (man) ber Leh'rer, bie
—; (woman) bie Leh'rerin, bie
—nen.

tear, rei'sen, ris, gerissen (haben); to tear up, tear to pieces, zerrei's sen, zerris', zerris'sen (haben).

tell, sa'gen, reg. (haben); erzäh'len, erzähl'te, erzählt' (haben).

than, ale.

thank, ban'fen, reg. (haben) with dat.; thank you, (idh) bante. that, conj., baff; rel., ber, wel'der;

demon., der, je'ner.

the, ber, die, das.

theatre, das Thea'ter, die —; to the theatre, ins Theater.

thee, bir, bid.

their, ibr.

them, sie, ih'nen, biesel'ben; with a prep., ba(r).

themselves, reflex., sid; intens., selbst.

then, (in sense of next), bann; (in sense of at that time), ba'mals.

there, adv., ba; there is, es gibt, es ift; there's a draft, es jieht.

these, biefe.

they, fie; man (§ 159, c); e8 (§ 155).

thing, das Ding, die -e.

think, glau'ben, reg. (haben); ein's fallen, fiel ein's, ein'gefallen (fein), es fällt mir ein', impers. with dat.

third, adj., britt; noun, das Drittel, bie —.

thirsty, bur'ftig.

thirteen, drei'zehn.

thirty, breiffig.

this, dies; this morning or evening, heu'te mor'gen or abend; this side of, dies'feits with gen.

thorn, ber Dorn, des Dorns, die Dornen.

those, bie, je'ne; those are, bas finb (§ 159).

thou; bu.

thousand, tau'fenb.

thread, ber Fa'ben, die Faben.

three, brei; three and a half, brei's unbeinhalb', vier'tehalb; three times, brei'mal.

through, prep., burch with ace.; adj., fer'tig; run through (a book), burchblät'tern, burchblät'= terte, burchblät'tert (haben). Thursday, ber Don'nerstag, die -e. ticket, das Billett', die -e (pronounced bilyet').

till, bis with acc. or dep. order.

time (extent) bie Zeit, bie -en; (point) bas Mal, bie -e; a long time, lange (adv.); with a numeral, as three times, =mal, einmal, zwei'mal, etc.; to have a good time, fich (gut) amüsie'ren, amüsier'te sich, sich amüsiert' (haben); what time is it? wieviel Uhr ist es?

tired, mü'be.

to, (with persons) zu with dat; (with places) nach with dat.; to school, theatre, or concert, in with acc.; to and fro, hin und her; in order to, um zu with infin.; quarter to eight, brei Bier'tel (auf) acht; also often rendered by the dative.

to-day, heu'te; a week from to-day, heute über acht Tage.

to-morrow, mor'gen; to-morrow morning, morgen früh; day after to-morrow, ü'bermorgen.

too, (with adjs. and advs.) zu; (in other cases) auth.

torn, see tear.

town, die Stadt, die ze; to town, in die Stadt; down town, in die or der Stadt.

train, der Bug, die "e.

translate, überset/zen, überset/te, überset/ (haben); to be (translated), hei/gen, hieß, geheißen (haben); What is that in German? Wie heißt das auf beutsch? tree, ber Baum, die Bäume.
true, wahr.
try, versu'cheu, versuch'te, versucht'
(haben), with acc. or infin. and
zu.
Tuesday, der Diens'tag, die -e.
twelfth, zwölft.
twelve, zwölf.
twenty. zwan'zig.
twenty-five, füns'undzwanzig.
twenty-four, vier'undzwanzig.
twenty-third, drei'undzwanzigst.
twice, zwei'mas.
two, zwei; the two, die bei'ben.

U

under, un'ter with dat. or acc. understand, verfte'hen, verstand'. verftan'den (haben). understood, see understand. undertake. unterneh'men, unternahm', unternom'men (haben), er unternimmt'. up, upstairs, (rest) o'ben, (motion) die Trep'pe hinauf; what's up? was gibts? look up, (of words) nach'ichlagen, ichlug nach', nach'geichlagen (haben), er ichlägt nach'; stand up or get up, auf'stehen, ftand auf', auf'geftanden (fein). upon, auf with dat. or acc. us, une, un'fer (gen.).

♥ `

vory, sehr.
village, das Dorf, die *er.
visit, noun, der Besuch', die -e;
verb, besu'chen, reg. (haben).
vowel, der Bokal', die -e.

W

wagon, ber Ba'gen, bie -. wait, war'ten, reg. (haben), for, auf with acc. walk, go for a walk or walking, spazie'ren geben, ging spazieren, fpagieren gegangen (fein). wall (of a room), die Band, die Banbe. want, to want to, wol'len, woll'te, gewollt' (haben), er will. . warm, warm. was, war, see sein. wasn't, see was and not. wast, marft, see fein. water, bas Baf'fer, bie -. way, ber Beg, die -e. we, wir; (in general sense), man. wear (as to wear clothes), tra'gen, trug, getragen (haben), er trägt. weather, bas Bet'ter, bie -. Wednesday, ber Mitt'moch, bie -e. week, die Wo'che, die -n; a week from to-day, heute über acht Tage; what day of the week? wel'chen Tag? welcome, you're welcome, bit'te. well, adv., gut; excl., nun; well written, gut geschrie'ben; to be well, fich gut befin'den, befand' fich gut, fich gut befun'den (haben). went, see go. were, see be; in passive, mur'ben. wet, nafi. what, mas; what time is it? wie's viel Uhr' ist es? what kind of? mas für (ein)?; what's your name ? wie bei'gen Gie?

when, conj. of past time, als; of general time, wenn; interrog., wann?

whenever, wenn.

where, wo; where (to), wohin'.

whether, ob.

which, rel., der, wel'der; interrog., wel'der; with preps., wo(r):.

while (referring to a long time), wäh'rend; (for a short time), indem'.

white, weiß.

who, rel., der, wel'cher; interrog., wer.

whole, ganz.

whom, see who.

why, interrog., warum'; excl., ja.

wide, breit (not weit, far).

wife, die Frau, die -en.

will, (future, of time) wer'den; (of desire) to be willing, wol'len, wollte, gewollt (haben), er will.

willing, see will.

window, das Fen'ster, die —.

winter, der Bin'ter, die -..

wish, wün'schen, reg. (haben), followed by zu and infin.

with, mit with dat.; (with persons, as at the house of), bet with dat.

without, oh'ne with acc.; followed also by phrase or clause (§§ 204, d, and 286).

woman, die Frau, die -en.

won't, see will and not.

wood, ber Balb, die "er.

word, das Wort, die -e (of con-

nected discourse), bie "er (of disconnected words).

work, verb, ar'beiten, reg. (haben); noun (in sense of labor), die Ar's beit, die -en; (in sense of the result of labor) das Werk, die -e. worn, see wear.

would, wiir'be, woll'te; see conditional and subjunctive (§§ 264 and 265).

write, schrei'ben, schrieb, geschrieben (haben).

writing, written, see write; well written, gut geschrie'ben.

wrong, falfch; to be wrong (of persons), un'recht haben, hatte, gehabt (haben).

wrote, see write.

Y

year, das Jahr, die -e.

yes, ja.

yesterday, ge'stern; a following noun is written as an adverb without a capital: gestern abend.

yet, (of time) noch, (adversative) boch; not yet, noch nicht.

you, (formal) Sie, Ihrer; (intimate) du, deiner; ihr, euer; (in a general sense) man.

young, younger, jung, junger.

your, (formal) Ihr; (intimate) bein, ener; (with parts of the body used in the predicate) bir, sich or euch with the def. art.

yourself, (reflexive) sich, dich, euch; (intensive) selbst.

INDEX.

A.	address, terms of formal and familiar, § 10. use of ©ie, § 10, a. adjectives, review of, § 128 and § 307. declension of, strong, § 112; § 128, b, 2. weak, § 116; § 128, b, 1. mixed, § 120; § 128, b, 2, note. indeclinable, § 124, a. possessive, from genitive, § 103; § 149; not used so often as in
e, § 349, a; ei, § 349, b; sheit, § 349, c; sleit, § 349, d; slipaft, § 349, e; sung, § 349, f. See also Word formation.	English, § 174; § 272. predicate, not declined, § 9; § 128, a. attributive, § 112; § 128, b. use as nouns, § 128, c.
 in verbs, inseparable, § 188; separable, § 189. common verbs, used as inseparable, § 196, α; separable, § 196, b. in foreign words, § 67, 2. in pronunciation of German, §§ 324-342. accusative case, § 7; § 7, b; § 8; 	after "one," § 128, d. use after mand, fold, weld, § 124; § 124, a. cardinal, § 217. ordinal, § 218; § 219. formation of from suffixes, =bar, § 350, a; =en, § 350, b; =baft, § 350, c; =ig, § 350, d; =ifd, § 350, e; =lid, § 350, f; =fam, § 350, g.
§ 17; summary of, § 82; § 83; summary of forms, §§ 305-313. of definite time, § 117; § 222; § 222, a. prepositions with accusative or dative, § 89. with accusative only, § 102. impersonals with, § 248. with um after ee fragt fid, § 251. with ee gibt, § 163.	adverbs uninflected adjectives, § 125. formed from cardinals, with smal, § 217, b. from ordinals, with sens, § 218, a. comparison of, § 212, § 213. order in sentence, § 125; § 290, b, 1, 2, 3. adverbial phrases
active voice distinguished from passive, § 235, a, b. more used in German, § 237, a, b.	order in sentence, § 290, b, 1, 2, 3. agent, dative of with the passive and von, § 232. with the active, § 237, b.

ai, pronunciation of, Intro., I, e; § 329, 1. αÑ declined when followed by adjective, § 124, b. indeclinable, § 124, b; § 162, a. never weak, § 162, a, 1. neuter, 162, a, 3. alphabet, the German, p. x of Introduction. als introducing clauses, § 178; § 179. to translate verbals, § 285. in comparisons, § 214, a, b. als ob, als wenn, § 274, a. am, contraction of an bem with the superlative in the predicate, § 212, b. an, prep. with dative or accusative. anber after etwas, § 159, a.

after etwas, § 159, a.

meaning different, § 160; compared
with noch ein, § 162, b.

An den Mond, by Enslin, p. 97.

anderthalb, § 219, a. anfangen, § 193.

angenehm, with the dative, § 282, a; § 283.

antonmen, followed usually by dative, § 287.

another, one more, noch ein; a different one, anber, § 162, b.

anstatt

followed by infinitive, § 204, d. preposition with genitive, § 281; § 283.

antecedents

agreement of personal pronoun with, § 93.

of relative in gender and number, § 167, b.

repetition of, § 169, b.

apostrophe, used in genitive of proper names in \$6, \ 225, a.

apposition, nouns in, § 109. special use after nouns of measure, § 113; after bit Portion, § 267.

article

definite

forms of, § 8; § 17 and note; summary of forms, § 305.

combined with prepositions, § 89, a.

distinguished from demonstrative, § 158, note.

use with beite, § 162, c; with halb, § 163; with proper names, § 225, b, c; instead of possessive pronoun with parts of the body, § 174; with Tasche, § 272.

indefinite

forms of, § 8; § 22; summary of forms, § 306.

used with genitive to express indefinite time, § 281, a.

See also ber and ein.

as, in comparisons, wie, § 214, a. subordinating conjunction, § 178; § 179; see also ba.

as - as, § 214, b.

assimilation of spoken sounds, § 342.

au, pronunciation of, Intro., I, e; § 329, 2.

ău, Intro., I, e; § 329, 3.

auf

prep. with dative or accusative, § 89. separable prefix, § 193.

with adverbial superlative, § 212, c. aufbören with the infinitive where

English has verbal in -ing, § 193. and, prep. with dative, § 97; § 100.

aufferbalb, § 281, b; § 283.

auxiliaries

of mode, see Modals.

of tense

simple present for emphatic auxiliary do in English, § 16; § 207, a.

future tenses, § 48; § 49; of modals, § 136. rendered in German by the present, § 55. simple futurity, werben, § 132, a; § 230, a. distinctions in use of shall and will, \S 132, α , b, and note. future perfect, § 78; § 84; of modals, § 140. perfect tenses with haben, § 58; § 84; of modals, § 140. in past perfect, § 72; § 84. with fein, § 66; § 84. in past perfect, § 72; § 84. use of present perfect in German for English past, § 61; § 141. b. use of German present with foon for English present perfect, § 73. use of German past with foon for English past perfect, § 73, a. of passive voice, werben, § 230; § 231; see also werden. of separable verbs, § 196, b. position in sentence in independent clauses, § 170, a. in dependent clauses, § 170. with "two infinitives," § 181. repetition of auxiliary rendered by nicht wahr, § 3, a. See also Consonants.

auxiliaries of tense (continued).

B.

See also Consonants.

bes, inseparable prefix, § 188.

Bechstein, Ludwig (1801-1860), quoted, p. 142.

begegnen, with the dative, § 282, b; § 283.

bei, preposition with the dative, § 97; § 100.

betbe, preceded by the article, § 162, c.

Bible, quoted, pp. 168, 188.

bis, prep. with the accusative, § 102.

bitte, use of, p. 48; § 107.

bitten, § 107; bitten um, § 107.

Brentano, Clemens (1778–1842),

Biegenlieb, p. 37.

Busse, Carl, über ben Bergen, p. 175.

but, rendered by aber or sonbern,

§ 177, a.

C.

E, sounds of, Intro., II, b, 2.
See also Consonants.

capitalization
of adjectives after etwas and nichts,
§ 159, a, e; Intro., IV, e.
after viel and wenig, § 162, e.
of nouns, Intro., IV, c, 1, 2.
of pronouns, Intro., IV, d; § 10.
nouns, Morgen, Nachtmittag, and
Mbend not capitalized when
combined with geftern, hente,
and morgen, § 138, a.

cardinal numbers, § 217. See also
Numerals.

case, endings, § 35; § 39; § 44; § 52; § 63; § 68; § 75.
summary of, § 82; § 83; §§ 305-314.
of appositives, the same for both, § 109,
of relatives depending on construction in clause, § 167, b.
See also Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative.
catch, glottal, §§ 331-334.

causative, laffen, § 144, d; § 145. d), Intro., II, b, 3, 4, 5; discussion of different sounds of, § 336, 1, 2, 3. den, diminutive, always neuter, § 34; § 79, b, 3; § 348, a.

Christian names, proper nouns inflections of nouns ending in ***, § 225, a.

with the definite article, § 225, b, c. ϕ 8, sound of, Intro., II, b, 4; § 336, 3.

d, sound of, Intro., II, b, 1, c. Claudius, Matthias, quoted, p. 88. clauses use of, in German instead of phrases, $\S 207$, b. independent, inverted when preceded by dependent clause, § 170, a. dependent, order in, § 170; § 274, a. punctuation of, § 169, c. conditional, § 270; § 271; § 274; § 275; § 276. inverted when wenn or ob is omitted, 274, a. cognates, related words (as Buch, book), see vocabularies in each lesson. Also Grimm's Law, §§ 357-360. comma frequent use in German, Intro., IV, a. required to set off relative clauses, Intro., IV, a, 1; § 169, c. before modified infinitive, § 192; § 205, a. common prefixes (both separable and inseparable) use as separable, § 196, b. use as inseparable, § 196, a. comparison of adjectives and adverbs. § 212. regular, § 212, a. in the predicate, 212, b, c. of long words, § 212, d. table of regular and irregular comparisons, § 213. particles of, § 214. than and as, § 214, a. $as - as, \S 214, b.$ the — the, \S 214, c. of one adjective with another, § 212. d. composition of nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc., §§ 343-356. See Word formation.

complementary infinitive, § 192. complex sentences, §§ 167-170; § 178. See also Sentences and Word order, dependent. compound relatives, § 168. See also Pronouns, relative. compound sentences, § 177. punctuation of, Intro., IV, a, 2. compound words, § 352. nouns, § 353. adjectives, § 354. verbs, § 355. See also Word formation. concrete nouns, § 348. See also Word formation. conditional (mode), \S 264; \S 265, α ; § 275, b. See also Summary of Forms, §§ 314-323. conditions of fact, § 270; § 271, a. contrary to fact, §§ 274-276. modals in, § 276. See Summary of Forms, § 314-323. conjugation indicative, § 1; § 6; § 15; § 21; § 27; § 32; § 38; § 43; § 49; § 58; § 72. of modals, § 131; § 135; § 136; § 140; § 141. of inseparable verbs, § 188; of separable, § 190. imperative, § 201; § 231. subjunctive, § 256; §§ 261-263. of modals, § 269; § 276. infinitives, § 204. participles, § 206. passive, § 230; § 231. reflexive, § 241. impersonals, § 246; § 247; § 248; § 249. See complete Summary of Forms, §§ 314-323. conjunctions coördinating not affecting order, § 177.

tinued). special uses, § 177, a. list of, § 177. subordinating requiring dependent order, § 170. list of, § 178. connecting vowel for euphony, § 14, a. consonants classification of, Intro., II, a. (1) according to sound liquids, nasals, stops, spirants. (2) according to vibration of vocal cords voiced or voiceless. (3) according to place in mouth guttural, palatal, dental, labial. pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 1-20; discussion of difficulties, §§ 335-340. contrary to fact conditions use of subjunctive for, § 274; § 274, a. use of modals in, § 276; § 276, a and note. contrast, shown by fondern, § 177, a. conversation, use of ber instead of derjenige, § 185.

coordinating conjunctions, § 177; see also Conjunctions. copula, sein with participle, § 235.

correlatives as - as, § 214, b.

either - or, § 291. neither - nor. § 291. not only - but also, § 177, a, 1. the — the, \S 214, c.

could have, in German, § 276.

D.

D, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b. See also Consonants.

conjunctions, coordinating (con- | ba, subordinating conjunction, § 178; § 179. use of clauses with ba instead of English phrases, § 207, b. instead of verbals in -ing, § 285. ba(r)=, combined with prepositions, § 98. Dahn, Felix (1834-1912), Das Glüd, p. 191. banken use of, p. 48; with the dative, § 107; § 282, b. neuter form of definite article, see as relative, § 167. as demonstrative, § 158, a. complete table of forms of, § 305, a; § 311, a. distinguished from bag, § 182. used with plural forms of fein, § 155. Das Glüd, by Felix Dahn, p. 191. baß, subordinating conjunction, § 178. distinguished from bas, § 182. dative case indirect object, § 45. instead of possessive, § 174. of definite time am with days of week, § 222; im Jahre, § 222, b. of agent, with von, in passive, § 232. after passive of verbs, § 236. with certain adjectives, § 282, a. with certain verbs, list of, § 282, b. antommen, § 287. begegnen, § 282, b; § 283. banten, p. 48. erlauben, § 300. folgen, § 282, b; § 283. gefallen, § 238; § 282, b. gehören, § 156; § 282, b. belfen, § 238; § 282, b. fich fürchten vor, § 291.

> with the impersonals es fallt mir ein, es gelingt mir, es gefchieht mir,

> > es tut mir leib, § 249.

dative case (continued). berjenige, demonstrative, § 158, c, d. prepositions with dative or accusative, § 89. with dative only, § 97. with von instead of genitive, § 225, a. after vor, § 300. David, 23d Psalm of, p. 188. days of the week, § 223, a. of the month, § 223, b. declension See Adjectives, Articles, Nouns, Pronouns. Also Summary of Forms, §§ 305-314. demonstrative pronouns, § 158; § 185; § 312. See also Pronouns. benn, use of as conjunction, § 177; § 179. as particle, § 293; § 294. dental consonants, see Consonants. dependent clauses, §§ 167-170; § 178; § 181; § 182. punctuation of, Intro., IV, a, 1; § 169, c. dependent order, see Word order. dependent subjunctive, § 257, § 258. See Subjunctive. ber, the definite article, § 2, a; § 8; § 17; § 305. For special uses, see Article, definite. demonstrative, § 158; § 185; § 312. relative, § 167; § 169; § 311. Ъц differing from English, § 169. "ber" words, § 116. words declined like "ber" words, § 124; § 312, b. beren, genitive of relative ber, § 167, a. Der erste Mai, by Hagedorn, p. 68.

Der gute Ramerad, by Uhland, p. 144.

derivatives, Latin and German syn-

derivation of words, § 343-356.

See Word formation.

onyms, § 356.

declension of, § 312. use of, § 158, d; when modified. § 185. in formal language, § 185. berfelbe, demonstrative, § 158, c; § 312. Des Madchens Lieb, by Storm, p. 40. beffen, genitive of relative ber, used for welcher, § 167, a. besto, correlative with je, § 214, c. beutsch, § 202. dialect, relation of, to correct accent, § 324. Die arme kleine Idee, by Sommerstorff, p. 145. bienen, with the dative, § 282, b. bies, used in singular with plural form of fein, § 155. See also biefer. biefer, as adjective, § 116; as demonstrative pronoun, § 158; § 312; summary of declension, § 305, b. digraphs, aa, ee, ie, oo, Intro., I, f. dimidiatives, anberthalb, brittehalb, etc., § 219, a. diminutive suffixes, shen and slein, $\S 34$; $\S 79$, b, 3; $\S 348$, a. diphthongs, ai, au, äu, ei, eu pronunciation of, Intro., I, e. discussion of, § 329; § 330. both, as particle, § 293; § 296. brittehalb, dimidiative, § 219, a. Dreves, Lebrecht, Bor Jena, p. 54. declined, \S 92; \S 310. capitalized, Intro., IV, d, 1; § 10. use, § 10. repetition after relative, § 169, b, 1. Du bentft an mich fo felten, by Platen, p. 68. burd, prep. with the accusative, § 102. common prefix, § 196. bürfen, § 131; § 136; § 304. special uses, may, § 144, a, 1. subjunctive of, § 269.

bürfen (continued). complete summary of conjugation, § 323. E, pure vowel in German pronunciation of, Intro., I, b. difficulties of, § 325-328. compounds with, ei, eu, diphthongs, Intro., I, e; § 329, 1. ee, digraph, Intro., I, f. se, weak ending of adjectives, § 116. plural noun-ending, § 51. typical weak ending, \S 116, b; § 306, 4. noun suffix, § 34, 3; § 79, b, 2; § 349, a. ebenso - wie. correlative § 214, b. Ebner-Eschenbach, Marie von (1830 -), Spruch, p. 34. ehe, subordinating conjunction, § 178; § 179. ei, diphthong, pronunciation of, Intro., I, e; § 329, 1. ei, feminine suffix, § 79, b, 2; § 349, b. Eichendorff, Joseph von (1788-1857), Es war, ale hatt' ber Simmel, p. 96. ein, indefinite article, § 8; § 22. mixed declension with, § 120. independent use of, § 149, b, note. negative of (tein), § 106. summary of forms, $\S 306$; $\S 307$, g. See also Article, indefinite. "ein" words, § 103, a; § 120. all followed by "ein" word, § 124, b. einige, § 162, d. eins, cardinal number, § 217. sel, masculine and neuter noun ending, first class, § 34. emps, inseparable prefix, § 188. emphasis in German, by spacing instead of by italics, § 158, note.

emphatic form in conjugation,

§ 16; § 207, a.

masculine and neuter noun ending, § 34; § 306, 4. weak adjective ending, § 116. suffix to form adjectives, § 350, b; to form verbs, § 352, a. assimilation of ending near b or p, § 342, 1. after g, § 342, 2. after n or ng, § 342, 3. zens. in ordinal adverbs, § 218, a. englisch, auf, § 202. Enslin, Karl, An ben Mond, p. 97. ent, inseparable prefix, § 188. entweder - oder, correlative, § 291. er, personal pronoun, § 92. er, masculine noun suffix, first class, § 34; § 79, b, 1; § 348, b. plural noun ending, third class, adjective and adverbial suffix to show comparison, § 212. er, inseparable prefix, § 188. erinnern, sich, with the genitive, § 243. erlauben, with the dative, § 300. ≈ern, verb suffix, § 351, b. ers, noun prefix, § 346, a. es, neuter personal pronoun, § 92; § 310, c. with impersonal verbs, § 245, a; §§ 246-250. as object of modal auxiliaries, § 137.

in es ift, followed by the nominative, § 163; § 250, b.
in es gift, followed by the accusative, § 163; § 250, a.

used with plural form of fein, § 155.

 ee, neuter ending of adjectives, § 120, b.
 Es war, als hätt' ber himmel, by Joseph

Eichendorff, p. 96.

etwas, indeclinable indefinite, § 159, a.

eu, pronunciation of, Intro., I, e;

329, 3; § 330.

exclamation point, frequent use in German, Intro., IV, b; § 69.

F.

factitive verbs

es ist, § 250, b; § 163. es gibt, § 250, a; § 163.

Fallersleben, Hoffmann von (1798-1874)

Bergismeinnicht, p. 12.

Mein Baterland, p. 82.

feminine nouns

uninflected in singular, § 67.
exceptions, auf Erben, auf bet Bei-

ben, see Vocabulary. first class (two only), § 34, 4, ; § 39. second class, § 51; § 52.

fourth class (weak), § 67; § 68. Summary of inflections, §§ 308-309.

See also Gender.

Feuchtersleben, Ernst, Freiherr von (1806–1849), quoted, pp. 103, 149.

finden, followed by infinitive without \mathfrak{gu} , § 204, a.

folgen, with the dative, § 282, b; § 283. foreign nouns, masculine, § 67, 2.

formal address

use of berjenige instead of ber, § 185. in the imperative, § 69; § 200; § 201. Sie instead of bu, § 10.

fortfahren, § 193.

fractions, § 219.

fragen, § 133; as impersonal reflexive, § 247.

fremb, with the dative, § 282, a; § 283. früh, special use in morgen früh, § 145. Frühlingsahnung, by Uhland, p. 31. fühlen

"two infinitives," § 141.

followed by the infinitive without \mathfrak{gu} , § 204, a.

Fulda, Ludwig (1862-), Benn, p. 182.

für, prep. with accusative, § 102.

future tense, § 48; § 49; of modals, § 136. summary of conjugations, §§ 314-

323.

rendered by present, § 55. translation of will, § 132.

distinctions between follen, wollen, and werben, § 132, note.

future perfect, § 78; § 84. of modals, § 140.

G.

(S), pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 6. discussion of, § 337, 1, 2, 3. See also Consonants.

gang for English entire, § 219, c; § 162, a, 2.

ges, inseparable prefix, § 188.

prefix, to form nouns, § 34, 3;

§ 346. b.

in past participles, § 59; § 304.
gefallen with the dative, § 238; § 282, b.
gegen, prep. with accusative, § 102.
geforen with the dative, § 156; § 282, b.
geforden with the dative, § 282, b.
Geibel. Emanuel (1815–1884).

leibel, Emanuel (1815-1884), quoted, p. 156.

gender

in German, § 2.

importance of definite article, § 2, a. in German compounds, § 353; in foreign masculines, § 67, 2.

rules of

determined by meaning, § 79, a,

determined by ending, § 79, b, 1, 2, 3.

See also Masculine, Feminine, Neuter, and Summary of Inflections, §§ 305-314.

genitive case

denoting possession, § 40.
possessive adjective formed from,
§ 103.

of proper names, § 225. after fich erinnern, § 243.

to denote indefinite and regularly recurring time, § 281, a. with certain prepositions, § 281, b. substitutes for, § 174; § 225, a. For case endings, see Summary, § 82; § 83; § 305-314. gelingen, impersonal verb, § 249; § 251; § 282. b. German language sketch of, § 358. richness in compounds, § 343. grammatical terms, Intro., V. orthography, Intro., II, b, 15, note, Intro., IV, c, d, e. punctuation, Intro., IV, a, b. gern, § 144, a; § 145. geftern, words following, § 138, a. glauben, with the dative, § 160; § 282, b. with accusative, § 160. glottal catch, §§ 331-334. an, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 20. Goethe, Wolfgang von (1749-1832) Banbrere Rachtlied, p. 41. Beibenröslein, p. 163. quoted, pp. 35, 38, 42, 80, 95, 152, 161, 164, 180, 183, 192. grammatical terms in German, Intro., V. Grimm, Jacob, § 13, note; § 357. Grimm's law, § 357-§ 360. Sute Nacht, by Theodor Körner, p. 13. guttural consonants, Intro., II, a, 3.

H.

haben, § 1; § 6; § 314.

use in perfect tenses, § 58; § 72;
§ 78; § 84.

with modals, § 140; position with

"two infinitives," § 181.

with certain inseparable verbs,
§ 196, a.

always with reflexives, § 240, b.

with impersonals, except ge-

fcheben, gelingen, and einfallen, § 245. a. shaft, adjective suffix, § 350, c. Hagedorn, Friedrich von (1708-1754), Der erfte Mai, p. 68. shalb, dimidiative, $\S 219$, a. halb, adjective, § 163; § 219, c. half, see halb, Sälfte. Balfte, bie, § 219: § 219. b. Beibenröslein, by Goethe, p. 163. Heine, Heinrich (1798-1856) Die Lorelei, p. 25. quoted, pp. 101, 137. beifen, to be named, § 202. to bid, call, "two infinitives," § 141. followed by infinitive without zu, § 204, a. sheit, feminine suffix, § 79, b, 2; § 349, c. belfen. " two infinitives," § 141. followed by infinitive without zu, § 204. a. by the dative, § 238; § 282, b. Hensel, Luise (1798-1877), Mübe bin ich, p. 57. her, § 197. in hin und her, § 197, a. Herbstlied, by Julius Sturm, p. 53. Herder, Johann Gottfried von (1744-1803), quoted, p. 130. Hera, bas, irregular noun, first class, § 308, d. beute, peculiarities of, § 138, a. - über acht Tage, § 300. Seute, nur heute, by Theodor Storm, p. 40. hin, § 197. hin und her, § 197, a. hinter, prep. with dative or accusative, § 89. hören, "two infinitives," § 141. followed by infinitive without zu,

§ 204, a.

See also Subjunctive. bundert, § 217, c. I. 3, vowel, Intro., I, b; § 327. ich, personal pronoun, § 92; § 310. repetition after the relative, § 169, b, 1. id, masculine ending, § 79, b, 1. idiomatic particles, §§ 293-299. ie, digraph, Intro., I, f. sie, noun ending, in two syllables, sieren, verb suffix, § 351, c. sig. noun ending, § 51; § 79, b, 1. adjective suffix, § 350, d. ≠igen, verb suffix, § 351, d. imperative mode formation of, § 69; § 200; § 201; summary, §§ 314-323. of reflexives, § 241. use of hortative subjunctive for first and third person imperative, § 266, a. passive imperative with fein, § 231, difficulties of, § 201, a. imperfect, see Past tense. impersonal verbs with fein, § 66. in passive, but personal in active, used instead of passive, § 242, c. intransitive reflexives, § 242, b. special use of es gibt, § 250, a; es ift, § 250, b. classes of pure (state of weather), § 246. reflexive (with fid), § 247. with dative (es faut mir ein), § 249.

with accusative (es freut mid),

in, prep. with dative or accusative,

§ 248.

§ 89.

list of, § 251.

hortative subjunctive, § 266, a.

 \sin , feminine ending, § 79, b, 2; § 348, c. indefinite article, § 8; § 22; § 306. See also Article. indefinite pronouns indeclinable etwas, § 159, a; irgend, § 159, b; man (with additional forms). § 159, c, and note; mehr, § 159, d; nichts, § 159, e; weniger, § 159, f; and also (genitive excepted), jebermann, jemand, niemand, § 159, g. inflected (declinable) all, § 162, a, 1, 2, 3; ander, § 162, b; beibe, § 162, c; einige, mehrere, § 162, d; viel, wenig, § 162, e. inbem, introducing clauses, § 285. indicative mode conjugation of forms in, see Conjugation. tenses of, see Tense. complete summary of, §§ 314-323. used to indicate speaker's belief, § 258, c. use for conditions of fact, § 270. indirect discourse, § 258, a, b, c. in questions, § 258. infinitives present and perfect, § 204. without zu, § 204, a. with zu, § 204, b. use as noun, § 204, c. complementary, § 192. of purpose, § 86; § 204, d. instead of verbal after anfiatt and ohne, § 204, d. passive, § 231. reflexive, § 241. impersonal, §§ 246-251. position of, § 50; § 192; § 205. with modals, § 137, b. in "two infinitives," § 141. in compound tenses, § 181. in translating two or more,

§ 181. a.

after separable verbs, § 192.

infinitives (continued)

rendered in German by clause, § 207, b.

used instead of English verbal in -ing, § 193.

with gelingen, § 251; with wünschen, § 259.

inflected indefinites, § 162. See Indefinite pronouns.

sing, noun ending, § 51.

innerhalb, § 281, b.

inseparable verbs

list of inseparable prefixes, § 188. meaning of, § 195. conjugation of, § 321.

inseparable and separable (common) verbs, § 196.

intensive pronoun, felbst, selber, § 150.

interjections, \S 299, b, and vocabularies.

interrogative pronouns, § 153; § 311, c, d.

See also Pronouns.

interrogative sentences, § 3. See also Questions.

intransitive verbs

indicating motion, take fein, § 66. idiomatic use of impersonal reflexive, § 242, b.

common verbs, when separable, § 196, b.

with fein in German, active in English, § 283,

inversion

questions by, § 3; in clauses when wenn is omitted, § 274, a.

inverted order in sentences, see Word order.

irgend, use of, § 159, b.

irregular verbs

definition of strong verbs, § 13. forms of, § 26.

list of principal parts of all strong verbs, § 304. conjugation of, §§ 319-323.

eiich, adjective ending, § 350, e.

italicizing, German substitute for, § 158, a, note.

iteratives, cardinal adverbs, § 217, b.

J.

3, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 8. ja, as idiomatic particle, § 293; § 295. jeber, § 116.

jebermann, § 159, g; § 313, b. jemand, § 159, g; § 313, b.

je — besto, the — the, § 214, c. jener, as adjective, § 116.

as demonstrative, § 158; § 312, a, b.

K.

 \Re , pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 1. See also Consonants.

tein, use of, § 106.
 without the noun, § 149, b, note.
 declension, § 103, a; § 306, c.

=leit, feminine suffix, § 79, b, 2; § 349, d. Lennen, § 156.

kn, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 20. können, § 131; § 135; § 136; § 140;

§ 323, b. with es and au, § 137. "two infinitives," § 141.

to translate may, § 144, 1.

Körner, Theodor (1791–1813), Gute Nacht, p. 13.

stunft, noun ending, second class, § 51.

L.

Ye, pronunciation of, Intro., II, a, b. difficulties of, § 325; § 338.

labials, see Consonants.

laffen, "two infinitives," § 141.

followed by infinitive without 3u, § 204, a.

as causative, § 144, d; § 145.

Latin derivatives, compared with German synonyms, § 356.

legen, not to be confused with liegen, § 95; § 110, d.

lehren, "two infinitives," § 141.
followed by the infinitive without
zu, § 204, a.

teib tun, impersonal with dative, § 249.

lernen, "two infinitives," § 141.
followed by the infinitive without
au, § 204, a.

slich, adjective suffix, § 350, f.

liegen, not to be confused with legen, § 95; § 110, d.

sling, masculine ending, § 79, b, 1; § 348, d.

liquids, see Consonants.

Logau, Friedrich von (1604–1655), Das Wissen, p. 24.

Lord's Prayer, from gospel of St. Matthew, p. 168.

Lorelei, by Heine, p. 25.

los, with gehen, idiomatic use, p. 116. with fein, § 183.

M.

M, pronunciation of, Intro., II, a, b. See also Consonants.

machen, "two infinitives," § 141.

followed by infinitive without δu , § 204, a.

Mal, bas, § 145.

smal, adverbial suffix, § 217, b.

man, indefinite pronoun, § 159, c; § 313, b.

used with active as substitute for passive voice, § 237, a.

mand, declined like ber, § 124; § 313, c. indeclinable, § 124, a.

may, translated by bürfen or können, § 144, a, 1.

measure, nouns of, § 113. bie Bortion. § 267.

mehr, used as particle of comparison only when one adjective is compared with another, § 212, d.

indeclinable indefinite, § 159, d. mehrere, inflected indefinite, § 162, d.

mehrere, inflected indefinite, § 162, d. Mein Baterland

by Sturm, p. 22.

by Fallersleben, p. 82.

miß-, inseparable prefix, § 188.

mit, prep. with the dative, § 97; § 100.

mixed declension, see Nouns, Adjectives.

modal auxiliaries

indicative forms of, § 131; § 135; § 136; § 140.

subjunctive, § 269.

in conditions contrary to fact, § 276.

"two infinitives" with, § 141. infinitive without zu, § 204, a.

position of

in normal order, § 137, b; § 141. in dependent order, § 181.

special uses

to translate like, § 144, a; may, § 144, a, 1; is said to, § 144, b; what is the meaning of this? § 144, b, 1; ought to, § 144, b, 2; to be about to, § 144, c.

mode, see Indicative, Imperative, Subjunctive.

auxiliaries of, see Modals.

Möge jeber still beglückt, by Rückert, p. 71.

mögen, conjugation of, see Modals. special use, § 144, a; for should,

§ 276, b. See Modal auxiliaries.

months, names of, § 223, b.

Morgen, peculiarities of, § 138, a.

morgen früh, § 145.

morgen über acht Tage, § 300.

motion from the speaker, § 197; toward, § 197: hither and thither, § 197, a; up and down, § 267. Milbe bin ich, by Luise Hensel, p. 57. Wilhelm Müller. (1794-1827),quoted, p. 108. multiplicatives, with smal, § 217, b. müffen, see Modal auxiliaries. \mathfrak{R} , pronunciation of, Intro., II, a, b. See also Consonants. nach, prep. with the dative, § 97; § 100. nachbem, subordinating conjunction, § 178; § 179. nachst, superlative of nah, § 213. name, beißen, § 202. nasals, see Consonants. neben, prep. with dative or accusative, negative, use of fondern after, § 177, a; tein, § 103, a; § 106; § 149, b, note; § 306, c; nicht, § 3, α ; § 23; § 137, a; nichts, § 159, e; nie, § 121; weder — noch, § 291. nicht, for repetition of questions, § 3, a. position in sentence, § 23. with modal auxiliaries, § 137, a. Richt das viele Wiffen, by Logau, p. 24. nichts, indeclinable indefinite, § 159, e. nicht wahr, for repetition of questions, § 3, a. nie, § 121. niemand, indecl. except in gen., § 159, g. snie, noun ending, § 51. noch, idiomatic particle, § 293; § 297. noch ein, for another, § 162, b. nominative case, § 7; § 8. with ee ift, § 163. normal order, see Word order.

nouns

classes of, § 33.

first class (strong), § 33; § 34. declension of masculine, § 35; § 79, b, 1. feminine, § 39. neuter, $\S 44$; $\S 79$, b, 3; $\S 204$, c; § 219. second class (strong), § 51. declension of, § 52; § 79, b, 1. third class (strong), § 62. declension, § 63. summary of strong endings, § 83. fourth class (weak) masculine and feminine, § 67. declension of, \S 68; \S 79, b, 2. fifth class (mixed), § 74. declension of, § 75. in apposition, § 109; § 113; § 267. of measure, omission of preposition, § 113. after a numeral, § 113, a. substitutes for adjectives used as, § 128, c. infinitive used for, § 204, c. "one" used for noun, § 128, d. used with geftern, beute, and morgen, § 138, a. declension of, §§ 308-309; Classes of nouns. gender of, § 79. proper, inflections, § 225, a. with the definite article, § 225, number, see Singular and Plural. numerals ending of nouns after, § 113, a. cardinal, § 217. indeclinable, except eins and eine Million, § 217. adverbs, § 217, b. omission of ein, in a hundred, § 217, c. ordinal, § 218. exceptions, § 218. adverbs, \S 218, α . fractions with stel (Teil), § 219. Dlal, § 145; =mal, § 217, b. nun, in exclamations, well!, § 299, b.

Ο.

O, pronunciation of, Intro., I, b, 1, 2; §§ 325-327.

ö, Intro., I, d, 2.

ob, subordinating conjunction, § 178; § 179.

contrary to fact after als ob, § 274, a. object

direct

in the accusative, §'7, b. of reflexive verbs, § 240. indirect

takes dative, § 45.

order of two noun objects, § 45; § 94, c.

pronouns, § 94, a, b.

with modals, § 137.

ober, coördinating conjunction, § 177. ohne, prep. with accusative, § 102.

followed by infinitive instead of verbal, $\S 204$, d.

"one" following an adjective, § 128, d.

translated by demonstrative, § 185. oo, digraph, Intro., I, f.

optative subjunctive, § 266.

order of words in sentence, see Word order.

orthography

use of capitals, Intro., IV, c, d, e. silent h after t, Intro., II, b, 15, note.

ought to have, translation of, § 276.

P.

\$\partial \text{pronunciation of, Intro., II, b.} \text{See also \$Consonants.}

Paar, bas; ein paar, § 156.

palatal consonants, see Consonants.

participle, past (or perfect)

in perfect tenses, § 58; formation of, § 58; position in sentence, § 60; use as adjective or noun, § 206, a; impersonal, §§ 246-

251; passive, § 231; rendered by a clause, § 207, b; reflexive, § 241.

of all strong verbs, see Summary, § 304.

as adjective after fein, § 235; compared with passive, § 235, a, b,

participial phrases, § 207.

particles, of comparison, § 214. idiomatic, §§ 293-300.

paffen, followed by the dative, § 282, b; § 283.

passive voice

formation of, § 230; conjugation, § 231; § 316; § 318; agent of, § 232; of verbs governing the dative, § 236; compared with perfect participle and scin, § 235, a.b.c.

substitutes for

man with the active, § 237, a. agent with the active, § 237, b. reflexive, § 242, c.

less used in German, § 237.

past tenses, see Tense.

perfect tenses, see Tense.

person, congruence of pronouns in, $\S 93$; $\S 167$, b.

for personal endings, see Summary of Forms of Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives, and Verbs, §§ 304-323.

personal pronouns, see *Pronouns*. pf, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 20.

phrases, in English rendered by clause in German, § 207, b.

order of, § 290, b. pitch of voice in German, § 341.

Platen, August, Graf von (1796– 1835), Du benfit an mid, p. 68.

plural number

of third person, used for formal use, second person, § 10.

form of fein used with bas, § 155.

plural number (continued). of nouns of measure, § 113, a. ending of all nouns in the dative, =n, § 45, a. For all plural forms, see Summary, § 305–323. poems first lines of, Auf ben Bergen, die Burgen, p. 54. Das Glück, bas immer vor mir schwand, p. 191. Deine Blumen find verblüht, p. 53. Dem Land, wo meine Beige ftand, Der erfte Tag im Monat Mai, p. 68. Du bentst an mich so felten, p. 68. Ginen Brief foll ich schreiben, p. 129. Es blübt ein icones Blumden. p. 12. Es war, als hätt' ber himmel, p. 96. Es war einmal eine arme fleine 3dee, p. 145. Gute Nacht, p. 13. Suter Mond, du gehft fo ftille, p. 97. Baft bu bas Schloß gefehen, p. 110. Beute, nur heute bin ich fo fcbon, p. 40. 3ch hatt' einen Rameraben, p. 144. Ich weiß nicht, was foll es bedeuten, p. 25. Ra, batte mir von Anbeginn, p. 182. Möge jeder ftill beglückt, p. 71. Mübe bin ich, geh' zur Ruh, p. 57. Nicht bas viele Wiffen tut's, p. 24. O fanfter, füßer Sauch, p. 31: Sah ein Anab' ein Röslein ftehn, p. 163. Singet leife, leife, leife, p. 37. Treue Liebe bis jum Grabe, p. 82. Über allen Gipfeln, p. 41. über ben Betgen, weit zu manbern, p. 175. Wie ist doch die Erde so schön, 3wei Dinge lern' gebulbig tragen, p. 34.

authors of Brentano, p. 37; Busse, p. 175; Dahn, p. 191; Dreves, p. 54; Ebrer-Eschenbach, p. 34; Eichendorff, p. 96; Enslin, p. 97; Fallersleben, pp. 12, 82; Fulda, p. 182; Goethe, pp. 41, 163; Hagedorn, p. 68; Heine, p. 25; Hensel, p. 57; Körner, p. 13; Logau, p. 24; Platen, p. 68; Reinick, p. 41; Rückert, p. 71; Sommerstorff, p. 145; Storm, pp. 40, 129; Sturm, pp. 22, 53; Uhland, p. 31, 110, 144. authors quoted, see Quotations. possessive pronouns, see Pronouns. potential subjunctive, § 265. predicate, order in, see Word order. predicate adjective, § 9; § 128, a. prefixes, inseparable, § 188. separable. § 189. common (separable and inseparable), § 196. general, § 346. prepositions, with the accusative, § 102; dative or accusative, $\S 89$; with the dative, $\S 97$; with the genitive, § 281, b. burch, über, um, unter, as verbal prefixes, § 196. omitted after nouns of measure, § 113. combined with ba(r)s, § 98; with the definite article, \S 89, a; with wo(r)=, § 154. present tense, see Tense. preterit, see Tense, past. principal parts of verbs, § 59; list of, for all strong verbs, § 304. progressive form, rendered by simple verb in German, § 16; § 207. a. pronouns agreement with antecedent, § 93.

as objects of reflexive verbs, § 240.

pronouns 'emtimed. mmary of forms of, §§ 310-312. personal, § 92 : § 310. dative med instead of pomentive, § 174 presente as adjective, § 103; § 310, e. L without a noun, § 149. weak decleasion of, § 149, a; strong, § 149, b. effect upon verbals, § 286. intensive, § 150. interrogative, § 153; § 311, c, d. demonstrative, § 158; § 312. when modified, § 185. indefinite, § 313. indeclinable, § 159. inflected, § 162. reflexives, § 174; § 313. relative, § 167; § 311. agreement with antecedent. § 167, b; § 169, b, 1, 2, compound, he who, § 168; compound neuter, § 168, a. substitute for, too with prepositions, § 168, b. uses, § 1699. never omitted, § 169, a; § 185. agreement with verb, § 169, b, c. punctuation of, Intro., IV, a, 1. pronunciation, Introduction; §§ 324-342. vowels, Intro., I; §§ 326-328. diphthongs, Intro., I, e; §§ 329digraphs, Intro., I, f. consonants, Intro., II; §§ 335-340. glottal catch, §§ 331-334. pitch, § 341. assimilation, § 342. summary of chief difficulties of German pronunciation, §§ 324-325. proper names, § 225; see Nouns. proverbs, pp. 1, 3, 6, 10, 23, 46, 51,

58, 63, 65, 72, 86, 92, 123, 176,

196.

Prutz. Robert 1886-1872. quantal, p. 195.

Paulm. Twenty-third, p. 188.
punctuation. Intro., IV.
comma
in compound sentences, Intro.,
IV, a, 2.
to set off relative clause, Intro.,
IV, a, 1; § 169, c.
with infinitive, § 86; § 192.
exclamation point, Intro., IV, b, 1, 2.
purpose, infinitive of, § 86; § 394, d.

Δ

C. pronunciation of, Intro., II, 5. quantity, of consonants, § 340. of vowels, Intro., I, 4, 5. questions

direct

by inversion or interrogative, § 3. by micht or micht wahr, § 3, a. indirect, with dependent order, § 173. requiring dependent subjunctive,

§ 258. quotation marks, as in English,

Intro., IV.

Quotations from

Bechstein, p. 142; Bibel, pp. 168;
188; Claudius, p. 88; Feuchtersleben, pp. 103, 149; Geibel, p.
156; Goethe, pp. 35, 38, 42, 80,
95, 152, 161, 164, 180, 183, 192;
Heine, pp. 101, 137; Herder,
p. 130; Müller, p. 108; Prutz,
p. 106; Rückert, pp. 60, 69, 127,
133, 172; Scheffel, pp. 74, 140;
Schiller, pp. 83, 186; Siebel,
p. 98; Wehl, p. 146; Wichert,
p. 120.

R.

R, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b. 10. difficulties of, trilled r, § 339, 1; rolled r, § 339, 2.

reflexive verbs, §§ 240-242.

list of, § 243.

common use of, in German, § 242, a, b, c.

impersonal, § 247.

complete conjugation of typical one, § 322.

regnet, es, impersonal verb, § 246; § 251.

Reinick, Robert, Wie ist doch die Erde so schön, p. 41.

relative pronouns, see *Pronouns*. roots of words, §§ 344–345.

See also Word formation.

Rückert, Friedrich (1788–1866) quoted, pp. 60, 69, 127, 133, 172. Spruch, p. 71.

S.

S, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 11. in script, Intro., II, b, 11, note.

=8, genitive ending, § 40, a.

See also Table of forms, §§ 305-314. [agen, indirect discourse after, § 258.-fal, noun ending, § 51.

sfam, adjective suffix, § 350, g.

Scheffel, Viktor von (1826-1886), quoted, pp. 74, 140.

Schiller, Friedrich von (1759–1805), quoted, pp. 83, 186.

schmeicheln, with the dative, § 282, b. schmeit, es, impersonal, § 246; § 251.

ichon, idiomatic particle, § 293; § 298. with present for English perfect, § 73.

with past for English past perfect, § 373, a.

script, German, different θ in, Intro., II, b, 11, note.

fehen, "two infinitives," § 141. infinitive without ξu, § 204, α. fein, conjugation of, § 1; § 6; § 315. use of bas, bies, and es with, § 155; as copula with perfect participle, § 235; with impersonals, gefohehen, gelingen, cinfallen, § 245, a; of predicate nominative after, § 7, a, 2.

as auxiliary of perfect tenses, § 66; § 72.

feit, possessive adjective, §§ 103-105. feit, prep. with the dative, § 97; § 100.

felber, intensive pronoun, § 150. felbft, intensive. § 150.

meaning even, § 150, a.

sentences

complex (dependent), § 170; § 178; § 182.

modals in, § 181.

punctuation of, Intro., IV, a, 1.

compound, § 177, punctuation of, Intro., IV, a, 2.

order of words in, see Word order. separable prefixes, § 189; §§ 190– 192.

separable and inseparable (common), § 196.

sequence of tenses in indirect discourse, § 258, a, b.

fegen, § 95; § 110, d.

shall, § 132, b; see also Future tenses.

fid, reflexive, § 175; used instead of possessive, § 174.

fich fürchten vor, followed by the dative, § 291.

fie, personal pronoun, they, § 92; she, § 92.

reflexive of (fid), § 240, a.

Sie, used for second person, formal address, § 10; capitalized, Intro., IV, d; § 10.

reflexive of (fid), $\S 240$, a.

Siebel, Karl (1826-1868), quoted, p. 98. singular number of pronouns for English plural, § 155. see also Number and summaries of inflections throughout the book. fiten, § 90; § 110, d. jø, adverb, § 41. to introduce conclusions, § 271. fobalb, subordinating conjunction, § 178; § 179. folch, declined like ber, § 124. indeclinable, § 124, a. follen, § 131; § 135; § 136; § 140. with su, § 137; "two infinitives." § 141. to translate is said to, § 144, b. what is the meaning of that, § 144. ought to, subjunctive, § 144, b, 2. are we to, § 132, b. Sommerstorff, Otto, Die arme fleine Ibee, p. 145. fonbern special use after negative, § 177, α . correlative, not only - but also, § 177, a. 1. spät, use as pred. adjective only with e8 ift. § 142. spirants, see Consonants. Sprichwörter, see Proverbs. ff, §, Intro., II, b, 13. sft, to form ordinals, § 218. stops, see Consonants. Storm, Theodor (1817-1888) Beute, nur beute, p. 40. Einen Brief foll ich fcbreiben, p. 129. strong declension of nouns, first, second, third class, §§ 33-35; § 39; § 44; § 51; § 52; § 62; § 63. of adjectives, § 112. See also Table of forms, §§ 305-309.

strong verbs, complete list of, § 304. definition of, § 13; vowel change in, § 26; formation of, § 27; § 31; § 32. See Table of forms, § 319; § 320; \$ 321. Sturm, Julius (1816-1896) Mein Baterland, p. 22. Berbftlied, p. 53. subject, see Nominative case. subjunctive mode formation of tenses, § 255. of auxiliaries, § 256. of weak verbs, § 261; strong verbs, § 262; § 263. of modals, § 269; § 276. dependent, indirect discourse, § 258, a, b, c. use of present where English has past, § 258, a. conditional, § 264; § 274; § 276. contrast of German and English, § 275. potential, § 265. optative, § 266. hortative, § 266, a. substantive, adjectives as, § 128, c, d. See Nouns. suffixes to form nouns, concrete, § 348; abstract, § 349. adjectives, § 350. verbs, § 351. adverbs, § 217, b; § 218, a. See Word formation. summary of forms, §§ 304-323. syllabication, Intro., III. T. T, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b.

T, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b.

*t, to form ordinals, § 218.

Teil, ber, softened to tel, § 219.

*tel, with ordinals to form fractions,

§ 219.

tense

present indicative, § 1; § 15; § 27; § 38; § 131.

personal endings of weak verbs, § 14.

of strong verbs, § 26.

use of simple indicative for emphatic and progressive, § 16; § 207, a.

instead of future tense, § 55. with ichon for present perfect, § 73.

past indicative, § 6; § 21; § 32; § 43; § 135.

personal endings of weak verbs, § 20.

of strong verbs, § 31.

use of simple past in German for emphatic and progressive, § 16; § 207, a.

of past in narrative, § 61, a. with foon for past perfect, § 73, a.

of perfect for past, § 61; § 141, b.

future indicative, § 48; § 49; of modals, § 136.

in English rendered in German by present, § 55.

perfect indicative

formation with haben, § 58; of modals, § 140; with sein, § 66; rule for, § 84.

use of German perfect for English past, § 61; § 141, b.

of present with foon for English perfect, § 73.

past perfect indicative

formation, § 72; rule for, § 84; of modals, § 140.

use of past with idon instead of past perfect, § 73, a.

future perfect indicative, formation, § 78; § 84; of modals, § 140. for tenses of the subjunctive, see Subjunctive and Table of

Forms, §§ 314-322.

th, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 15 and note (new spelling).

than, in comparisons, § 214, a.

the - the, je - befto, § 214, c.

there is (factitive), es ift, § 250, b; es gibt, § 250, a.

ti, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 14. time

definite, accusative of, § 117; § 222. indefinite, genitive of, § 281, a; regularly recurring, § 281, a.

of day, § 221, a, b. of the week, § 222.

of the month, § 222, a.

of the year, § 222, b.

transitive verbs

reflexive use of, \S 240, b; \S 242, a. inseparables with figurative meaning, \S 196, a.

in English becoming intransitive in German (folgen, begegnen), § 282, b; § 283.

haben usually auxiliary with impersonals, § 245, a.

transposed order, see Word order. trop, preposition with the genitive, \S 281, b.

stum, noun ending, § 62.

tun, in es tut mir leib, § 249.

Twenty-third Psaim, p. 188.

"two infinitives," § 141. \$, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 16.

υ.

u, pronunciation of, Intro., I, a, b; § 326; § 327.

in diphthongs, § 329, 2, 3; digraphs, Intro., I, e, f.

ü, Intro., I, c, d, 3.

über, prep. with dative or accusative, § 89.

über-, common verbal prefix, § 196. Über ben Bergen, by Busse, p. 175.

Uhland, Ludwig (1787-1862) Frühlingsahmung, p. 31. Der gute Ramerad, p. 144.

um, preposition with the accusative, § 102; with infinitive of purpose, § 86; § 204, d; with bitten, § 107.

um, common verbal prefix, § 196. umlaut

history and effect upon sounds, Intro., I, c, d; § 329, 3.
use, in plural of nouns, § 33; § 51;

§ 62. in past subjunctive of strong verbs, § 255, b; § 304.

omitted in imperative, § 200, b.

um, general prefix, § 346, c.
umb, coördinating conjunction, § 177.
-ung, feminine suffix, § 79, b, 2; § 349 f.
unfer, "ein" word, not "bet" word,
§ 103; § 120.

unter, prep. with dative or accusative, § 89.

unters, common verbal prefix, § 196. uts, general prefix, § 346. d.

V.

 \mathfrak{B} , pronunciation of, Intro., II, a, b. ver., inseparable prefix, § 188.

verbals in -ing, rendered by infinitive after aufhören and fortfahren, § 193; after auftatt and ohne, § 204, d.

modified verbals rendered by bag clause, § 286.

in time or causal phrase rendered by clauses, § 285.

verbs

as it would be impossible to index verbs without referring to most of the sections in the book, references have been made, under the proper special headings, to the forms and uses of verbs, i.e.

to Voice, Mode, Tense, Conjugation, etc.

See also under

Word formation.

Separable, Inseparable, and Common Prefixes.

Transitive and Intransitive verbs. Weak and Strong verbs. Reflexive verbs.

Impersonal verbs.

verbs with the dative, § 238; § 282, b; § 283.

impersonals, § 249.

verbs with the genitive, § 243.

verbs, impersonal, with the accusative, § 248.

Bergismeinnicht, by Fallersleben, p. 12. viel, § 162, e.

voice, see Active and Passive.

voiced consonants, see Consonants.

voiceless consonants, see Consonants.

von, prep. with the dative, § 97; § 100. use with the agent in the passive voice, § 232.

as substitute for the genitive, § 225, a.

Bor Jena, by Dreves, p. 54.

vowels, kinds of, Intro., I, a; pronunciation of, Intro., I, b; difficulties of pronunciation, §§ 325-329.

vowel changes in strong verbs, § 26.

W.

W, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 18. während, subordinating conjunction, § 178; § 179; use in clauses, § 285.

preposition with genitive, § 281, b.

Banbrers Nachtlieb, by Goethe, p. 41. mann, interrogative, § 41. was, interrogative, § 153, a. indefinite compound relative, § 153, a: § 168. relative after neuter, § 168, a. mas für ein. § 153, c. was gibt's, § 163. weak declension, of nouns, see Nouns, fourth class. of adjectives, see Adjectives. weak verbs no vowel change, § 13 and note. personal endings, § 14; additions for euphony, § 14, a. past participles of, § 59; complete conjugation of, § 317. weather, state of, shown by impersonal verbs, § 246. week, days of the, § 222; § 223, a. wegen, prep. with the genitive, § 281, b; § 283. Behl, Feodor (1821-1890), quoted, p. 146. weil, subordinating conjunction, § 170; § 178; § 179. welch, indeclinable as exclamatory, § 124, a. See also Belcher. welcher, relative, declined like ber, § 167; § 311. interrogative, § 153, b. well, adv., gut, § 299. b. of health, wohl, § 299, a. wenig, inflected indefinite, § 162, e. weniger, indeclinable indefinite, § 159, f. wenn, subordinating conjunction, § 178; § 179. use of, § 271; omission of, § 271, a. als wenn in conditions contrary to fact, § 274, a.

Benn, by Ludwig Fulda, p. 182.

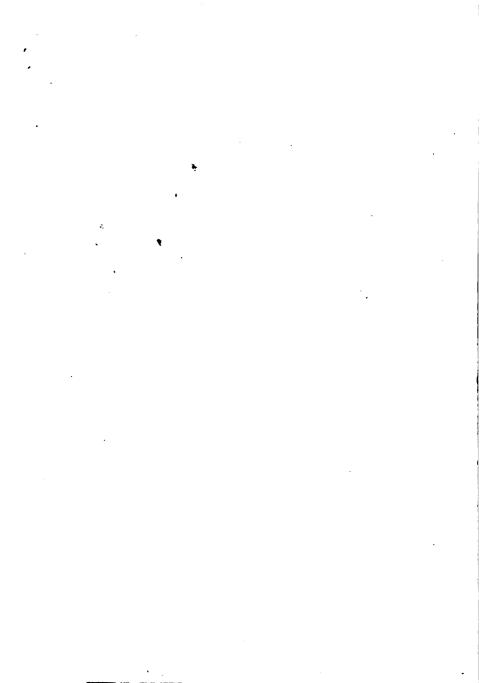
wer, § 311, c; as compound relative. **§ 168.** interrogative, § 153, a. merben conjugation of, § 38; § 43; summary, § 316. auxiliary of the future tense, § 48: in compound tenses of modals, of passive voice, § 230; § 231; § 318. use of nominative after, \S 7, α , 2. discussion of meanings, § 132, a, b, note; § 230, a. subjunctive of, in the conditional, § 264. Wichert, E. (1831-), quoted, p. 120. wider, prep. with accusative, § 102. wie, in comparisons, § 214, a, b; correlative with ebenso, § 214, b; interrogative, § 24. Bie ist boch bie Erbe so icon, by Roinick, p. 41. Biegenlied, by Brentano, p. 37. will, showing simple futurity, werben, § 55; § 132, a; desire, wollen, § 132, a, b, note. wir, personal pronoun, § 92; § 310. miffen. § 156. we, interrogative adverb, § 4. wo(r)=, compounded with prepositions, § 168, b. used for neuter dative, § 311, d, 3. wohl, as idiomatic particle, § 293; § 299. word formation roots, § 344; verbal, § 345. prefixes, § 346. suffixes, § 347. forming concrete nouns, § 348. abstract nouns, § 349. adjectives, § 350. verbs, § 351.

word formation (continued). compound words, § 352. German rich in, § 343. nouns, § 353; adjectives, § 354; verbs, § 355. Latin derivatives compared with German, § 356. word order, § 289. normal general rule for emphasis, § 290. coördinating conjunctions, § 177. position of nouns as objects, § 45; § 94, c; pronouns as objects, § 94, a, b; indirect object, § 45; adjective, § 282, a; possessive genitive, § 40. verbs, § 78. separable prefixes, § 189, b, c; au and ge, § 189, d; infinitives, § 50; § 205; modified, § 205, a; complementary, § 192; "two infinitives," § 141. au with modals, § 137, b. participles, § 60; § 206, a. adverbs, § 125; § 290; nicht, § 23; nie, § 121. phrases, adverbial, § 290, b. inverted general rule for, § 99. in questions, § 3. in formal imperative, § 69: of main clause, § 170, a.

of the condition, § 271. (wenn omitted), after als § 274, a. omission of es, § 250, b. dependent general rule, § 170. with relatives, § 167; in indirect questions, § 173; with subordinating conj., § 178; after baß, § 182; the modals in, § 181 : § 276. Bort, plurals of, § 64. wünschen, with infinitive and au. & 259. X. X, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b. 1. I), pronunciation of, Intro., I, b. 3, pronunciation of, Intro., II, b, 19. ¿er=, inseparable prefix. § 188. au, prep. with dative, § 97; § 100. position of, § 205. with modals, § 137, b. use of, § 204, b; § 259. omission of, § 204, a. awei, § 217. Awei Dinge lern' gebulbig tragen, by Ebner-Eschenbach, p. 34. swiften, prep. with dative or accusa-

tive, § 89.









THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY OVERDUE.

JUN 15 1938	- 10 Apri5018
OCT 16 1939	ENON SILLI
NOV 7 1939	2 1050
OCT 2 1940	JUN 12 1958 M
	REC'D LD
	WAY A MES
SEP 9 1941 N	
OCT 8 1941	
AL 6 1943	
10 Apr'50L	
	LD 21-95m-7,'37

YB 01415 A STATE OF S 335655 B129 UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

